

(C 102)

Open Basic Education (Adult)

Social Science

Level - C (Equivalent to Class 8)



National Institute of Open Schooling

A 24-25, Institutional Area, Sector-62, Noida-201309 (U.P.)

Website: www.nios.ac.in Toll free no. 18001809393

© National Institute of Open Schooling

201... (Copies)

Published by:

Secretary, National Institute of Open Schooling

A 24-25, Institutional Area, Sector-62, Noida-201309 (U.P.)

Chairman
National Institute of
Open Schooling, NOIDA

Director (Academic)
National Institute of
Open Schooling, NOIDA

Deputy Director (Academic)
National Institute of
Open Schooling, NOIDA

Curriculum Committee

Smt. Nishat Farooq
Ex. Director
State Resource Centre, Delhi

Dr. Arvind Mishra
Joint Director
Directorate of Savings,
Govt. of Uttarakhand, Dehradun

Dr. Anant Ram
Ex. Reader
Kuruchhetra University

Lesson Writers

Sh. Harpal Singh
Ex. S.E.O.
NIOS

Sh. Virendra Mulasi
Ex. Coordinator
(Material Production)
State Resource Centre, Lucknow

Sh. Layak Ram Manav
Ex. Coordinator
(Material Production)
State Resource Centre, Lucknow

Dr. Champa Papnt
Ex. Sr. Lecturer (DIET)
Delhi

Dr. Ravindar Kaur
Ex. Sr. Lecturer
DIET, Delhi

Smt. Nishat Farooq
Ex. Director
State Resource Centre, Delhi

Sh. Arvind Mishra
Joint Director
Directorate of Savings,
Govt. of Uttarakhand, Dehradun

Translators Team

Dr. Neelu Jain
Director, JSS
Delhi

Ms. Anju Gupta
Editorial Director
iNTELLYJELLY, Delhi

Mr. Brijbhushan Paliwa
Associate Professor (Retd.)
University of Rajasthan,
Rajasthan

Language Editors

Dr. Brij Bhusan Paliwal
Associate Professor (Retd.)
University of Rajasthan, Rajasthan

Sh. Vivek Singh
SEO (Academic), NIOS, Noida

Course Coordinator

Dr. B. K. Rai
Asst. Director (Acad.) NIOS

Sh. Harpal Singh
Ex. S.E.O. NIOS

Sh. Vivek Singh
SEO (Academic), NIOS, Noida

Graphic Artist

Sh. Naval Kishore
Graphic Artist, New Delhi

DTP Work

Multi Graphics
Karol Bagh, New Delhi

A Word With Joy

Dear learner,

An initiative has been taken by the Government of India to provide life-long learning to neo-literates in the society after the success of Adult Education Programme. This program is designed for the age group of 15-35 years from the deprived section of the society, who have achieved or want to achieve basic education. It is specially designed for those people who have failed to get formal education and interested to take the opportunity of lifelong learning. It has been imagined to create a learning society by developing all aspects of personality like individual, social, commercial and intellectual. National Literacy Mission and National Institute of Open Schooling have taken first step in this direction and issued about 2.35 Crore of certificate in basic literacy assessment.

Efforts have been made to introduce an equivalency programme for those who are interested to continue secondary education through non-formal education. The neo literates will get opportunity to learn at equivalency centers through distance education.

Self Learning Materials have been prepared for three levels i.e. Level 'A', 'B' and 'C' (equivalent to Class 3, 5 and 8 respectively) for this programme by National Institute of Open Schooling. This learning material will create learning attitude in learner with information seeking aptitude. Learning environment is created here by joining hands with scientific technology.

You must have read the Self Learning Material of level 'A' (Class 3). This SLM is equivalent to Class 5, which describes various aspects of environment like Religion, Caste, Festivals, Tradition, Life Style, Indian Culture, Natural Environment, Basic necessities of humans etc. This book also discusses conservation and respect of Indian Culture, Our Social Issues, Indian States and Union Territories, Life of Plants and Organisms, Human body and internal diseases etc. A special attention has been given to life value and current issues like female feticide, environment conservation etc.

Easy and simple language has been used in this book in accordance with learner's capabilities and abilities. This learning material has total 15 Chapters. A self-evaluation test paper has been provided after every three chapters. A samples question paper is also given for practice for neo-literates.

A special thanks to the entire intellectual who has contributed in making this material useful and interesting. I wish bright future of all learners. I hope that you all will pay attention to read the learning material. Views and suggestions are invited for further improvement.

Curriculum Development Committee

Contents

Sl. No.	Title of Lesson	Page No.
0.	Social Studies : An Introduction	1
1.	Evolution of Human Civilization	9
2.	Vedic Civilization	23
3.	Life After Vedic Civilization	31
4.	Social, Economic and Political System after the Mauryas	45
5.	Delhi Sultanate	63
6.	Mughals and After Them	77
7.	Rule of British Company	92
8.	British Rule and Independent India	110
9.	Our Country: India	120
10.	Mineral and Energy Resources of India	148
11.	Agriculture in India	168
12.	Development of Industry	186
13.	Means of Transport and Communication	203
14.	Population Explosion and Population Control	227
15.	Economic Life	241
16.	Nature of Government System	255
17.	Constitution of India	271
18.	State Government	295
19.	Democracy and Local Administration	310
20.	Our Advancing Steps	323

Social Studies : An Introduction

Imagine that you have a time machine which takes you back in time. You reach the time when your grandfather and grandmother were children. You find that your house and its environment are quite different. If you go back further, you will find a change in food habits, clothes and language used by your forefathers or ancestors. It will be interesting to know what happened in the past time. Do you feel that our life today can be connected to our past? This is a mystery which can be solved. For solving this mystery, we will use those sources which are helpful in understanding the development of mankind from pre-historic times till today.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain the role of history, geography, economics and political science in social science;
- Analyse the relation between all these subjects;
- Explain the various stages of the development of human society and
- Identify the opportunities and challenges of present society.

0.1 Social Science: As an Educational discipline

As the name suggests, social science is related to our society. The main objective of this subject is to understand various dimensions of society. This subject also provides solutions to various social problems. It is full of knowledge and includes various kinds of subjects. Some of the major subject areas which are important to us are as follows:

- History
- Archaeological Science
- Geography
- Political Science
- Sociology
- Economics

The study material of social science is related to all the above subjects. We will try to understand social science in this chapter. We will learn about the importance of social science in this chapter. We will also understand the relationship of social science to our life. We will trace the various stages of human development from living in the caves to living in cities in the modern world. We will learn history in a simple way by relating it to our past facts. We will also understand a lot of things from history. Social science helps in building relationships between various subjects. We will also understand as to how our past, present and future are interconnected by tracing our developmental processes and events. Let us learn about their effects in our life in more detail.

0.2 Study of Social Science

You will be surprised to know that there used to be one subject in the beginning which is Philosophy. The basic meaning of philosophy is knowledge or love for intelligence. However, with increase in knowledge, the subject got expansion. Thus, it was categorized in many branches. Therefore, the division of science and social science took place. Both of these subjects present in all the dimensions of the real world. If environmental science talks about knowledge of natural and physical world, social science tells us about society and the life style of human beings. Let us begin the study of social science with history.

a. History and Archaeological Science

What is history? History is a description of events that have happened in the past. This is related to real people and real events. These events not only include thoughts and ideas. They are connected to the concept of ideal state too. But this is a study which tells us what has happened in the past. History does not talk about a single individual but it is related to nations and society. This is not only relevant

to kings or queens but to the whole humanity. Every individual is included here without the difference of rich or poor, religion or caste. Have you ever thought what had happened in ancient times, at the time of our ancestors? You will read about them in this book. If you find any interesting fact here, note it down in your notebook. You can read more about it on internet and library. We will also help you in getting more information on the topic.

Why do we read history?

Reading history helps us in knowing our roots, our power and our achievement. It makes us proud and provides correct direction. This correct direction is known as progress. Our existence depends on our knowledge and understanding of the past. In reality, our past has important lessons for our present and future. History notes this entire heritage in a cautious manner. This heritage has an important effect on our life. Whenever we think how we know our past, we should relate it to archeological science which makes us proud. This makes us proud of our past activities and achievements. Let us secure this heritage for our coming generations.

Archeological science

Archaeological science and studies is that area which gives us knowledge about the society and culture of - ancient times. All this information is provided by the physical remains of the era. These physical remains are dug out of the earth. These remains include artistic items, broken buildings, memorials etc. These are studied by archaeologists. They analyse these remains and tell us the age to which these remains belong. Archeological science also studies the written records which are very ancient, reading and understanding these records are very difficult. These sources give us more reliable and authentic information in reality. These physical remains are hidden in the earth. So digging is done to take them out. Some areas where we have dug out valuable things are Mohenjo-Daro, Harappa, Lothal, Kali Banga, Dhaula-veera, Nalanda etc. We get information about these diggings through newspapers, and a remarkable discovery is evident in the coastal areas of Gujarat in recent decades. This place is said to be related to Dwarka, the place of Lord Shri Krishna. Rakhi Garhi is a place in Haryana. This important archaeological site was found a few years ago.

These archaeological places will take you into past times. If you get time, then you should visit these archaeological sites. Such kinds of places are found not only in India but in other countries too. Archaeological sources include records, memorials, metal sheets, coins, currency, statues, tools, mud utensils, toys, pictures etc. various creative works like pictures, paintings, sculptures, architecture, idols etc. These tell us special points about the culture of that time.

Do You Know?

ASI (Archaeological Survey of India) works under the ministry of culture. This is an important organization which is responsible for archaeological research and conserving the cultural heritage of the country. The main work of ASI is to look after the remains of archeological sites and ancient memorials which are of national importance. To look after ancient memorials and archeological sites the whole country is divided in 24 blocks (mandals). This organization has a force of skilled archeologists, conservation lists, recordists, sculptors and scientists who organize and edit research work and archeological activities.

For more information you can log on to www.asi.nic.in



Intext Questions

0.1

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:

(Culture, Society, Haryana, Gujarat)

- Social science is related to our _____.
- Archeological science gives us information about the society and _____ of ancient times.
- Dwarka is situated in _____.
- Rakhi Garhi is in _____.

2. List 5 sources that help us in learning about our past.

B. Geography

The study of history and archeological science is incomplete if the geographical area is not studied. Geography studies the earth crust, people, places and environment of the earth. In simple words, it gives knowledge about that world where we live. Geography is a bridge between social sciences (human geography) and natural science (physical geography). Geography plays an important role in giving shape to the history and life of any society, this also helps us in knowing the difference between the earth crust, economies, political systems and cultures of the whole world. This helps us in maintaining relations between various geographical regions. The knowledge of geography gives an ideal outline in relation to other subjects. If we know the geography of any country, we have an idea of what might have happened in the past. We know ancient man made bow-arrow and other small tool, but study of geography gives us knowledge that after the Himalayan ice age there was a change in the environment. This change can be seen as dense forests are now converted to grass lands. Can you think what would have happened? This would have led to the increase in the population of grass

eating animals like deer, goat, sheep and swamp deer (barasingha). You know that these animals run very fast. These animals could not be hunted by heavy tools, we require light tools. Due to the development of these tools, humans survived in that era.

Do you know that the plains of Ganga are considered to be a fertile land in India? This is because Ganga is the biggest river which brings fresh water. This water is used for drinking and irrigation. The soil deposited by the river is also very fertile, this is the reason that here big empires like Mauryas, Guptas and Mughals were established. Availability of iron in sufficient amount is also a reason for empire development in this area.

C. Political Science

You might be very familiar with the word government. You must have read or listened to this word on radio. Have you ever thought what government is? Do you know what the role of government in our life is and what important works it does for our life? The government of any country frames laws and the people living in that country follow and respect these laws. People elect government to give power to make laws in a democracy. In this way people help the parliament of the country in framing laws. In a monarchy only king and queen have the right to make and implement laws. Social science tells us how we are governed. This subject provides information about our role in running a country or a government. This discipline is known as political science.

Political science is that social science which is related to the principle and behavior of politics. It lays emphasis on the analysis of political system and political behavior. It also tells us that how a government is elected. It also studies the relationship between political events and situations. It also helps us to understand the general principles of politics which help in the smooth functioning of political system. This includes studies of governments, public policies, political procedures, systems and political behavior.

D. Sociology

Sociology is another important aspect of social sciences. This is related to human behavior in social sphere. Sociology means study of the human groups. Sociology is made up of Latin word sociologie means to study about the companion. Therefore, sociology studies the structure of the society. It also helps us in understanding the functioning of any social group.

This also helps us in understanding and defining the causes that have lead to the present structure of the society. This include race, creed, class, gender, culture, religion, beliefs and government. Sociology also studies these ways of an individual and group behaviors which have an effect on our society.

E. Economics

When we live in a society we have to organize our life; we should also learn to spend less money to fulfil our needs. This less spending of money should have proper use of our income, time and resources because all these are limited. We should also learn to manage our time so that things are done in the same way as we desire. Whenever we prepare budget for our home we use the most available resources in the best way. This saves us in facing many problems. This study of best use of resources is known as economics. This is more a study than just preparing a budget. This is a scientific subject where an individual decides production, consumption and money according to his choice. This is a social science which helps in balancing our needs and available resources. The study of this subject will be very interesting if we learn from the situations of our real life. Such functions are helpful in preparing budget of our home or preparing time table.

This entire subject helps us in understanding the whole process leading to the progress and development of human race. For this, we need to look back in our past. Step by step we will learn about the development of humans on this earth. Therefore, social science helps us in building a healthy society. It also tells us how to balance ourselves as a part of society. In the next few chapters of this book, we will learn about the history, geography, economy and political system of India.



Intext Questions 0.2

1. Choose the correct word to fill the blanks:

(Sociology, Ganga, people)

- The plains of _____ are very fertile.
- _____ elect government in a democracy.
- _____ is related to the study of human behavior.



What you have learnt

- Social science is related to our society.
- The chief subject areas are- history, archeological science, geography, political science, sociology and economics.
- Philosophy was studied only in the beginning. With increase in knowledge, it was divided into many subjects.
- History is the description of events that happened in the past.

- Geography tells us about the world where we live.
- Political science gives us information about the smooth functioning of a country.
- Sociology studies human behavior in social context.
- Economics is the study of economic activities of a person and a whole country.



Terminal Questions

1. What is the relation between history and archeological sciences?
2. How does geography help in studying history?
3. What is the important thing in political science?
4. What do you mean by the study of economics?

Let us do it

- Go to the museum near to your city. You can also go a place which has a collection of ancient things and know about that period. You can also get help from the internet or library. You can get information easily in books, newspapers and magazines in today's world. Collect information about old forts and such places nearby to your area.
- Agra, Nasik, Kolkata and Patna are situated near big rivers. You will be surprised to know that these places have an historical importance. Tell 3 causes of the progress of these cities as a centre of administration and commerce.

Answer key

Intext Questions

0.1

1.
 - a. Society
 - b. Culture
 - c. Gujarat
 - d. Haryana
2. Memorials, record, metal sheets, coins, tools, mud utensils etc.

0.2

1. a. Ganga
- b. people
- c. sociology

Terminal Questions

1. Both history and archeological science study about the past.
2. We cannot understand history without geography. Geography tells us about the world where we live. If we know geography of a county, we can learn about its past.
3. Studying governments, public policies, political procedures, systems and political behavior.
4. Economics is the study of economic activities of an individual and the whole world.

Evolution of Human Civilization

Knowledge of the history of human civilization is a subject of intense curiosity. How was the initial life of the primordials? What were their activities? How did the primordials evolve from their initial state to various stages of development?

What was the importance of agriculture in the social life of the primordials? What were their economic, political and religious activities and beliefs. The primordial man led a nomadic life. He roamed in search of food and hunted animals. Stone had a very important role in their life. Before the new stone- age the primordial man led a temporary and uncivilized life but in the stone-age period, discovery of farming, fire and wheels brought a change in the life of humans.

Over a period of time human civilization gradually shaped and developed as urban civilization. There was development of urban life. To fulfil the needs of human beings, along with farming, live stock breeding also started. Mixed farming in the form of agriculture and animal husbandry developed.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe the beginning of farming during the primordial age;
- Explain the social, economic, political and religion belief of the primitive man;
- Discuss Indus Valley civilization;
- Give a description of urban life and
- Describe the progress of farming.

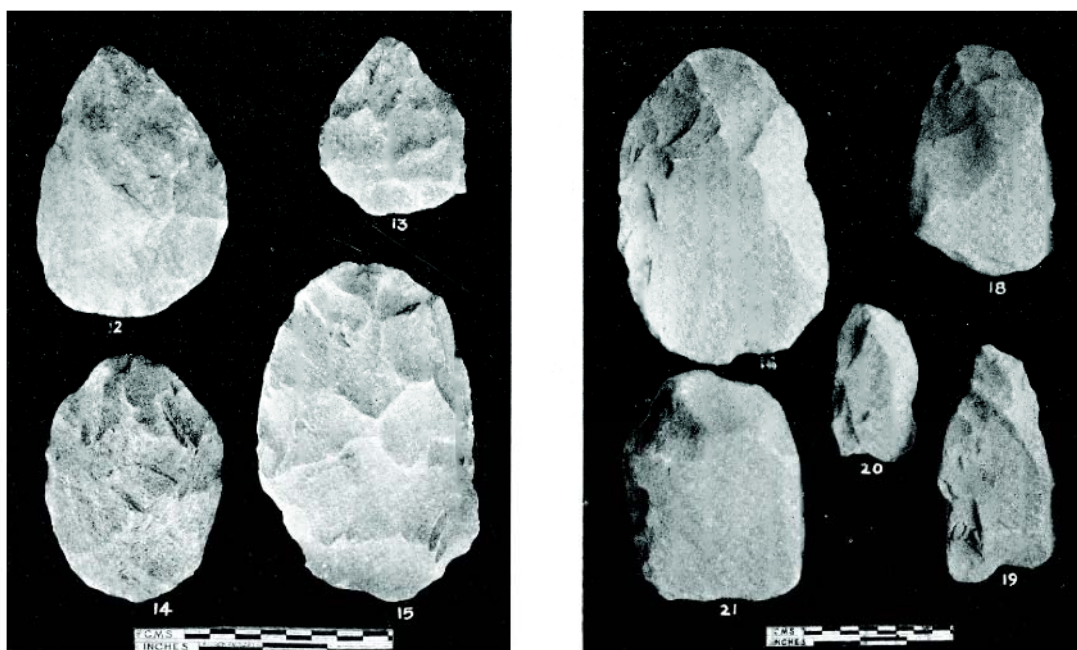
1.1 Social and Agricultural Life of the Primitive Man

The development of primitive man took place million of years before that of primates. Primates were the earliest mammals. They had hair on their body. They nursed their children with their own milk. Their teeth were broad. Primates included homonides and hominids.

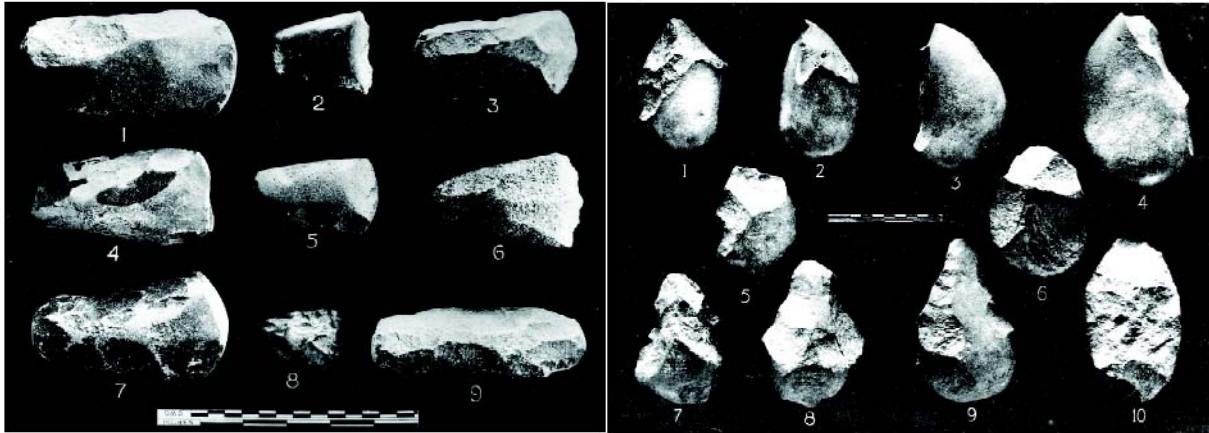
Homonids were more progressive than homonides. After them came the homo-habilis. Their speech glands were a little more developed. They started humming. They were the first to make tools from stone but they could not stand straight. After them came homo-erectus. They could stand straight on their feet. All lived in a group. They roamed around in search of food, water, animals and shelter. After a long time man developed as an intelligent being in the form of homo-sapiens who applied more brains as compared to earlier man.

The story of development of primordial civilization started from the stone-age.(500,000-10000 I.Pu)

During the period of early stone- age and middle stone- age, the primordial man lived in caves in a group. These groups lived near rivers and ponds. They collected root vegetables, fruits, flowers and seeds. They hunted wild animals and also caught fishes. They did not know how to make dwellings or farming. They roamed around in a naked state. They used a lot of tools made from stone. The primordial man during this period led an uncivilized and nomadic life. They had difficulty in hunting with tools made of rough stones, so they made tools of smooth and pointed stones. The primordial man towards the end of the middle stone-age started covering a portion of his body with leaves, bark of trees and leather. He protected himself from cold and rain. In the caves of Bhimbetka we find proof of the existence of primordial man.

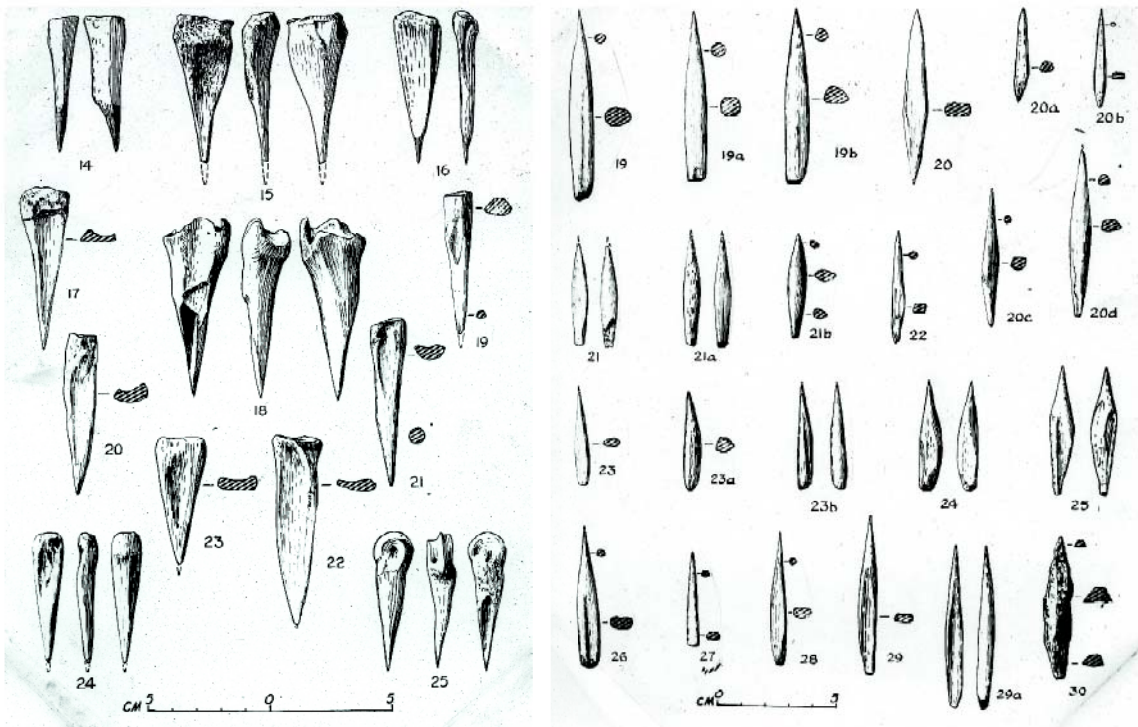


1.1 (a) Stone - Age Equipments



1.1.(b) Stone age equipments

In the new stone age, (8000-4000 I.Pu) there was discovery of fire. This brought a change in the lives of primordial man. He learnt to cook food on fire. He used fire to escape from cold and also to protect himself from wild animals because on seeing the fire, the wild animals would run away.



1.2. New Stone Age equipments

It's possible that primordial man ate fruits and threw away the seeds. A plant grew from the seed. Then the plant was looked after. From this experience the primordial man started farming. Farm work was done by using wooden or some tough thing to dig wet earth and plant seeds in it. The ancient technique of farming was called "digging sticks". In the Indian sub-continent the first evidence of farming is found in Mehargarh. The primordial man through farming started living a permanent and civilized life. He started covering his body with leather, barks and leaves. He built his dwelling of mud and grass near his farm and lived in a settled manner.

from one place to another with the help of carts pulled by animals. It helped in the movement of goods. The process of business and travelling became quicker. Animal husbandry commenced for getting milk, meat, skin, wool etc. Man began rearing of goat, cow, buffalo, sheep etc. In the neo stone-age, primordial man started fertilizer collection, hunting, fishing, farming, utensil making and other business processes to develop economic activities.



1.3. Prehistoric Painting

There is no clear proof of any political life of primordials. Possibly in the beginning, eldest member of the group was the head. His role must have been important in the family. The rules for society and villages must have been based on mutual understanding, which had to be followed. The head of the clan must have been responsible for this. Every clan was tied to its traditions, customs and laws. This system of clanish rule probably existed between the primordials. Powerful or elderly person was the leader who took care of all. Natural incidents and emotional relations gave birth to religious beliefs. They were scared of lightning and clouds. The heat from the sun troubled them. The moon gave them a feeling of coolness after the heat of the sun. For this reason the primordial man worshipped the sun and the clouds.

They also worshipped their ancestors. While burying their dead people they kept tools, food, water etc in their grave so that the dead person could utilize these things in his next life. In this way the belief in rebirth began. Fire was very beneficial for them, so they started worshipping fire. The seeds grown on land gave harvest, so they started worshipping the earth.

They looked at land in the form of mother. Fear of any untoward happening made man start the practice of giving sacrifices. Singing songs in honour and witchcraft also began. To free people from fear they began to worship.



Intext Question 1.2

Q1. Fill in the blanks with correct answer.

1. _____ life led to the development of family and society. (nomadic / settled)
2. In Palaeolithic times, the primordial man collected food items and did _____ (business/ hunting)
3. The invention of wheel led to _____ production. (utensil/stone)

Q2. From the following whom did Primordial man worship?

- a. Sun
- b. Earth
- c. Clouds
- d. All the above

1.3 Indus Valley Civilization

In the Indian sub continent ancient urban civilization is found in the area of Indus Valley. This is why it is called the Indus Valley Civilization. The excavations first started in Harrappa so Indus Valley Civilization is also called Harrappan Civilization. The excavations began in year 1921, in Harrappa in Punjab and in 1922, in Mohenjodaro in Sindh. The Indus Valley Civilization must have existed from 2700 E.PU to 1900 E.PU that is around four-five thousand years ago from now. The main cities of Indus Valley Civilization were - Mohenjodaro, Harrappa, Ropar, Kalibangan and Lothal.

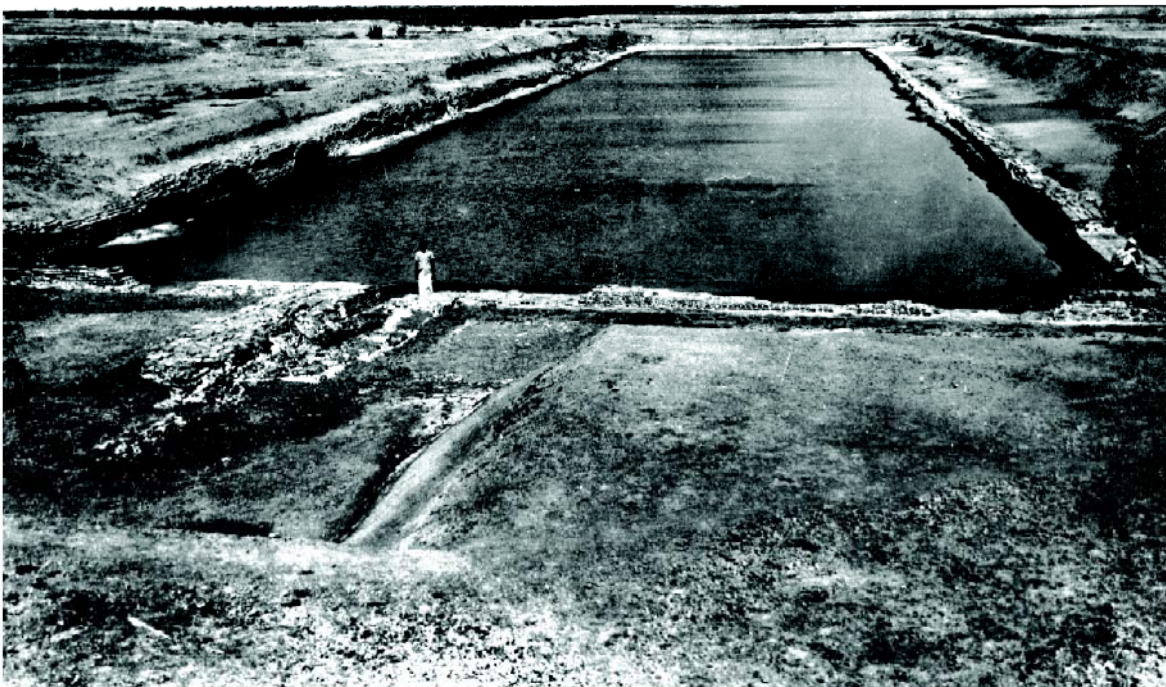


1.4. Huge Bathroom at Mohenjodaro

General: India's oldest civilization is Indus Valley Civilization and Harrappan Civilization. Later on the remains of this civilization were found Haryana and Rajasthan region also. This means that this civilization was not only in the Indus Valley but in other places also.

Scientific searches have hinted that river Saraswati flowed here which later on vanished. That is why some Indian historians call this civilization the Sindhu-Saraswati Civilization.

The first hamlet in the Saraswati Sindhu river area was probably built in 2500 E.Pu. In the Indus Civilization bronze and copper were used. There was a beads factory in Chanhudaro, a part in Lothal from where, goods were sent to other places by ship and boats. The people of Indus valley civilization had business relations with the people of Mesopotamian civilization.



1.5. Ruins found in Lothal

The people of Indus Valley Civilization were entering Bronze-age from Stone-age. Along with stone they made tools, utensils and other things of copper. The use of copper made the Indus Valley Civilization also known as copper age civilization. The scripture of Indus Civilization is pictorial which till now is not readable. All the information comes from the relics recovered from the excavations and also based on presumptions.

The main economic activity of Indus Valley civilization was farming, animal husbandry, industries and business. Farming depended on rains; water from the rivers and wells was utilized for irrigation. Wheat, rice, pulses, mustard, rye etc. were cultivated. We find proof of rice farming in Lothal and Rang pur; farms were ploughed with a plough and bulls.

The food of the people of Indus Valley Civilization was both non-vegetarian as well as vegetarian. Milk, ghee, honey, eggs, meat, fish etc. were present in their diet. Possibly merchants and priests had a role

during the rule of Indus Valley Civilization. In this civilization making bricks, utensils, beads, cloth, colour, lacquer, metal melting, jewellery manufacturings etc. were important industries. The end of Indus Valley Civilization was possibly due to change in environment, floods, earthquake, epidemic or the river changed their course.



Intext Question 1.3

Q1. Match the following

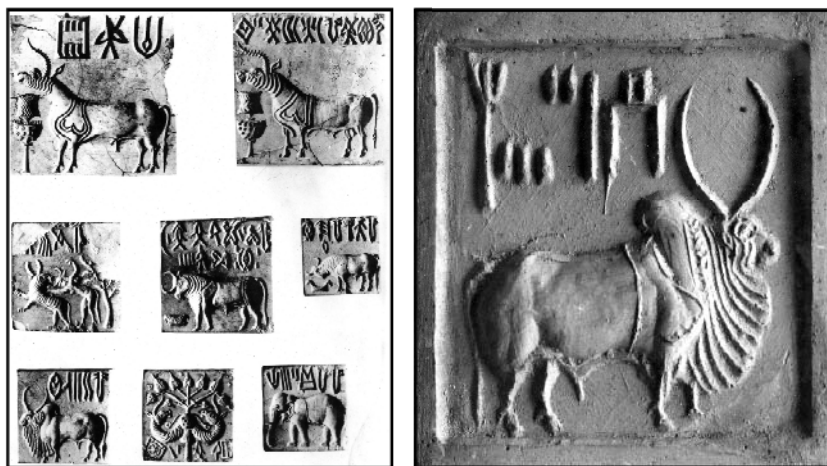
- | | |
|----------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. Harrappa | (a) Year 1922 |
| 2. Mohenjodaro | (b) Pictorial |
| 3. Lothal | (c) Year 1921 |
| 4. Script of Indus Valley Civilization | (d) Port |

Q2. Which metal was used in Indus Valley Civilization?

Q3. Write the names of three important towns of Indus Valley Civilization?

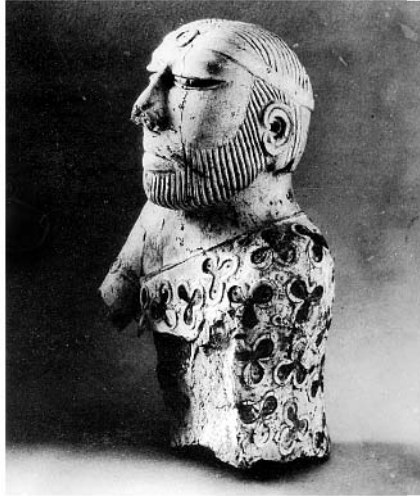
1.4 Growth of Agriculture and Urban Life

Increase in population and surplus production in agriculture gave birth to urban life. Surplus production means that after utilization some produce is still left. Division of labour also led to the progress of urban life. Apart from agriculture work, other business like making utensils from clay, weaving of cloth, carpentry, leather work, masonry, jewellery making etc were done at a particular place. At these places along with wheat other items were bought and sold whereby it was the beginning of towns.



1.6. Coins obtained from Mohenjodaro

In the ancient civilization of Indus Valley we get a glimpse of urban life. At that time the main towns were Harrappa, Mohenjodaro, Lothal, Chanhudaro, Kalibangan etc. Grain warehouses have been found in Harrappa where surplus production of grain was deposited. In the event of a drought or if there was a decrease in production then the stored grain was used.

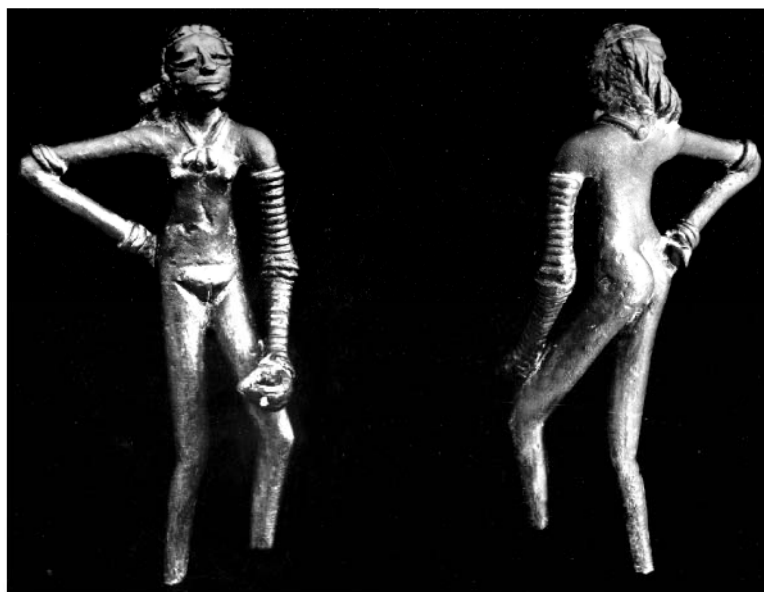


1.7. A priest from Mohenjodaro



1.8. Pashupati

In Mohenjodaro, houses made from pucca bricks and a massive bathroom has been found. The roads were broad and divided at a crossing. The facility to discharge water was like what it is in towns today. In Chanhudaro there was a factory to make beads. Lothal had a port which was used for business activities. From the port at Lothal, business was conducted with countries like Mesopotamia and other regions. Along with agriculture and animal husbandry, industry and business were also developed. It gave impetus to business and good roads were constructed. The main industries of that period were making bricks, cloth, ornaments, beads, tools, paint and varnish.

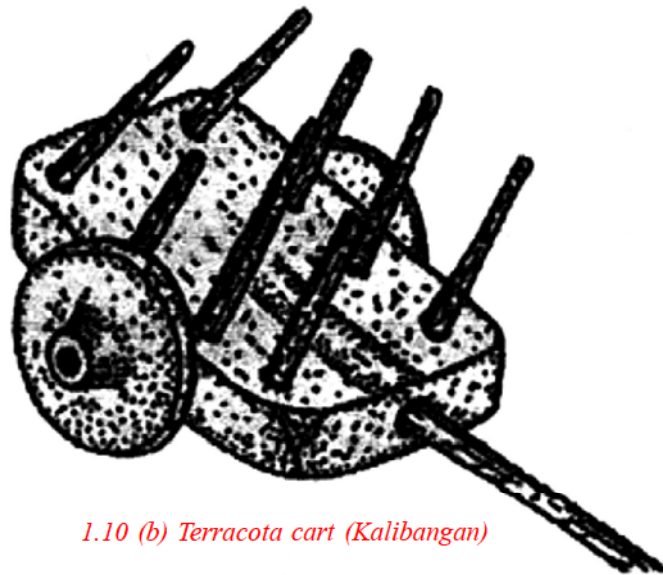


1.9. Dancer Mohenjodaro

To fulfil the needs of the town people, the farming class cultivated surplus produce. Social division on the basis of work started. Life became comfortable in the cities. Buildings, business centres, factories were built, city life made human life easy. There arose opportunities for various kinds of employment. In the cities, the class of people attached to sculpture, crafts, business and administration lived. The ruling class took tax, cess and token money. City life gave rise to decadence. It divided the people into rich and poor class.



1.10 (a) Terracota Figures

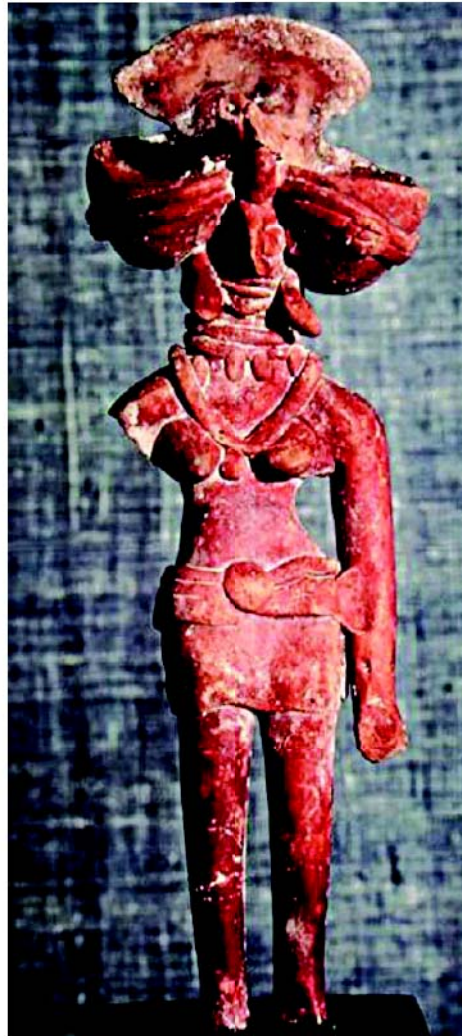


1.10 (b) Terracota cart (Kalibangan)

In Indus Valley Civilization drains were regularly cleaned. Houses were built of both burnt and raw bricks. In the houses, there was provision for a well, courtyard, kitchen, bedroom and toilet. The houses were single storied as well as multi storied. In the cities, the science of making handicrafts and different artwork like sculpture, music, dance, flourished. In the cities a large number of such people lived who were not associated with agriculture. Living in the city gave a new form to human civilization.



1.11. Terracotta statues



1.12. Statue of the goddess of death

People living in the cities depended on the rural areas for their requirement from mines and other products. Initially in agriculture only grain was used but with the production of meat, milk, wool etc and to fulfil its demands animal husbandry was directly attached to agriculture. Apart from obtaining grains from agriculture other useful products like straw, husk, pomace and other useful products also became a part of animal husbandry. Agriculture was given a commercial form. Means of irrigation were developed and manure was used. With the growth of agriculture various forms of animal husbandry like cattle breeding, bee keeping, poultry and fisheries got a chance to grow. In this way, the growth of agriculture gave birth to a composite nature of husbandry.



Intext Question 1.4

- Q1. Which ancient Indian Civilization gives a glimpse of town life?
- Yamuna Valley Civilization
 - Indus Valley Civilization
 - Ganga Valley Civilization
 - None of the above.
- Q2. Why was the port at Lothal famous?
- Q3. Put a (✓) on the correct and a (✗) on the wrong sentence.
- After the dog, primordial man bred sheep, goat, cow and other animals.
 - Maximum people from the city were connected to agriculture.
 - Primordial man did farming of fodder.
 - Primordial man did not know about irrigation.



What you have learnt

- The development of primordial man was from the primates including homonides and hominids.
- Homohibilis started humming and made tools of stone. They could not stand straight.
- Homo erectus started standing straight on their feet. After this wise man came in the form of homo-sapiens who used more of his knowledge.
- Man evolved gradually from Palaeolithic to new Stone-age.
- In the Palaeolithic age, primordials hunted, collected and led a nomadic and uncivilized life. In the new stone - age invention of fire wheel and farming gave permanency to life and made it easy.
- In the Palaeolithic age primordials lived in a group. In new stone-age, farming led to the creation of society and villages.

- In the beginning the main economic activities of primordial man were hunting, fishing and collecting root vegetables and fruits. Later on, in the new stone-age they started farming and breeding animals. There is no clear evidence of any political activity of the primordial man but there is a probability that it was ruled by the oldest person of the clan. They were tied to traditions, customs and laws.
- Natural incidents and emotional relationship gave rise to religious beliefs and sentiments.
- The oldest civilization of India, Indus valley civilization developed in 2500 E.u in the region of the Indus River. It was connected to Mesopotamia. Possibly Indus valley civilization faced destruction due to environmental changes and natural calamities.
- Life in the town progressed because of increase in population, surplus food production and division of labour. The construction of cities was schematic. In the cities people not attached to agriculture, lived in large number.

Along with agriculture man also started animal husbandry. This resulted in mixed agriculture.



Terminal Questions

- Q1. Fill in the blanks choosing the correct words.
- The work of utensil making started with the invention of _____. (Wheel / Farming)
 - In the caves of _____ we find evidence of primordial man. (Bhimbetka / Barabar)
 - In Indus Valley, Mohenjodaro was excavated in year _____. (1921 / 1922)
- Q2. Put a (✓) on the correct and a (✗) on the wrong sentence.
- Indus civilization was Iron age civilization.
 - The script of Indus civilization was pictorial.
 - Residue of rice has been found in Lothal and Rangpur.
- Q3. What were the characteristics of the cities of Indus civilization?
- City construction was schematic.
 - Water - discharge.
 - Broad roads.
 - All the above.
- Q4. What was the technique of farming in ancient times?
-
- Q5. On whom did the people living in the city, depend for minerals and other produce?
-

Q6. Man started animal husbandry to procure which goods?

Q7. Name any four industries of Indus valley civilization?

Q8. Who were the people who lived in the city?

Answer Key

Intext Questions

- 1.1. 1. (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✓ (d) ✓
2. Mehargarh 3. Dog
- 1.2. 1. (a) Permanent (b) Hunter
(c) Utensils
2. (d) All the above.
- 1.3. 1. (i) Year 1921 (ii) Year 1922 (iii) Port (iv) Graphical
2. Copper and Bronze
3. Harrappa, Mohenjodaro, Lothal, Kalibangan, Ropar.
- 1.4. 1. (b) In Indus valley civilization.
2. Lothal port was famous as business port.
3. (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✓ (d) ✗

Terminal Questions

1. (a) Wheel (b) Bhimbetka (c) Year 1922
2. (a) ✗ (b) ✓ (c) ✓
3. (d) All the above 4. Digging stick method.
5. On the rural people. 6. Milk, Meat, Wool, leather, beads and egg etc.
7. Brick making, utensils, ornaments, beads and cloth industry.
8. Rulers, sculptors, Craftsmen and business class people.

Vedic Civilization

In this world there is evidence of several human civilizations, like Mesopotamian civilization etc. In India the ancient civilization was Indus Valley Civilization. It developed nearby the Indus River. Along with it, another ancient civilization began. This civilization started with the Aryans. Aryans lived a slightly different life from the people of Indus civilization. The Aryans gave special attention to agriculture and cattle breeding. Their environment was more rural. Aryan civilization is also known as Vedic civilization. From Vedic culture we get important information about the social, economic and political system of Aryan life.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe the Aryans and their texts;
- Explain the social, economic and political system of the Vedic age and
- Discuss the life of common people during the period of Ramayan and Mahabharata.

2.1 Aryans and their main texts

Aryans started a new civilization only Aryan civilization is known as Vedic culture. Most probably Aryan culture came after the Indus Civilization. The Aryans expanded themselves in the Doab region around Ganga and Yamuna rivers.

India: It is presumed that Vedic civilization came after that of Indus Valley and that the Aryans came from outside but there is no concrete evidence of this. Therefore it is also said that Aryans did not come from outside but were from India only.

Vedic culture has been divided in two parts - Early Vedic Age and Later Vedic Age. We learn about the life of Aryans or Vedic people from their main texts i.e. the Vedas. The language of Vedas is Vedic Sanskrit. There are four Vedas - Rig-Veda, Sama -Veda, Yajur-Veda and Atharva-Veda. Initially there were three Vedas, the fourth was written later on. The first Veda is Rig-Veda. From it, we get information about the early Vedic period.

In Rig-Veda various gods of Fire, Wind, Rain, Sun etc are glorified. The hymns of Rig-Veda have been composed by the Rishis. Sama-Veda related to music. It was sung on special occasions by priests who knew singing. Atharva-Veda is about medicine and treatment, method of performing Yagna and witchcraft. Some of the mantras of the Vedas have been written by women who were intelligent, such as - Gargi, Maitreyi, Vishwavara, Ghosha etc.



Intext Questions 2.1

Q1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks.

- Aryan civilization was called _____ (Indus civilization / Vedic civilization).
- The total numbers of Veda's are _____ (Three / Four).
- _____ is in praise of fire, wind, rain etc. (Sama-veda / Rig-Veda).

Q2. What was the language of the Vedas?

Q3. Which was the first text of the Aryans?

2.2 Social, Economic and Political life of the Vedic Age

The units of society in Vedic age were family and clan. The society was based on the Varna system. This information is given in "Purusha Sukta". The society was divided in four Varnas - Brahmins, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra. In the Rig-Vedic age, Varna system was not rigid. It was based on task performed but

in the later Vedic age, Varna system was determined by one's birth. This made the Varna system rigid and later on it took the form of the caste system.

All the four Varnas had separate tasks to perform. People received their position and respect in society on the basis of their task. Brahmins had the highest position in society. Brahmins received education and also imparted education to others. Apart from this they performed yagnas, gave guidelines and direction to society and advised the king in the capacity of a priest or minister.

The Kshatriyas took care of security and government, fought battles and looked after arms, weapons and governance. Vaishya did farming, animal rearing and business. They fulfilled the needs of the people. The shudras gave different type of services. They did farming, cattle rearing and helped others in their work. The social status of the shudras due to economic and official level kept on deteriorating. The later Vedic-age saw the status of the shudras, falling further. Untouchability in the later Vedic period made the social standard of the shudras weak.

The status of women in Rig-Vedic period was good. They received education, had a right to property and could marry as per their own choice. There was absence of purdah system. The elderly man of the family was the head. It was a patriarchal society. The later Vedic period saw a downfall in the social status of women.

The Aryans ate non-vegetarian as well as vegetarian food but vegetarian food was prevalent. People wore woollen, cotton and silk clothes. Chariot races, game of "Chopad" were modes of entertainment. The Aryan houses were rectangular or circular and made of wood, grass or coagulated with mud.

The economic life of the Vedic people depended on farming. They also kept cow, horse, dog, sheep, buffalo and goat etc.; cattle rearing was done to procure milk, meat and wool. Horses were used during a battle or for chariots. Aryan did farming of barley, wheat, rice, pulses, millets, peas, sugarcane and Til. People roamed here and there in search of fertile land, pastures and water. They cleared jungles with tools made of iron. They prepared the soil for cultivation. With the use of iron weapons, enemies were defeated and their kingdom expanded. Utensils were made of mud. To fulfil the needs of the people there were craftsmen. Grain was stored in utensils or baskets made of mud etc. Initially the head of the clan or of the people was called 'Rajan'. They neither had a big kingdom nor a permanent army.

In the beginning there was no such practice of son becoming the ruler after his father's death. The ruler was decided by voting. Later on with districts coming into existence there was a change in ways to reign. The king built his capital and stayed over there with his permanent army. He governed from the capital and provided security and peace to his people. In return, he recovered tax from them. A portion of the tax was spent on administrative work and on the army. The rest of the tax money was spent on welfare or religious activities. Tax was the source of income for the kingdom.

The Raja was the supreme commander of the army, judge and head of the kingdom. To help him there were priests or ministers. In the Rig-Vedic age the king's post was not hereditary. In the later Vedic age it became hereditary. For power and authority the king, did "Rajsuya" and "Ashwamedha" yagnas. The king

was primarily from the kshatriya class. The people expected the king to look after their wellbeing and work for public welfare. The Aryans established the kingdoms of Kashi, Kausal and Videh in the upper gangetic plains.



Intext Questions 2.2

- Put a (✓) on correct and a (✗) on the wrong sentence.
 - Society during Vedic period was based on Varnas.
 - Vedic society was divided into three Varnas.
 - In society the status of Shudras was the lowest.
 - Vedic society was patriarchal.
- In Vedic age which were the Varnas in society?

- Who contributed to the economic life of the Vedic people?

2.3 Public life during the period of Ramayan and Mahabharat

We get information about public life from the stories of Ramayan and Mahabharata. In Ramayan we come to know about the life of Rama, son of king Dashratha of Ayodhya. There is narration about Ram-Ravan war after Sita's kidnapping. The society in this period valued honour and reputation. They followed religious and social rules and regulations. The society was divided into varnas and castes.

In the kingdom the position of the king was hereditary. The eldest son of the king was made the ruler. The king performed Yagnas such as "Rajsuya" and "Ashwamedha". In these Yagnas mainly members of the royal family participated but charioteers, priest, head of the army, courtier etc. were also present. Gifts were given to courtesans. Neighbouring kings were also invited. Work was done by the shudras.



2.1. Story of Ramayana

The epic of Ramayana gives us information about the Suryavanshi kshyatria traditions. It has been written in Sanskrit by Maharishi Valmiki. In different regions of India it has been written by various authors like Kamban Ramayan. Kosal; Videh and Lanka also are mentioned in Ramayana. The security during the yagnas was provided by the kings. To end the disturbance caused by the demons, Vishwamitra, took along with him Ram and Lakshman, the sons of king Dashratha. It was mandatory for the sons to obey the order of their father. System of Swayamvar existed for marriage. The kings were invited for it. The princesses chose their bridegroom according to their liking. Through Swayamvar, Raja Videh got his daughter Sita married to Ram, son of Dasaratha, the Raja of Ayodhya.

On the orders of his father, Ram along with his wife Sita and younger brother Lakshman, set out for the forest for fourteen years. Kaikaiye's son Bharat appealed to Ram to return but Ram adhered to dignity and decorum. During the period of exile, Sita was kidnapped by Ravan, the king of Lanka.

Ram with the help of Hanuman, Sugreev, Jamvant and Ravan's brother Vibhishan defeated Ravan the king of Lanka. After this Ram along with Sita and Lakshman returned to Ayodhya. In Ayodhya, Sita had to undergo 'Agni Pariksha to prove herself because one man doubted her purity.'

Even though Sita was pregnant, Ram still renounced her so as to keep the decorum of society. Fraud and manipulation were also used as an aid like Mareech took the form of a golden deer or Ravan kidnapped Sita by deceit. There is a difference between Ramayana and Ramcharitra Manas. Ramayana has been written in Sanskrit by Valmiki while Tulsidas wrote Ramcharita Manas in Awadhi language.



2.2.: *Story of Mahabharata.*

Mahabharata is another epic poem. The story is about 'Chandravanshi' Kshatriya kings. Mahabharata gives an account of the social events of that period. The story is about a war between cousins of one family. There was a war over land, power and predominance between Pandavs, sons of Pandu and Kauravs, sons of Dhitrashtra. The king's eldest son was his successor. What are the rules and criteria of a successor?

These are shown in Mahabharata. The sightless Dhitrashtra was considered unworthy for the throne of Hastinapur, so instead of Dhitrashtra the royal throne was given to Pandu, his younger brother. After the sudden death of Pandu, there was a power struggle for succession between Yudhishtar the son of Pandu and Duryodhan, the son of Dhitrashtra, Members of the assembly and supporters of the Pandavs. Due to this jealousy there was a battle at Kurushetra between Pandavs and Kauravs. Arjun refused to fight against his cousins. Then Krishana gave the sermon of Gita and ended Arjun's dilemma of warring with his brothers. In the battle of Mahabharata, fraud, manipulation, deceit and immoral methods were used, like, Draupadi being divested of her clothes, killing of young Abhimanyu and Ashwathama.

Society had 'Gotra' system. Marriages in the same gotra were not solemnized. Women after marriage were included in their husband's gotra. In Mahabharta period also, society had four varnas-brahmin, kshatriya, vaishya and shudra. They all had different areas of work. Varna system was rigid. In Mahabharta there is mention of regions like Kuru, Panchal, Ghandhar and other areas also.



Intext Questions 2.3

Q1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blank.

- Ramayan and Mahabharata are two important _____. (Epic poems / Novels)
- Krishna gave _____ the sermon of Gita. (Duryodhan / Arjun)
- _____ was the son of Dashratha, king of Ayodhya. (Ram / Shyam)
- During the time of Ramayan the system of marriage was _____. (Swayamvar / Inter gotra marriage)
- The king's _____ son became the ruler. (eldest / youngest)

Q2. For how many years did Ram stay in exile?

Q3. Between whom was the battle of Mahabharata fought?



What you have learnt

- Aryan's economic life depended on cattle rearing and farming.
- The main text of the Aryans was Vedas, which were four in number - Rig-Veda, Sama-Veda, Yajur-Veda and Atharva-Veda. Rig-Veda is the oldest Veda.
- The Aryan culture was called Vedic culture and it spread in the upper gangetic plains.

- Vedic culture is divided into two parts -early Vedic period (Rig-Vedas) and Later Vedic period.
- Vedic culture influenced the social, economic and political system.
- Society had Varna system. The whole society was split in Brahmins, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra.
- Epic poems Mahabharata and Ramayan give information about the social history of that time.



Terminal Questions

1. Vedic culture is divided into how many parts?

2. Which gods are mentioned in Rig-Veda?

3. What was the status of women in Rig-Vedic period?

4. What was harvested in the Vedic period?

5. In which texts do we get information about ancient Indian social history?

Let us do it

- What is the process related to yagnas performed in present times. Collect the information and compare it to yagna's of Vedic culture.
- Read and understand Ramayan and Mahabharta. Understand the difference between life at that time and present day. Discuss it among yourselves.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

- 2.1. 1. (a) Vedic Culture (b) Four (c) Rig-Veda
2. Vedic Sanskrit
3. Rig-Veda

- 2.2. 1. (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✓ (d) ✓
2. Four varnas - Brahmin, Kshtriya, Vaishya and Shudra.
3. Cattle rearing and farming.
- 2.3. 1. (a) Epic poem (b) Arjun (c) Ram
(d) Swayamvar (e) eldest
2. 14 Years
3. Between the Kauravs and Pandavs.

Terminal Questions

- Q1. In two parts - early vedic and later vedic culture.
- Q2. Indra, Sun, Wind etc.
- Q3. The status of women in Rig-Vedic period was good. They were entitled to education and property. There was no purdah system.
- Q4. Barley, wheat, rice, pulse, sugarcane, peas, millet, til etc.
- Q5. Ramayan and Mahabharata.

Life After Vedic Civilization

After Vedic civilization in 6th century BC., many powerful and big kingdoms emerged in north-east India. They were 16 in number. These emerging kingdoms were called big districts. In this period the use of equipments and tools made from iron was the reason for the growth of agriculture. Business and industry got a boost. It was the beginning of urbanization.

Magadh was established by Raja Bimbisar, descendants of Haryanka dynasty but the rulers of Nanda dynasty made Magadh a powerful kingdom. Chandragupta Maurya fought against the atrocities and injustice of Ghananand and with the help of Chanakya established the Mauryan dynasty in Magadh. In this chapter, after the Vedic civilization, we will study the social, economic and political system of Nand and Maurya dynasties.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe the growth of districts and provinces;
- Explain the social, economic and political system of Nanda dynasty,
- Discuss the main rulers of Mauryan Empire;
- Explain the reasons why Ashoka was a great Emperor? and
- Describe the social, economic and political system under the Mauryan rulers.

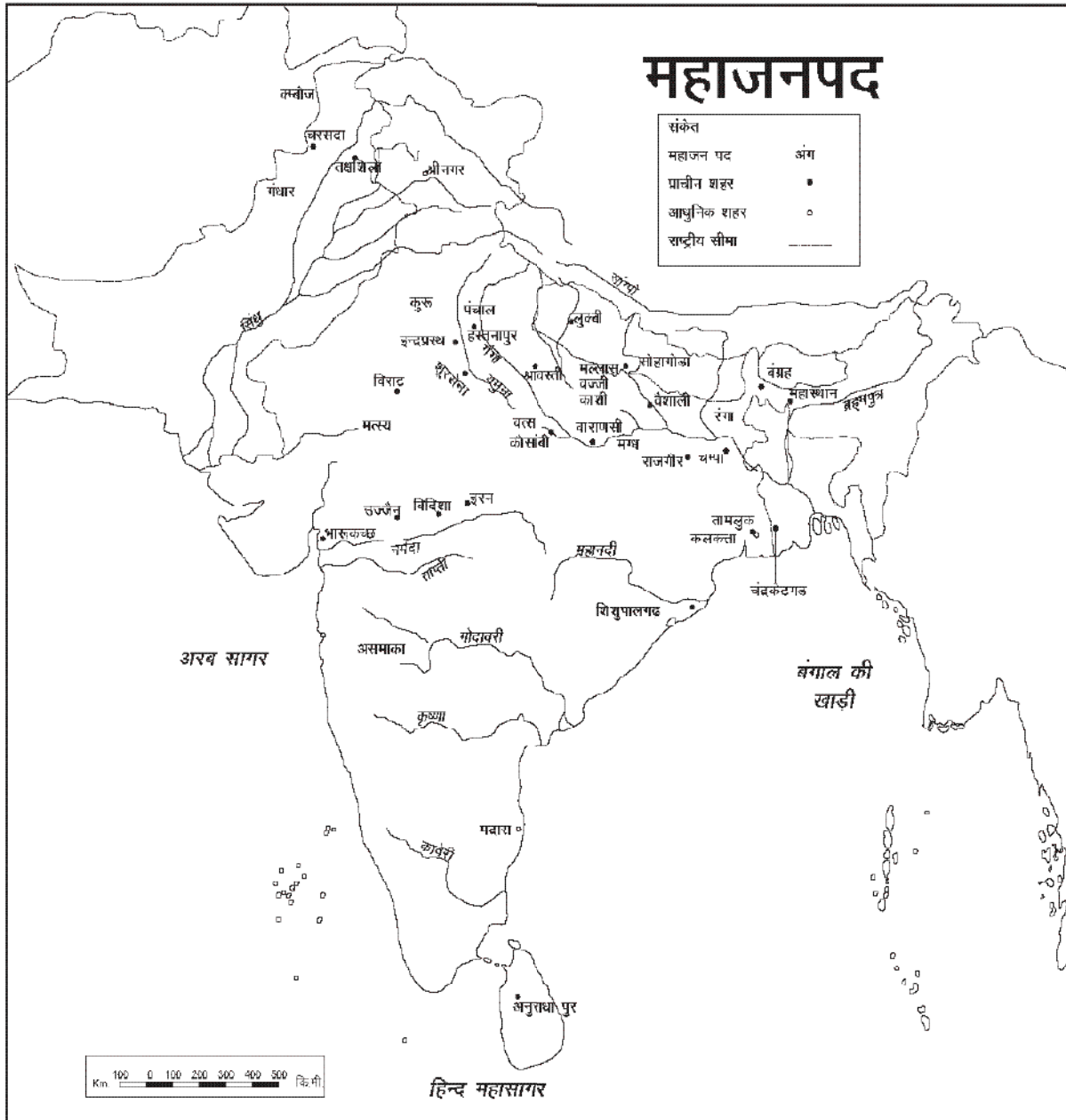
3.1 Districts, Provinces and Nanda Dynasty - Social, Economic and Political Systems

Meaning of 'Janpad' - Land where the people (Jan) of the clan put their feet (Pad). Janpad or district was a unit in the initial period of governance. It was a fortified city. A number of evidences has been found about a 'Janpad'. The pictures below of grey and red coloured mud utensils have been discovered during excavations. There are lines and a collection of shapes on these utensils. The pictures of grey utensils were found during excavation at Delhi's, Bhorgarh, Mandoli, Tilpat and Purana Qila. Utensils were also discovered at Hastinapur near Meerut and Atranji Khera near Etah.



3.1. Utensils discovered during excavations

In 2500 B.C some 'Janpads' cleared forests using equipments and tools made of iron. This led to growth in agriculture. In the field of agriculture there was more production of crops. They made weapons from iron. In this way the Janpads increased their power and area and created big kingdoms.



3.2. Mahajanpad

Those big and powerful 'Janpads' were called 'Mahajanpads'. These Mahajanpads were 16 in number or sodasha Mahajanpads: Vajji, Kashi, Kasala, Malla, Kuru, Panchala, Vatsa, Avanti, Kamboja, Gandhara, Asmaka, Matsya and Surasena. Among them the most powerful 'Mahajandpads' were Magadh, Kasala and Avanti. Buddhist text 'Anguttara Nikaya gives us information about these sixteen Mahajanpads.

These Mahajanpads had one capital. The king ruled from here. The king had his own army. The cities were fortified and fortresses were constructed to provide security.

To perform administrative and religious work, the king collected tax from his subjects. In this period iron and coins (as currency) were used. This period saw the development of state organization and it was the age of religious changes. Magadha emerged in the form of a powerful kingdom. There were many reasons why Magadha was so powerful. A large area of Magadha was forested and the army was able to get elephants from the forest.

Magadha region had iron mines from where iron was obtained. Iron was used to make tools and equipments for farming and also for weapons.

Cultivated area expanded and there was economic prosperity due to increase in crop production. Magadha region was near the rivers, Ganga and Sone. These rivers gave water for irrigation. Floods brought alluvial soil which increased fertility. The rivers provided easy and cheap way of transportation. The capital of Magadha, Giribraj (Rajgir) was surrounded by hills. The founder of Magadha was Bimbisara the ruler of Haryanka dynasty. His successors were Ajatshatru and Udayana. They made Magadha powerful. Afterwards Shishunaga and the rulers of Nanda dynasty also made it prosperous.

Nanda dynasty was established by Mahapadmananda. He ruled from BC.364 to BC.345. Mahapadmananda's army was quite big and powerful. He made Kalinga a part of his empire. During the Nanda rule, society was based on Varna system. Along with Varna system, caste practice was also prevalent. It was divided into Brahmin, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra. The social condition of Shudras and women was bad. Tax was recovered in the form of crops, cattle, items made by craftsmen or in cash. The state's main source of income was land tax. 1/6th of the produce was taken by the state in the form of land tax.

At that time, fallow land was made fit for farming, mining, metallurgy and business was promoted. There was an increase in the number of artisans. Varanasi and Mathura were important cities, where cloth was made.

Politically the king's position was the highest. After him came the commander of the army, ministers and other officers. The king's decision was final in all matters. There were two types of courts. Law, army, economic and religious matters were under the king. The king also functioned as the chief commander of the army and chief judge. In the kingdom there were central and provincial rulers. The central rule was directly under the king. The provinces were ruled by the relatives, friends and confidantes of the king. They helped in maintaining peace and in collecting tax in the state.

The last ruler of Nanda dynasty was Ghanananda. It was during this time that Alexander (BC327 - BC326) attacked India. Ghanananda was a belligerent, oppressive and cruel king. The people of his kingdom were unhappy with him. The common man was displeased and angry. Chandragupta Maurya took advantage of this situation and along with the people, he rebelled against Ghanananda. Chandragupta Maurya killed Ghanananda and ended Nanda dynasty. After the end of Nanda dynasty, Chandragupta Maurya started

the 'Maurya dynasty in Magadha'. In establishing the Maurya dynasty his guru Chanakya helped him. Later on Chanakya became the prime minister of Chandragupta Maurya. Chanakya is considered a great political master.



Intext Questions 3.1

Q1. Choose the correct word to fill in the blanks.

- a. Janpad was a fortified _____ (City/Village)
- b. The number of Mahajanpadas were _____. (16 / 18)
- c. The ruins of the Janpadas were found in _____. (Antranji Kher / Mumbai)

Q2. Who ended the Nanda dynasty?

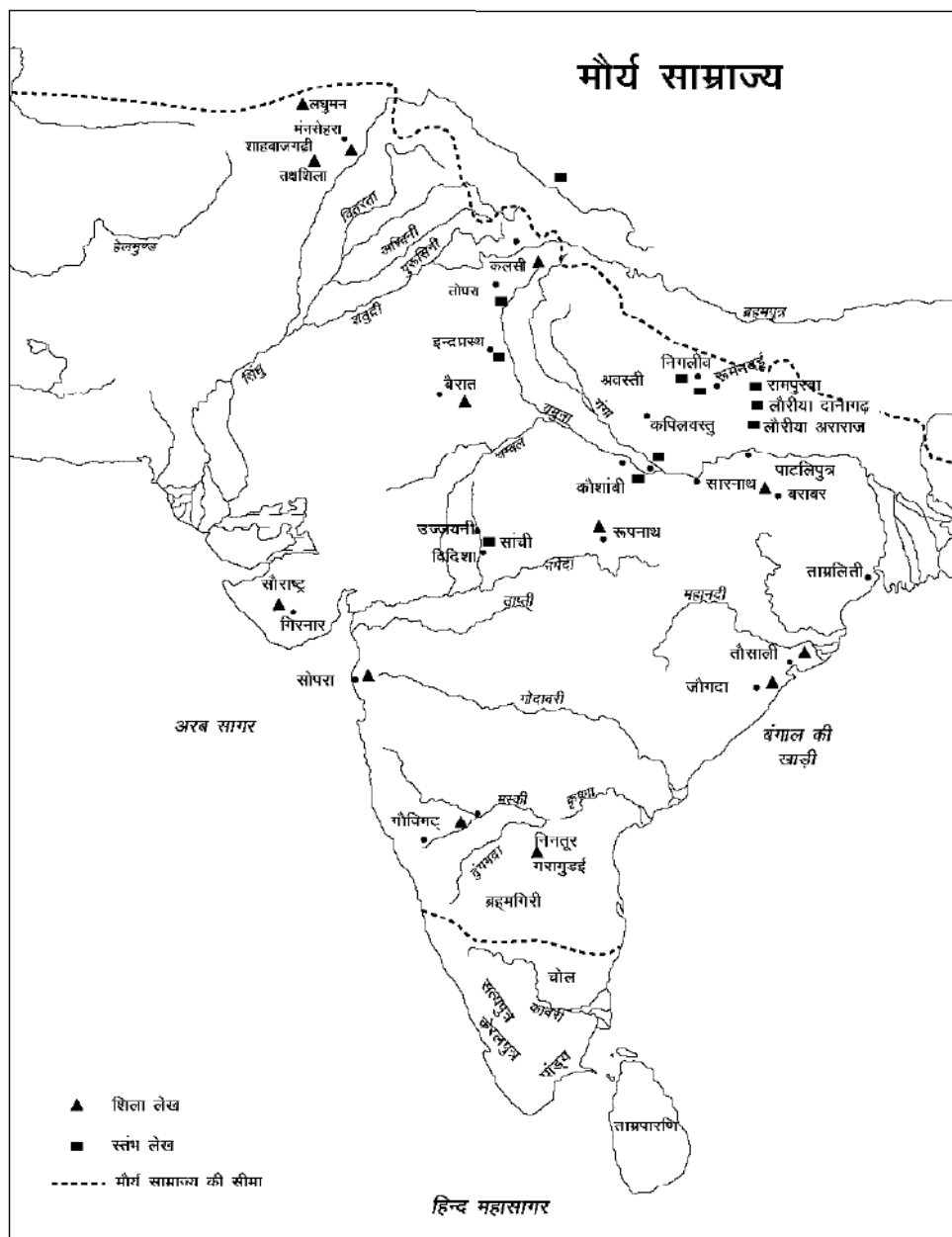
Q3. Who established Magadha?

Q4. Who was the last ruler of Nanda dynasty?

3.2 Magadha Under the Mauryan Empire

You have read that the Mauryan empire was established by Chandra Gupta Maurya (B.C 322 - B.C 297). Chandragupta Maurya killed the last ruler of Nanda dynasty. This was the beginning of the Mauryan empire in Magadha. In this he was helped by his mentor and minister Chanakya.

Chandragupta Maurya got the huge Nanda army as a legacy. With this huge and powerful army he conquered a large part of India. Chandragupta's son (B.C 297 - B.C 272) Bindusar spread his empire in south India. Bindusar started with Greece, business and cultural dealings.



3.3. Mauryan empire

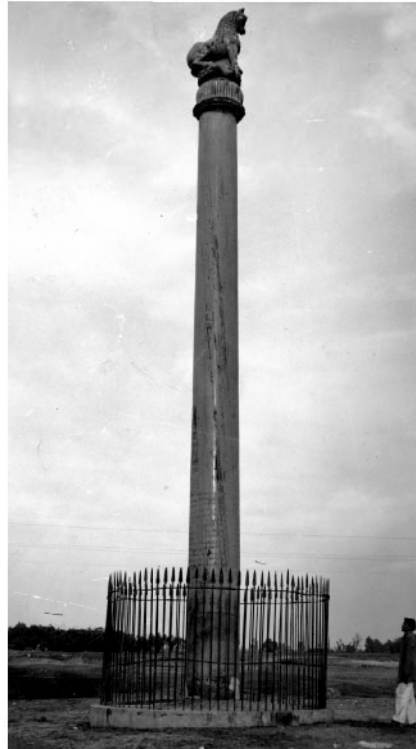
Emperor Ashoka (B.C 272 - B.C 232) was the most famous king of Mauryan dynasty. During his time the Mauryan Empire spread over the largest area. In BC 260 Ashoka invaded Kalinga and included it in the Mauryan Empire but in this war a large number of men were killed. To avenge this defeat the women of Kalinga picked up swords in their hand and declared to fight against Ashoka. After this Ashoka abandoned his policy of war and renounced arms and weapons. He adopted the path of religion and peace. Instead of victory in war he adopted the policy of 'Dharma'.

To propagate peace and Dharma, Ashoka constructed tall pillars throughout his empire. To spread the message, he installed inscriptions in Brahmi, Kharoshti and Armaica languages. To propagate religion he

started Dhamma. The lion headed columns built by Ashoka at Sarnath, have been accepted by India as the national emblem.



a. Rampura Pillar



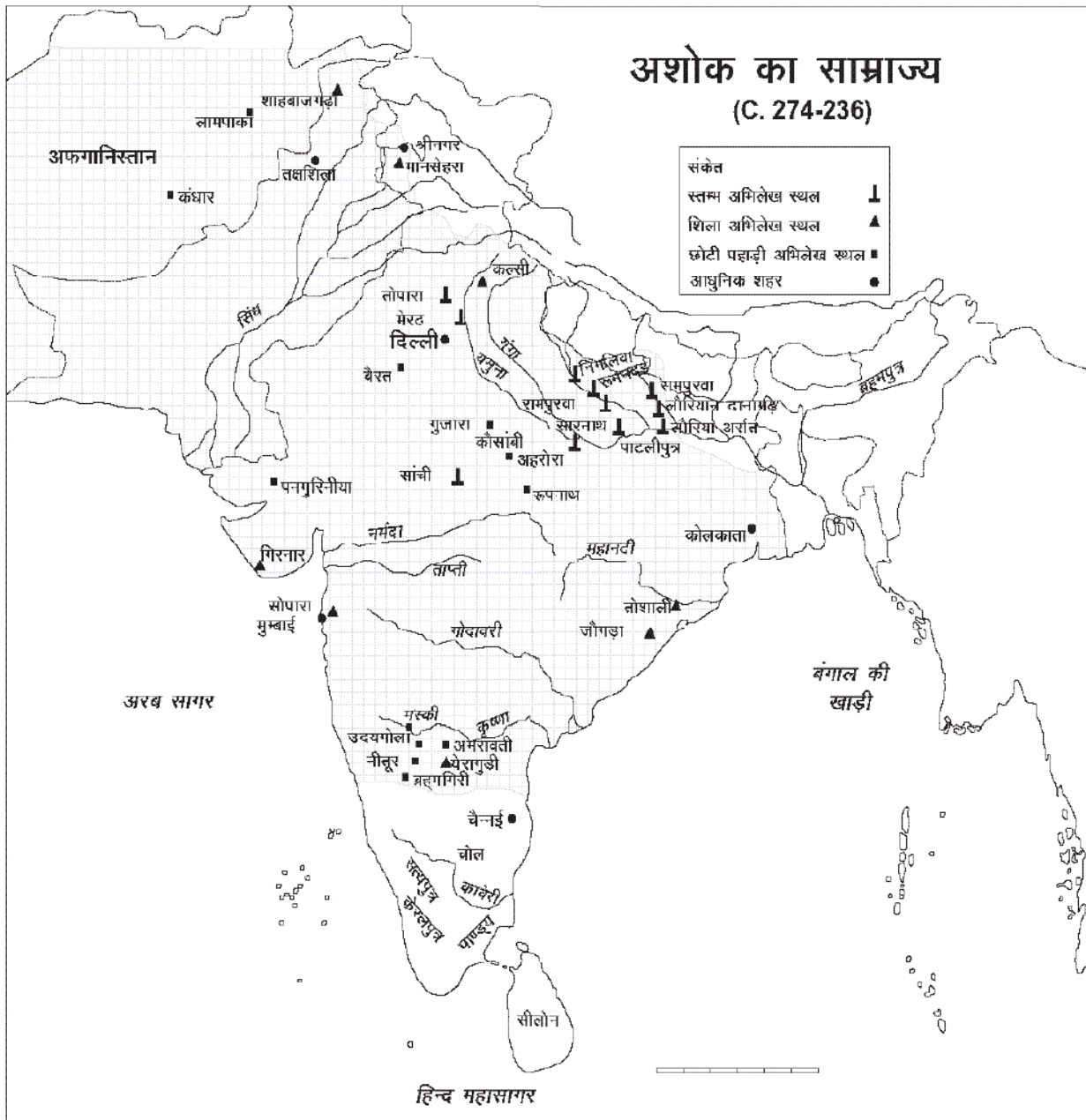
b. Loriya Nandangarh Pillar



c. Lion Pillar, Sarnath

Photo 3.4. Ashoka Pillars

Ashoka performed many, different kinds of work for the welfare of the people. He constructed roads, arranged for the security of travelers, planted shady trees on both sides of the road, dug wells for water, constructed rest houses and lodges and built hospitals for the treatment of men and animals. Emperor Ashoka was called a 'Great Ruler' because he worked for the good of his people and for his welfare schemes. Ashoka started 'Dhamma' which had the following features - compassion, donation, truth, purity and good behaviour with everyone. On inscription in pillar - 3. Ashoka solicits the people to control 'violence, torture, anger and jealousy. On rock inscription - 1 he has restrained people from animal killing. Ashoka spread the message of peace in the world.



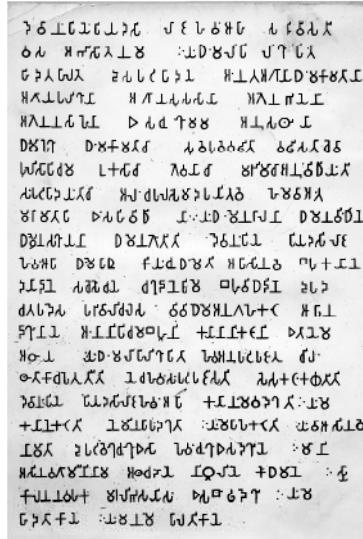
3.5. Ashoka's Empire

Varna system in Mauryan society faced resistance from Buddhism and Jainism. Still Brahmins and Kashtriya had high position in society. Varna system was present in society. Growth in agriculture, business and artisanship also led to slight improvement in the status of prostitutes and shudras. Shudras were now included in agriculture work and artisanship.

In Mauryan age, business, agriculture and industry got a boost. Land tax received by the state from agriculture was the main source of income. The main centres of cloth production were - Varanasi, Mathura, Bengal, Gandhar and Ujjain. Minerals and Metallurgy were other economic activities. Business was

conducted both by land and water routes. Patliputra, Takshila were important business centres which were connected to other regions. Tramlipti in east (West Bengal) and Bharuch in West (Bhrig Kutch) were important ports. The credit for using iron on a large scale goes to the Mauryan rulers. The Mauryan rulers had full rights over the production of iron. There was greater demand for iron from the army, from farming sector and from industry.

In the Mauryan period, apart from land tax, other taxes like village area, occupation and hiranya tax were also recovered. Mainly Rice, Barley, Millet, Wheat, Sugar Cane, Pulses, Peas and Oilseeds were grown.



3.6. Incribed Column of Ashoka



3.7. (a) Dhamek Stupa, built by Ashoka



3.7. (b) Sanchi Stupa built by Ashoka

In Mauryan politics and administration, the king played the main role. To assist the king, there was a council of ministers. In administration, taxation, legislation, law and order, war and religion, the king gave the final order. The administration of the kingdom was divided into central and provincial governance.

The central rule was directly under the king while the provinces were governed by the relatives and confidantes of the king. Protection from external attacks and maintaining peace and order was made sure by the army. The courts were at village, province and central level. These courts were of two types - Civil and Criminal. The capital of Magadh was Patliputra. Apart from this there were four provinces. The capital of North-west India was Takshila, of south India Survangiri, east India Tosali, of western India Ujjain. The provinces were controlled by the princes who were called 'Kumar'.

The administration of Paliputra was taken care of by six committees of five members each. These committees monitored industry, foreign affairs, birth and death registration, business and market operations and tax collection. Records from the time of Ashoka, Chanakya's 'Arthashastra', Megasthenes 'Indica' drama 'Mudrarakshas and Buddhist texts' written by Vishakhdutta 'Dipansh' and Mahavansh give details about Mauryan administration and the public life of that period.

Promotion of Buddhism policy of no war, love for peace made the army weak and an incompetent successor led to the downfall of Mauryan Empire. The last weak Mauryan ruler Brihadirath was killed by his army commander Pushpamitra Sangha. After the end of Mauryas, Pushpamitra Sangha started the Sangha dynasty.



Intext Questions 3.2

- Match the following
 - Chanakya
 - Bimbisar
 - Capital of South India
 - Mudrarakshas
 - Haryanka Dynasty
 - Suvargir
 - Drama
 - Arthashastra
- Fill in the blank by choosing the correct word.
 - The most famous ruler of the Mauryan Dynasty was _____ (Bimbisar / Ashoka)
 - In BC 261 ____ was invaded by Mauryan ruler Ashoka. (Ujjain / Kalinga)
 - Records of Ashoka are in _____ and Kharoshti script. (Devnagri / Brahmi)
 - Greek diplomat Megasthenes wrote _____ (Arthshastra / Indica)
- Name any three rulers of the Mauryan dynasty.

- What was the main source of income during the Mauryan period?

- Who ended the Mauryan dynasty?



What you have learnt

- Janpad was a fortified town.

- Iron tool and growth of farming made powerful states. 'Mahajanpads', they had a capital, and army and a tax system. There were 16 Mahajanpads.
- Magadha was the most powerful 'Mahajanpad'. Its capital was Giribrij (Rajgir) and Patliputra. Excess of iron and elephants, fertile land, means of irrigation, a protected capital surrounded by hills, river and availability of road transport and ambitious rulers, made Magadha powerful.
- Mauryan period was the age of agricultural development and religious - social changes.
- In Magadh, Mahapadmanand was a powerful ruler of the Nanda dynasty.
- Chandragupta Maurya established the Mauryan dynasty after killing Ghananad, the last ruler of Nanda dynasty.
- 1/6 of the crop produced was recovered in the form of Land tax.

After the war of Kalinga, Emperor Ashoka worked for the welfare of the people and gave up the policy of war. He built roads lodges and hospitals, propagated Buddhism. He spread the message of peace through inscriptions. He is called 'Ashoka the Great'.

- Ashoka's inscriptions are throughout India in Brahmi, Kharoshti and Armaica script.
- The Last Mauryan king Brihadirath was killed by his army commander Pushpamitra Sangha. He ended the Mauryan dynasty and established Sangha Dynasty.



Terminal Questions

- The city administration of Patliputra was taken care of by committees of five members each. How many committees were there?

a. 5	b. 6
c. 7	d. 8
- Which text gives us information about Mauryan administration?

a. Arthashastra	b. Indica
c. Inscriptions of Ashoka	d. All the above
- Match the following

a. North west India	(a) Ujjain
b. South India	(b) Tosali
c. Eastern India	(c) Survargir
d. Western India	(d) Taxila

4. What is the meaning of the word 'Janpad'?
5. How many 'Maha Janpads' were there?
6. Which one was the most powerful Mahajanpad?
7. King of which dynasty established Magadha?
8. Write three features of Ashoka's 'Dhamma'?

Let us do it

1. On the map of India show the places where we can find Ashoka's inscriptions.
2. Discuss the features of Ashoka's 'Dhamma'.
3. On the map of India, show Magdha, Kalinga, Ujjain and Patliputra. Answers

Answer Key

Intext Questions

3. 1. 1. (a) Town (b) 16 (c) Autarji Khera.
 2. By Changragupta Maurya.
 3. By King Bimbisar of Nanda dynasty.
 4. Ghananda
 5. Land tax
3. 2. 1. (a) 4 (b) 1 (c) 2 (d) 3
 2. (a) Ashoka
(b) Kalinga
(c) Brahmi
(d) Indica
 3. Chandragupta Maurya, Bindusar, Ashoka, Brihdirath (any three)
 4. Land tax recovered from agriculture.
 5. By Mauryan army commander Pushpamitra Sangha

Terminal Questions

1. 6
2. All the above

3. 1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (a)
4. Land which is inhabited by the people of the clan.
5. Sixteen
6. Magadha, Kosal and Avanti
7. Bimbsar ruler of Haryanka dynasty
8. 1. Pity 2. Donation 3. Truth
4. Purity 5. Good conduct

Social, Economic and Political System after the Mauryas

The last Mauryan ruler Brihadrath was killed by his army commander Pushyamitra Shunga. For this reason in BC-197, Maurya dynasty came to an end. After the Maurya's the rulers of Sangha dynasty and Kanva dynasty ruled over Magadh. But in the absence of a powerful central power, invaders from central Asia and western China invaded India. The invaders were Indo Greeks, Shaka, Pahlav and Kushans. The king of kushan dynasty, Kanishka brought a change in the social, religious, economic and political system. Other regional powers like - Kalinga, Satvahanas and states from the south - Chola, Chera and Pandya increased their power. After this, in Indian history the rulers of Gupta dynasty, established a strong state and spread their empire.

After the decline of the Gupta dynasty the regional rulers again became powerful. Harshvardhan was the last ancient, great and powerful ruler who had united north India under one thread of unity.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe social, economic and political life after the Mauryan rulers;
- Explain the reign of Kanishka;
- Discuss the articulate system of Gupta empire;
- Describe the system prevailing at the time of the last ancient and powerful Indian ruler, Harshvardhan and
- Compare the south Indian states of Chola, Chera and Pandya.

Pushyamitra Sangha killed Brihadirath the last and weak ruler of the Mauryan dynasty in BC - 187, Pushyamitra Sangha laid the foundation of the Sangha dynasty, but the last ruler of the Sangha dynasty was killed by his minister Vasudev Kanva. Vasudeva Kanha established the Kanva dynasty. They ruled for a very short period.

In the north - eastern frontier area of India, Greek people who had come from Bactria were known as Bactrians or Indo-Greeks. Indian Greek King Demetrius and Pushyamitra Sangha also fought a battle with each other. Among the Indo-Greek rulers the most famous was Manender. He ruled from BC-155 to BC -130. There is a description of Manender in the famous Buddhist text 'Milindpanho'.

The Hindi name of Sythian dynasty was 'Shaka'. The people of Shaka dynasty first came to India from Central Asia in the first century BC. The boundaries of Shaka rulers were from Takshila to Mathura and upto Gujrat. The most famous king of Shaka dynasty was Rudradaman. Rudradaman is mentioned in the records of Junagadh (Gimar). The people of Parthieon (Pahlav) dynasty were basically from Iran. Information about the rulers of Parthieon dynasty is available from 'Takht-eh-Bahi' near Peshawar. It is thought that Gondofernis and Saint Thomas were contemporaries. Saint Thomas converted Gondofernis and his brother to Christianity. Yuezhi race from western China defeated Shaka's and Pehlav's. The people of Yuezhi race were known as Kushans. The first ruler of the Kushan dynasty was Kuzula Kadphisis.

Then his son Vema Kadphisis became the ruler but the most famous kushan ruler was Kanishka. In the middle of first century BC. the Satavahana's emerged as a powerful dynasty. The Satavahana empire extended from Krishna river in south to Godavari river in the north. Their capital was near Aurangabad (present day Paithan) in Maharashtra. Gautimiputra Shatkarni defeated Nahapana, ruler of Shaka's. The other rulers of this dynasty were Yagshri Satakarni and Vashthiputra Pulumani.

In the fourth quarter of the third century the Satavahana dynasty declined.

From 300 BC to 300 AD there were three dynasties in southern India - Chola, Chera and Pandya.

We get to know about them from 'Sangam -Sahitya..' This text tells us about the early history of south India. It portrays the Tamil society and its economic conditions and culture. After the Mauryan age the economic activities were - farming, trade, craft and business. Even after the Maurya's there was progress in internal and external trade. There were two important trade routes - (1) Northern Route, which connected north-east area to north west regions and (2) Southern Route, which connected south and north India.

Trade with Roman empire was through Red Sea and Persian Gulf. There is mention of Indo-Roman trade in an ancient description. Romans in lieu of gold and silver bought pepper, cloth, perfume, spices sandal wood, muslin, precious stones and ivory. Handicrafts flourished. In 'Milindpanho' there is mention of 750 trades. Out of this 60 were based on handicraft. A group of traders and craftsmen of one kind were

called 'Class'. The 'Class' worked like a bank. It decided the value and quality of an object. In this period, Gandhar sculpture, art and science of architecture developed. Bodhi statues, stupas, monasteries and Viharas were made from Mathura art design and Amravati art - design.



4.1. Mahatma Buddha

Even after the Mauryan period, there was Varna system in the society. In fact caste system became more prevalent. Women did not get an equal status in society. Brahmins and Kshatriyas had an influence on society. The position of Shudras was inferior.

South India did not have a class system like north India. Brahmins held a place in society. Vedic rituals and ceremonies were held but Brahmins did not have special rights in society. A person's identity was based on his trade. Warriors were given a high position in society. After the Maurya period regional rulers, were the kings.

The smallest unit of administration was a Gram. The king governed with the help of his ministers. Satavahan kings gave Buddhists and Brahmins tax free land as donation. Satavahan rulers wanted to maintain the class system in society.



Intext Questions 4.1

Q1. Fill in the blanks.

- _____ established the Kanva dynasty. (Vasudeva Kanva / Pushyamitra Shunga)
- Among the Indo-Greek rulers _____ was most famous. (Demetrius / Menender)
- Information about Rudra daman is available in _____ records. (Junagadh / Takht-eh-Bahi)
- _____ was the most famous ruler of Kushan dynasty. (Kadphisis / Kanishka)

Q2. Name the two important trade routes after the Mauryan age?

Q3. Which Satavahan ruler defeated Nahapan?

Q4. The rulers of which dynasty gave tax free land as donation to the Brahmins?

Q5. What was the social system which the Satavahan rulers wanted to maintain?

4.2 Life of Kushan ruler - Kanishka

The people of Kushan dynasty were from Yeuzi race of western China and came to India after defeating the rulers of Shaka and Pahlva dynasty. The Kushan rulers were, Kazul Kadphisis, Vem Kadphisis and Kanishka. Out of these, Kanishka was the most famous ruler. His rule is believed to be from 78 AD. From that time onwards he started the Saka era. From central Asia to the whole of north India, up to Varanasi, Kaushambi, Shravasti, he spread his empire. The Kushan rulers assumed the title of 'Devputra'. Kanishka propagated and publicized Bodh religion.

He gave protection to Bodh religion. He held the fourth Buddhist conference at Kundalvan, near Shrinagar (Jammu & Kashmir). A huge number of Buddhist monks participated in it. Buddhist religion had divided into two sects- Hinyana and Mahayana. Kanishka adopted the Mahayana sect of Buddhism. Kanishka constructed a Buddhist stupa at Purushpur (Peshawar). Kanishka is also called another Ashoka because he propogated and spread Buddhism. During his rule, there was progress in the field of literature and medicine. The writer of 'Charak Sahitya' Charak and the writer of 'Bodhcharitra' Ashwagosh, lived in the time of Kanishka.



4.2. A statue from Kushan Period.

Kanishka encouraged the art of making sculptures. Gandhar and Mathura art form of sculpture developed. Statues of Buddha and Bodhistava were made. The administration of Kushans was distributed in small small regions. Every region was monitored by a Maharshatriya. While doing horse riding the Kushan kings wore pants. The decline of the Kushan empire started in 3rd century.



4.3. Coins of Kushan Period



Intext Questions 4.2

- Q1. Put a (✓) on the right answer and (X) on the wrong answer.
- The people of Kushan dynasty were from Yeuzi race of western China.
 - Kanishka was not a famous ruler of Kushan dynasty.
 - During Kanishka's time, Both religion had divided into two sects.
 - Charak and Ashwagosh were there at the time of Kanishka.

Q2. When did Kanishka begin the Saka era?

Q3. Where was the fourth Buddhist conference held?

Q4. In which century did the decline of the Kushan dynasty start?

Q5. What title was adopted by the Kushan kings?

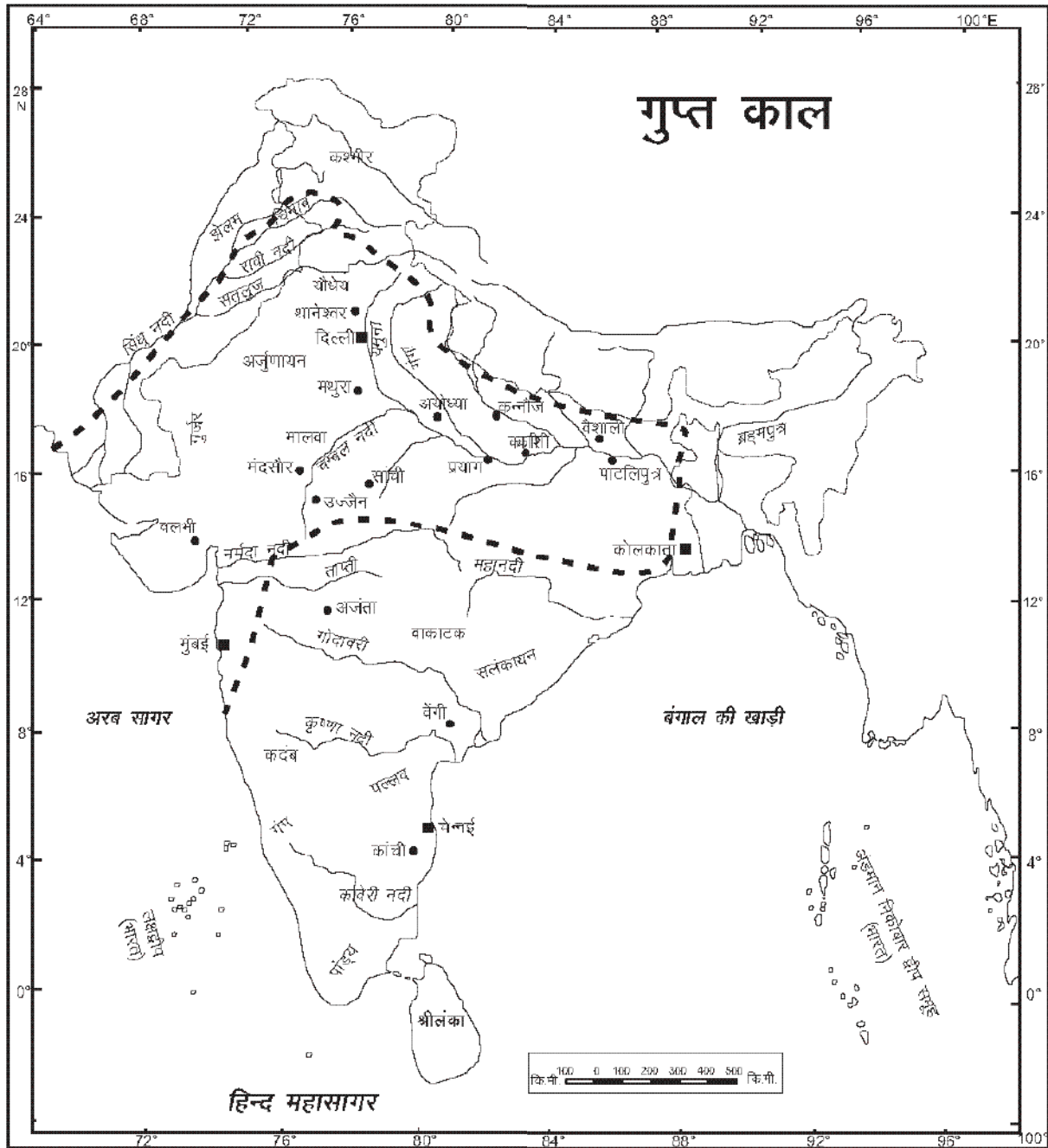
After the decline of the Kushan dynasty, northern India saw the rise of the Gupta dynasty. It was established by Shri Gupta. His son, Ghatotkach took the title of Maharaja. Chandragupta 1, Samudragupta, Chandragupta 2, Kumargupta and Skandgupta were great rulers. The rulers of Gupta dynasty managed their administration from eastern Uttar Pradesh and Magadh (Bihar). The Gupta's ruled from 315 AD to 550 AD. Chandragupta 1 (319-334 AD) was the first influential ruler of Gupta dynasty. He married princess Kumar Devi of the Licchavi dynasty. Chandragupta 1 empire was up to Magadh, Saket (Ayodhya) Prayag (Allahabad). His capital was Patliputra (Patna).

Samudragupta (335-375 AD) was the successor of Chandragupta 1. Samudragupta adopted the policy of war and victory. Samudragupta defeated nine kingdoms of north India and twelve kingdoms of south India. He also defeated eighteen tribal races. He accepted gifts from the rulers of South-East Asia. Samudragupta performed the Ashwamedha Yajna. Samudragupta is called the 'Napoleon of India' because of his huge victories. He was a great mentor of poets, musicians and education. Samudragupta has been shown playing the 'Veena' on gold coins. 'Prayag Prashth' written by Harivish tells us about Samudragupta's achievements.



4.4. Coins from Samudragupta Era.

Chandragupta II became the successor of Samudragupta. He is also known as Vikramaditya. He consolidated his position through marriages. By getting married to Kubernaga, he established friendly relations with Naga Kings. He married his daughter Prabhavati to Vakataka ruler Rudrasen II. Chandragupta was a patron of art and literature. Great Sanskrit poet Kalidasa was there in this period.



4.5. Gupta Empire.

Chinese Buddhist traveler Fahein came to India during the period of Chandragupta 2 (401-411 AD). Fahein has given an account of life during the Gupta period. During the rule of Chandragupta 2 there was peace in his kingdom which saw the progress of agriculture, trade, business, literature, science and art. The life of the citizens was comfortable and prosperous. It is for this reason that, the reign of Chandragupta 2 is called the 'golden period' of ancient India.

Kumargupta (415-455 AD) like his father Chandragupta 2 safeguarded his empire but he was facing challenges from the Huns. Skandgupta the successor of Kumargupta thwarted the invasion of the Huns but the successors after Skandgupta made the Gupta empire weak. The Gupta empire declined due to the invasion of the Huns.



4.6. Fahein



Intext Questions 4.3

- Q1. Put a (✓) on the correct and a (X) on the wrong sentence -
- After the Kushan dynasty, North India saw the rise of the Gupta dynasty. ()
 - Gupta dynasty was established by Chandragupta 1. ()
 - Chandragupta 1 got married to Lichhawi princess Kumardevi. ()
 - Fahien was a Chinese Buddhist traveler. ()
- Q2. The achievements of which Gupta ruler are mentioned in 'Prayag Prashasti'? ()
-
- Q3. What was the main reason for the decline of the Gupta Empire?
-
- Q4. The reign of which Gupta ruler is called the golden period of ancient India?
-
- Q5. Where was the capital of Chandragupta?
-

4.4

Harshvardhan

The downfall of Gupta the empire started with the attacks by the Huns. The power of Gupta empire started weakening and due to this a number of regional rulers in north India ascended to power. The major ones were - Pushyabhuti dynasty of Thanesar, Maukhir rulers of Kannauj and Vallabhii's of Maitrak dynasty. In the south Chalukya and Pallav dynasty appeared as strong rulers.

After the decline of the Gupta dynasty, Pushyabuti dynasty was the main rulers. Their capital was in Thanesar (Kurukshetra). Prabhakar Vardhan defeated the Huns in Punjab and Haryana and strengthened their standing. After Prabhakar Vardhan's death his elder son ascended the throne but he was killed by the Sashank rulers of Bengal and Bihar.

In 606 AD Harshvardhan was coronated. At that time Harshvardhan was barely 16 years old. After ascending the throne he added his sister Rajshri's kingdom into his own kingdom. Harshvardhan married his daughter to Dhruvsen II the ruler of Maitrak dynasty. Friendly relations were established between both the rulers. Harshvardhan consolidated Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. He expanded his kingdom up to river Narmada in the south. Harshvardhan assumed the title of Dev. He encouraged agriculture, trade, business and art. He was a patron of scholars. His courtiers were poet Banbhatt who wrote 'Harshcharitra'.

Famous Chinese Buddhist traveler Hieun Sang came to India from 629 - 644 AD. He gave a description of his travels in India in C-Yu-Ki and said that Harshvardhan was a great ruler. Hieun sang has given a description about society and the system of that time.

Harshvardhan was defeated by Chalukya ruler Pulakeshin II in 646 AD. Harshvardhan the ruler from Pushyabhuti dynasty was the last great king of India. Northern India bonded under one head and he expanded his kingdom up to Narmada. Harshvardhan himself was a scholar and respected other scholars. He patronized literature, art and religion. After his death there was a period of political uncertainty in India which continued till 8th century. At that time Gujjar - Pratiharas emerged powerful. At this time, Nalanda was an important centre of Buddhist learning.



4.7. Hieun Sang



Intext Questions 4.4

- Match the following

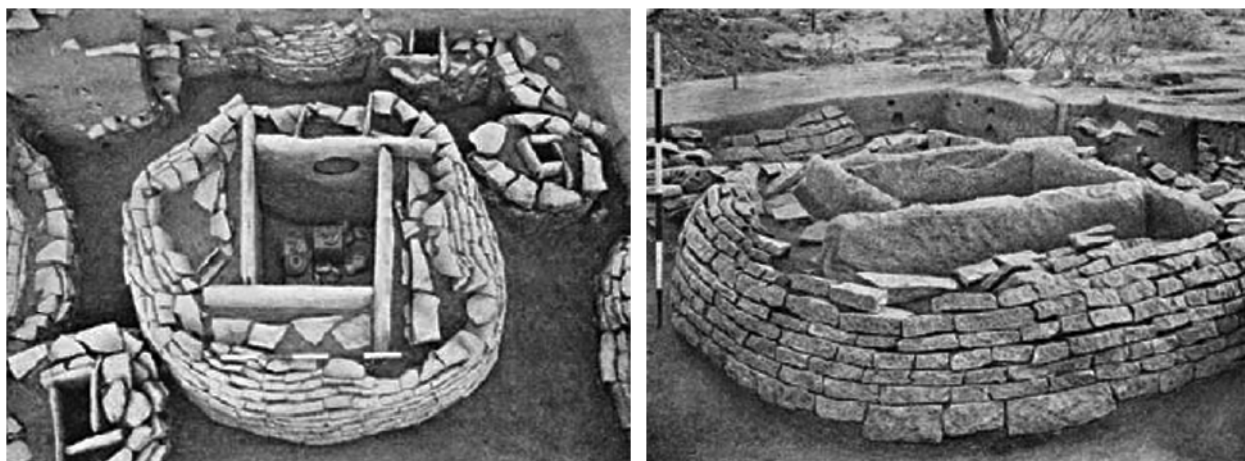
a. Thanesar	(i) Maukhir
b. Kannauj	(ii) Maitrak
c. Vallabli	(iii) Pushyabhuti
- Choose the correct word and fill in the blank,
 - Harshvardhan was coronated in _____ (606AD / 607AD)

- b. Harshvardhan made _____ his capital. (Kannauj / Patna)
- c. Harshvardhan was defeated by Pusakeshin II on the banks of river _____ (Narmada / Ganga)
3. Who was Harshvardhan's court poet?
4. Which Chinese traveler came to India during the period of Harshvardhan?
5. What was the name of Harshvardhan's sister?

4.5 Kingdoms of the South - Chola, Chera and Pandya

South India had a megalithic culture during the period from 1200 BC to 300 BC. In this time huge stones were put on graves and then the people were buried. This culture is called megalithic. Black- red utensils of that period have been found. In every grave tools made of iron as well as arrows, daggers, swords, tridents, spades, ploughs, hoe and sickle have been found.

After the megalithic culture, Sangam period began. From 300 BC to 300AD is considered the period of Sangam culture. 'Sangam' means a conference of poets in which Tamilian poets wrote Tamil poems. In Sangam literature we get information about the early period of three royal dynasties and their rulers - Chola, Chera, and Pandyas.



4.8. (a) (b) Megalithic Graves.

The capital of the Pandya kings was Madurai. The Pandya rulers organized three conferences in Madurai. The particular topic of any poem written in Sangam literature was either love or war. They ruled in the form of a clan. Korkai in Tirunavelli area of Tamilnadu was their main port. It was famous for pearls.

The capital of Chera (Kerala) kingdom was vanij (near Karur in Tamilnadu). Apart from being the capital, Vanij, was the centre for trade and art. Mujrisis on the south-western shore was the best harbour. Ships

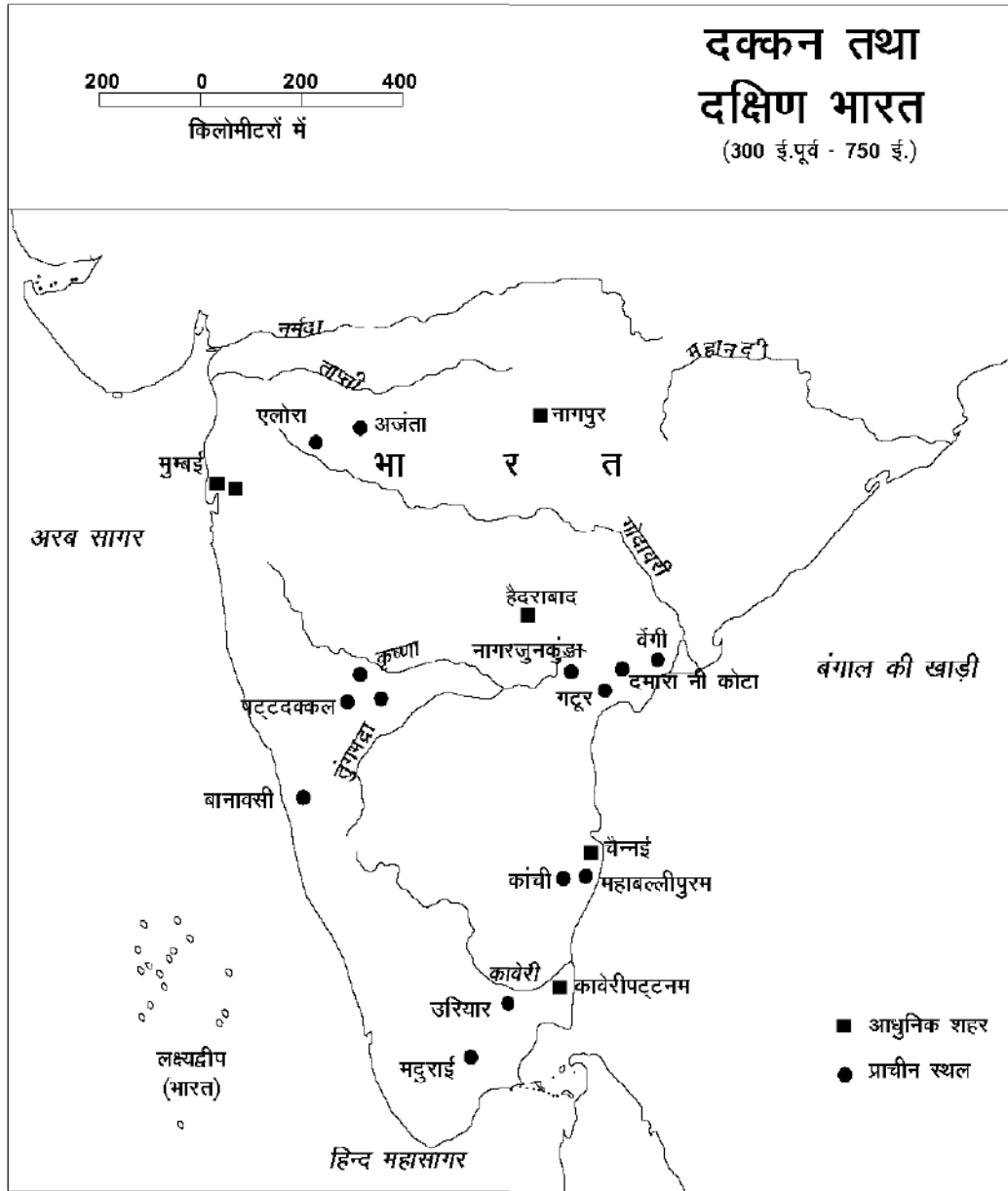
from Rome filled with gold and silver came to Mujris and in return they took back black pepper, spices, cloth etc. it was the major centre of specialized articles and ivory.



4.9. Chariot Temple Mahabalipuram.

The capital of the Chola kingdom was Uraiyur (Trichapalli in Tamilnadu). It was a beautiful city of buildings. The main port of the Cholas was Cauveripatnam or Putar. Their capital kept changing, sometimes it was Tanjore and sometimes Gangekondcholapuram. Chola's, Chera's and Pandya's were continuously at war with each other. Among these ancient and initial southern states, the Chola rulers were most powerful. Their first famous king in 109 AD was Karikal. Karikal defeated the ruler of Lanka and brought the prisoners of war to his kingdom. Karikal got the war prisoners to build a 160 metre bridge on the Cauvery river. To develop agriculture he dug several canals to facilitate the system of agriculture. Karikal was a patron of vedic religion. He performed several yajnas. He built a powerful navy. Chola kingdom was north - east of pandya kingdom, between Penner and Belur rivers. The present districts of Tanjore and Trichilapalli were a part of it. The local self-government method of the Chola rulers was important.

In second century, there was a famous Pandya ruler named Nedujelian. He himself was a poet of high standard and a patron of great poets. He performed many vedic yajnas. The Pandya rulers, related themselves to the Pandavas of Mahabharata age. Pandya kings had trade relations with Roman empire. Pandya rulers sent an ambassdor to the court of Greek ruler Augustus Ceaser.



4.10 Kingdoms of the South

The districts of Madurai, Triunuvelli and Travancore were a part of Pandya kingdom. Pandyas ruled in the southern area of Tamilnadu. 'Sangam literature' is written in Tamil Language.

Tolkapiyam, Ettutugagai, Pattupath, Shipadikaram, Manimekhlai and Jivak chintamani are its main texts. Sangam literature gives important information about Pandya rulers and Tamil society.

In first century AD Perumoor was a famous Chera king. His kingdom was located to the north-west of Pandya kingdom. Chera kingdom, spread up to the konkan coast in east and parts of Malabar. Cochin Travancore were in the Chera kingdom.



4.11. Nataraj

In the initial kingdoms of south India-chola, Chera and Pandya ruled. There was no caste system like that in north India. Brahmins, officers, traders and farmers belonged to different social classes. The rich people enjoyed a good life. They lived in 'Pucca' houses. They were respected in society but the poor people lived in huts and were given less respect in society.

In Chola, Chera and Pandya kingdom there was an influence of Brahmin - religion. The kings performed vedic yajnas and religious rituals. They discussed Brahmin religion with the people of Jain and Buddhist religion. The main activity of Chola, Chera and Pandya kingdoms was agriculture. The soil in south India was quite fertile. Cotton was the main crop cultivated. Rice, sugarcane, turmeric, fruits and spice were also cultivated.

The foreign trade of these states was with countries like Rome, Egypt, Arabs, China and Malaya. Ivory, spices, cloth etc were sent. Periyar people worked with leather.



Intext Questions 4.5

1. Put a tick (✓) on the correct and a cross (X) on the wrong sentences.
 - a. In megalithic culture tools made of iron have been found in the graves. ()

- b. 'Sangam' means a conference of poets. ()
- c. The famous and early Chola king Karikal had an airforce. ()
- d. Nedjelian was Chera king. ()
2. Match the following
- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| a. Chera rulers | (i) Karikal |
| b. Chola rulers | (ii) Nedjelian |
| c. Pandya rulers | (iii) Permnar |
3. Which was the main part of the Chera kingdom on the south-west coast?
4. Where was the capital of Pandya rulers?
5. In which language is 'Sangam literature' written?



What you have learnt

- After the Mauryan rule, Shunga, Kanav, Indo-Greek, Shaka, Pahlav, Kushan and Satvahan kings ruled.
- Rudradaman was a famous shaka king. We get information about him from the Junagarh records.
- Among the Kushan rulers -Kajul kadphisis, Veem kadphisis and Kanishka ,Kanishka was the most famous. He propogated Buddhism and held the fourth Buddhist conference, for this reason he is called the second Ashoka.
- The capital of Satvahans was Pratisthan. Their famous king was Gautimiputra Shatkarmi, who defeated Nahpan. (Shaka ruler).
- After the Mauryan age, the main trade routes were northen path route and souther path route.
- Gandhar and Mathura art style developed.
- After the decline of the Kushans, the Gupta empire rose whose founder was Shri Gupta, Chandragupta I, Samudragupta, Chandragupta II, Kumargupta and Skandgupta were prominent rulers. The attack by the Huns led to the decline of the Gupta rule.
- Ruler of Pushyabhuti dynasty, Harshavardhan was a great king of ancient India. He integrated northern India. He ruled from 606 AD to 647 AD. He was defeated by Pulkeshin in 646 AD on the banks of river Narmada.
- In south India from 1200 BC to 300 AD there was megalithic culture. Big stones were placed on graves. Tools made of iron have been found in the graves.

- In ancient south India the three initial states were Cholas, Cheras, and Pandyas. The Pandyas called a 'Sangam' i.e. a conference of poets three times. 'Sangam literature' was written, which is in Tamil language. From this literature we know about the society, economic system and religion of these southern kingdoms.
- Karikal was a powerful Chola ruler.



Terminal Questions

- Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks.
 - Harshvardhan was a _____ of scholars. (patron / opponent)
 - Bhaubatt wrote _____. (Harsh charitra / Ram Charitra)
 - _____ in his book Hsi-yu-chi has called Harshvardhan a great ruler. (Fahien / Hieun Tsang)
 - Chola ruler Karikal built a dam on river _____. (Ganga / Cauvery)
- Who was Meheneder?

- Which literature gives us information about south India?

- During the time of Kanishka. how was Buddhism divided?

- Who wrote 'Charak' literature?

- Which Gupta ruler is called the Napoleon of India?

- With which countries did southern India have trade relations?

- Why is Kanishka called second Ashoka?

Let us do it

1. Show the initial southern kingdoms of chola, chera and pandyas on the map of India.
2. Go to the nearest museum and collect information about the articles of Gupta period and make a report.
3. Collect information from various sources and write about Harshvardhan.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

- 4.1. 1. (a) Vasudev Kanav (b) Menender
(c) Junagarh (d) Kanishka
2. Northern path and southern path.
 3. Gautimiputra Shatkarni.
 4. By Satvahan rulers.
 5. To caste - system
- 4.2. 1. (a) ✓ (b) X
(c) ✓ (d) ✓
2. In 78 A.D
 3. Kundalvan in Jammu or Kashmir
 4. In third century
 5. Devputra
- 4.3. 1. (a) ✓ (b) X
(c) ✓ (d) ✓
2. Samudragupta
 3. Attack by the Huns
 4. Chandragupta II
 5. Patliputra
- 4.4. 1. (a) (iii) (b) (i) (c) (ii)

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 2. (a) 606 AD | (b) Kanauj | (c) Narmada |
| 3. Banbhatt | 4. Hiuen Tsang | 5. Rajshree |
- 4.5. 1. (a) ✓
 (c) X
- | | | |
|--------------|---------|----------|
| 2. (a) (iii) | (b) (i) | (c) (ii) |
|--------------|---------|----------|
3. Mujiris
 4. Madurai
 5. Tamil Language

Terminal Questions

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. a) Patron | b) Harshcharitra |
| c) Hiuen Tsang | d) Cauvery |
2. Indo - Greek rulers
 3. Sang am literature
 4. Two sects - Mahayana and Hinayana
 5. Charak
 6. Samudragupta
 7. Rome, Egypt, Arabs, China and Malaya

Delhi Sultanate

The arrival of Arabs and the advent of Islam in India started a new political arrangement. Due to this there was an important economic and cultural change.

The Arab people spread Islamic religion in India. The Delhi Sultanate was founded by Qutubuddin Aibak. It existed in India from 1206AD till 1526AD. The first rulers of Delhi Sultanate was of slave dynasty from 1206 AD to 1290 AD. During the period of Delhi Sultanate, the rulers worked in the development of architecture, sculpture, music, language and instrumental music.

In this lesson we will learn about Delhi Sultanate in detail.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Be able to give an account of arrival of Arabs and the beginning of Islam.
- Be able to explain the establishment of the Delhi Sultanate and the slave dynasty. Describe the economic progress and development during Delhi Sultanate.
- Clearly explain the development of art and culture during the Sultanate period.

5.1

Arrival of Arabs and the entry of Islam in India

The beginning of the 7th century saw rise of a new civilization in the world from the Arab states.

The reason for the rise of the Arab civilization was the birth of Islam.

The influence of the Arab civilization was felt in the West Asia, Europe, Africa and along with India in the other countries of the world.

The founder of Islam was Prophet Mohammad. He was born in Quraysh tribe in 570 AD in Arabia. In 610 AD Hazrat Mohammad after a religious realization started a new religion in the form of Islam. He was against idol worship and polytheism. “Allah is one”- by saying this he propagated unitarianism.



Fig. 5.1: The Holy Mosque of Mecca

The people protested against Mohammad Sahib. Then he along with his followers left Mecca and went to Yasrib in 622AD. The journey of Prophet Mohammad from Mecca to Medina is called Hizrat. In 622 AD the Islamic calendar was released. Prophet Mohammad changed the name of Yasrib town and kept it Medina. Over here, Mohammad Sahib unified the followers of Islam in a political and religious form.

To propagate Islam, the supporters of Mohammad Sahib attacked Mecca in 630 AD and entered it. After the victory of Mecca, “Kaaba” became the chief holy place of Islam. The various tribes of entire Arab states accepted Islamic religion.

The meaning of word Islam is to surrender to the order of Allah. The followers of Islam founded by Prophet Mohammad are called Muslims or Musalmaan.

After the death of Prophet Mohammad, the “caliph” was accepted as his successor. The caliphs were acknowledged as the supreme religious and political leaders.

Caliph’s like Abubrak, Umar and Usman expanded Islam to Europe, Asia and Africa, but Usman was killed by his opponent. After this Ali was made the caliph. After Ali was killed Muslims were divided into two sects

The Arabs had conquered West Asia, Syria, Turkey, Persia, North Africa as well as south Europe from 637 to 639 AD.

In 712, caliph Umaid sent his commander Muhammad –Bin- Kasim to attack India. This was the first

invasion by Arabs. Its purpose was to take revenge on the pirates of Dabhol, who looted Arab freight ships. There were other reasons for the invasion- Sovereignty, spread of Islam and to loot Indian wealth and property.

Muhammad –Bin _Kasim defeated the king of Dabhol in 712 AD in Sindh. In the same year, in the battle of Ramar he defeated the Raja of Dahir after crossing the river Indus. There was terrible massacre in this war.

The Sindh victory opened the doors for the Arabs and Islam to enter India.

Many Arabs settled in India and established relations with the local people.

Mahmood Ghazni the son of Subuktigin- was a Turkish slave commander. He established the Ghazni dynasty. From 1000 to 1026 AD he invaded India 17 times. He invaded Multan, Punjab, Nagarkot, Thanesar, Mathura, Kannauj and Somnath temple and plundered and ravaged them.

Shahbudin Mohammad or Mohammad Ghori (1173 – 1206 AD) as soon as he ascended the throne turned his expansion plans towards India. Mohammad Ghori was victorious over Multan in 1175 AD, Gujrat in 1178AD, Peshawar in 1179-80 AD and Lahore in 1186 AD. By 1190 AD after winning Multan, Sindh, Punjab he marched towards the Ganga region of Doab.

To claim his authority on Delhi and Gangetic region of Doab he fought the first battle of Tarain

With Prithviraj Chauhan. Muhammad Ghori lost the battle, but soon he consolidated his army and defeated Prithviraj Chauhan in the second battle of Tarain in 1192AD. Muhammad Ghori after the battles of Tarain and Chandanor, laid the foundation of Turkish empire in India. He handed over his power and authority over India to his trusted commander Qutubuddin Aibak and went back.

In this way Islam arrived in India with the invasion of Arabs.



Intext Questions

5.1

1. What is known as Hizrat ?

2. Who was Mohammad – Bin – Kasim?

3. After the invasion of which ruler did Islam come into India?

4. Which rulers fought the battle of Tarain?

5. Who laid the foundation of Turkish rule in India?

5.2 Delhi Sultanate : Foundation of Slave Dynasty

In 1194AD Muhammad Ghori handed over to his commander the power to rule in India. In 1206 AD, after the death of Ghori, Qutubuddin Aibak in the form of Turkish regime, laid the foundation of Delhi Sultanate in India.

The first dynasty in the form of “Mamuluk” or slave dynasty was established in the Delhi Sultanate. Qutubuddin Aibak was a slave of Muhammad Ghori. It is for this reason, the rule established by him is called the slave dynasty. They ruled in Delhi Sultanate from 1206 to 1290 AD.

Qutubuddin Aibak: He started the Slave dynasty and was the first Muslim ruler of North India. He is known as the actual founder of Muslim rule in India.

Aibak defeated Indian Rajput generals, Tajjuddin Yaloz, Nasiruddin and Harichandra and expanded his empire. In spite of being a slave he still reached the higher positions in army. Due to his humanity, generosity and loyalty he was known as “Lakh Baksh”. In 1210 AD while playing polo he fell from his horse and died.

Iltutmish (1201-1236 AD): after the death of Qutubuddin Aibak his worthless son Aramshah was made to sit on the throne. The Turkish generals of Delhi revolted against him and made Aibak’s son-in-law Iltutmish, who was the king of Baduan, the king of Delhi Sultanate. Iltutmish defeated the army of Aramshah which had come from Lahore to Delhi.

Iltutmish defeated Yeldiz in 1215 AD and Qabacha in 1217 AD. To prevent the attack of Mongols he did not give refuge to Ziyauddin Mangbarni, the son of the shah of Khwarizin. In this way he protected Delhi Sultanate from the Mongols. By 1231 Delhi had asserted the power over Bengal, Bihar, Ranthambhore, Mandore, Jalore, Bayana and Gwalior.

Iltutmish formed a group of 40 Amirs known as “Turk – E - Chalghani” to administer the government. In 1229AD he received legitimacy for his government from Caliph of Baghdad. He gave a new dimension to Iqta, army and of monetary system. He organized the coinage system by introducing two coins – a silver tanka and a bronze jikal.

The Iqtadars were responsible for the collection of revenue from regions which were under them. In return they provided military services to maintain law and order.

Iltutmish is considered as the actual organizer of Delhi Sultanate.

Razia Sultan (1236 -1240 AD): Iltutmish thought that his sons were incompetent to be rulers, so he announced his daughter Razia Sultan as his successor. After Iltutmish’s death his son Rukunddin became the ruler of Delhi for some time with the help of some officers. With the support of the public and help from

the army generals Razia Sultan became the first female Muslim ruler of Delhi Sultanate. Razia Sultan gave non-turks the category of noble born. An Abyssinian called Malik Jamuluddin Yakub was appointed Amir-Eh-Akhnoor. Razia Sultan inspite of being a capable ruler was able to rule for a very short period. Her biggest drawback was of being a female. She was accused of breaking a women's decorum and having close relations with Yakub. She died in 1240 AD in a battle with the Turkish aristocracy.

Nasiruddin Mahmud (1246-66AD): After Razia death, the 'Chehalgani' Turkish generals became powerful and made Behramshah (1240-42) and Masud Shah the king of Delhi. In 1246 'Ulug Khan' made Naseeruddin Shah the ruler and himself became his wazir. Ulug Khan, later on was known as Balban. To strengthen his position he married his daughter to Naseeruddin. Later on Balban killed Naseeruddin giving him poison and captured the throne.

Balban (1266-87AD): Ulug Khan in 1266 AD became the ruler of Delhi after taking the name Balban. He terminated the 'Turk-Eh-chehalgani', quietened his opponents by the policy of blood and weapons. Awadh, Kaushal, Katihar Bengal, were suppressed. He secured victory over Ajmer and Nagore. He formulated the new principles of royalty and defined the relations between nobility and the king. In this way he made the Delhi Sultanate strong. He laid emphasis on the tradition of 'Sijda' (Salam) and 'Paibos' (Kissing the king's feet). An army division called Diwan-Eh-Arj was set up. A magnificent court was constructed to show the power of its king and government. Laughing, joking or drinking was banned in the court.

The people were dissatisfied because north Indian was not safe from the invasion of the Mongols and non-Turks were removed from important positions. Balban died in 1287AD. After him the nobility made his grandson Kekubad the king but Kekubad's son Taimur removed him and made himself the king. The army commander from the time of Balban, Firoz Jalaluddin Khilji killed Taimur and ended the slave dynasty. This was the beginning of a new dynasty called the Khilji dynasty in Delhi Sultanate.



Intext Questions

5.2

1. Who was Qutubbudin Aibak?

2. How did Qutubbudin Aibak die?

3. What was the name in which Ulug Khan became the ruler?

4. Who was the first women Muslim ruler of Delhi Sultanate?

5. Who ended the slave dynasty?

6. What is 'Paibos'?

5.3 Economic Reforms – Agriculture, Market System

All the rulers of Delhi Sultanate more or less gave attention towards the agriculture system because the main source of state income was from land revenue. To increase revenue from land many measures were adopted. Tughlaq dynasty played an important part in the development of agriculture. To help in agriculture growth they established a new department known as 'Diwan-Eh-Kohi'. Farmers were helped by providing them with seeds and grains. If the harvest failed or there was a famine the farmer were provided loans. Firoz Tughlaq constructed canals and laid many gardens. Fallow land was turned into agriculture land. Different crops were grown. In irrigated areas, two crops were harvested in a year. Apart from rice, wheat pulses, jowar, bajra etc, fruits, vegetables spices were also cultivated. Major part of agriculture depended on rainfall. Different methods of irrigation and fertilizers were used to increase production. Irrigation was done through wells, rivers, ponds, canals and lakes. Cash crops like sugarcane, cotton, poppy and silk were cultivated.

In Delhi Sultanate, Alluddin Khilji the ruler of Khilji dynasty was especially famous for his market system. After removing Jalaluddin Khilji from the throne, Allahuddin Khilji ruled over the Delhi Sultanate from 1296 AD to 1316 AD. In the administrative policy of Allahuddin, control over market system was quite crucial.

To manage the market and control prices, Allahuddin adopted many measures. There were separate markets for different items such as – grain market, cloth market, etc. apart from this there were markets for horses, animals and slaves. For the supervision of these markets he appointed a 'Shahna-Eh-Mandi'. Under 'Shahna-Eh-Mandi' were 'Barid' (Information officer) and Muhin (Spies) who worked for him. They provided daily information about the markets.

The reason for price control over the sale of horses was to lower the rate of horses and thus make sure about their supply to the army. In the same way, prices of essential articles and their supply was determined, keeping the needs of the army in mind. Weight and measure system was strictly applied.

Development Work, Art and Culture

The foundation of Delhi Sultanate was laid by Qutubuddin Aibak an army general of Muhammad Ghori in 1206AD. Delhi Sultanate was ruled by the Slave, Khilji, Tuglaq, Sayyad and Lodhi dynasty till 1526AD. During the Sultanate period there were important developments in the field of religion, literature, language, music, sculpture and painting.

Khawaja Saint Moinuddin Chisti had come to India during the invasion of Ghori. In 1206AD he went to Ajmer. He died in 1235AD in Ajmer. He propagated the Sufi ideology. He developed a mixed culture between the Hindus and Muslims. Apart from Chisti, Saints like Sohrawardi, Nakshbandi, Kadri, also became popular in India.

Leading saints like Ramanad, Kabir, Chaitanya, Nanak, Raidass also spread the message of Devotion, Vaishnavism, Shavism.

In south India saints like Aalwaar and Naynaar removed social and religious evils. In Delhi Sultanate Persian language was given state protection. This led to the growth of Persian language and literature. There was a decline in the progress of Sanskrit but Hemchandra Suri and Chaitanya wrote their compositions in Sanskrit. A new writing style called 'champu' poetic style developed.

Amir Khusro wrote 'Qiran-Us-Sadain', 'Miftah-UI-Futuh', 'Tuglaqnama', 'Khazain-UI-fituh', volumes in Persian language. 'Mahabharata' and 'Rajtarangini' were translated in Persian language. Sufi literature was written in the form of 'Malfijat'. Urdu language flourished during the Sultanate era. Regional languages in the form of Bengali, Assamese, Odiya, Telegu, Malyalam and Kannada literature developed.



Fig. 5.2: Kabir



Fig. 5.3: Rahim

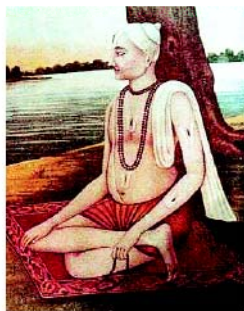


Fig. 5.4: Tulsidas



Fig. 5.5: Raidas

Modern ragas such as Amon, Gora, Sanam and Qwallis became a trend in the Sultanate period due to Amir Khusro. Sitar was a mix of Indian Veena and Persian tambura. Swami Haridas of Vrindavan and his favourite pupil Tansen carried forward the legacy of music. The Turks brought Rabab and Sarangi to India.

In sultanate period Bhati pictures, Mehrabi walls, Pari paintings and Manuscripts were developed in the form of Qurani calligraphy and drawings. In the 15 century, Gujrat, Malwa and Jaunpur were the centers of painting.



Fig.5.6: Qutub Minar and its Etchings

In the architecture of Sultanate period, arches and domes were made. Buildings were constructed using a mixture of chalk, cement, water and sand. There was a change in the technique of building construction. Kuwat-Ul-Islam Masjid (1198 A), Qutub Minar (1199 -1235AD), Dhaj-Din-Ka-Jhopra (1200 AD) and the Tomb of Iltutmish are an example of Indian Islamic art in its initial form. Etchings of marbles, decorative red stone, rough stones usage, arches with four corners, pointed and eight corned domes were a characteristic of the architecture of Sultanate period.

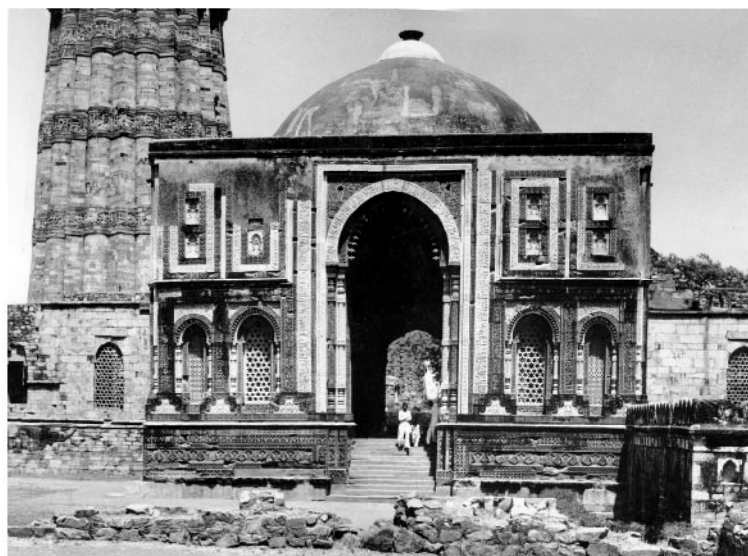


Fig. 5.7: Alai Darwaja



Intext Questions

5.3

1. What were the various means of irrigation during the Sultanate period?

2. What improvements did Firozshah Tughlaq bring in the field of agriculture?

3. Who were the Muhins? What work did they do?

4. When did Khwaja Moinuddin Chisti come to India?

5. Whose pupil was Tansen?



What you have learnt

- The rise of Islam was from the Arab region. Its founder was Prophet Mohammad. Calipha's Aburak, Umar and Usmaan spread Islam in the world. The attack on Sindh in 712 AD by Mohammad-Bin-Kasim and his victory led to the arrival of Islam in India.
- In 1206 AD Qutubuddin Aibak the army general of Mummad Ghori established Turkish rule in the form of Delhi Sultanate which lasted till 1290 AD as Mamuluk dynasty.
- Iltutmish, Razia Sultan, Nasiruddin Muhammad and Balban were its important rulers.
- Iltutmish started the 'Iqta' system and started coins in the form of 'Jital and Tanka'. His daughter Razia Sultan became the first female Muslim ruler.
- Balban (Ulug Khan) ruled through the policy of blood and iron. Any revolt was strictly crushed. He ended Turk-Eh-Chahalgani. After Balban's death, The Khilji dynasty began.
- In the Sultanate period, the rulers of Tuglaq dynasty, Mohmmad-Bin-Tughlaq and Firozshah Tuglaq paid special attention to the agriculture system. Allahudin Khilji established the control over market system.
- In the Sultanate period it was a mix Hindu-Muslim culture which developed with the Sufi and Bhakti movement. Language-literature, music, painting and architecture progressed remarkably. Indian-Islamic art form was the main characteristic of Delhi Sultanate period.



Terminal Questions

- By what name was Yasrib town known as?
 - Mecca
 - Medina
 - Arab
 - Asia
- How many times did Mahmud of Ghozni invade India?
 - 11
 - 7
 - 21
 - 17
- Whose daughter was Razia Sultan?
 - Iltutmish
 - Balban
 - Qutubuddin Aibak
 - Mohammad Ghori
- Fill in the blanks by choosing the right word?

Prithviraj Chauhan, Balban, Sufi, Muslims, Ghozni.

- The followers of prophet Mohammad were called _____.
 - Mohmud Ghozni started the _____ dynasty.
 - The battle of Terain was fought between Mohammad Ghori and _____.
 - Ulugh Khan in the name of _____ became the ruler of Delhi Sultanate.
 - _____ philosophy was spread in India by saint Khwaja Moinuddin Chisti.
- Who was Mohammad-Bin-Kasim?

 - What was the main source of revenue during the Sultanate period?

 - Who founded the slave dynasty?

 - Write the names of the main saints of the Bhakti movement?

Answer Key

Intext Questions

5.1

1. Leave or sacrifice
2. Army general of Umyyad Khalifa.
3. Mohmmad-Bin-Kasim / Arab Invasion
4. Between Mohmmad Ghori and Prithviraj Chauhan.
5. The practice of kissing the kings feet

5.2

1. Slave and general of Mohmmad Ghori
2. Fell from the horse while playing polo.
3. Balban
4. Razia sultan
5. By Firoz Jalaluddin Khilji
6. Practice of Kissing the kings feet

5.3

1. Wells, Pons, Canals, Rivers, Lakes
2. Turned fallow land into cultivable land, constructed canals.
3. From the spies. They gave daily information about the market.
4. During the invasion of Mohmmad Ghori.
5. Swami Haridas

Terminal Questions

1. a. Medina
2. b. 17
3. c. Iltutmish
4. a. Muslims
b. Ghazni
c. Prithviraj Chauhan
d. Balban
e. Sufi

5. General of Umyyad Khalifa
6. Land Revenue
7. By Qutubbudin Aibak
8. Ramananda, Kabir, Chaitanya Nanak Raidass.

8. In which tribe was Prophet Mohammad born?

9. Write two achievements of Kanishka?

10. Give a description of the personality of Harshvardhan as the last great Indian ruler?

Answer

1. a. Sharp

b. groups

c. Harappa

d. Samveda

2. a. ✘ b. ✔ c. ✔

3. a. Bimbisar

4. c. Harshvardhan

5. a. (ii) b. (i) c. (iv) d. (iii)

6. Learnt to eat cooked food, lit fire to protect from cold and stay safe from wild animals, man started becoming civilized.

7. Over abundance of iron and its use, use of elephants caught from the forest, fertile soil and powerful ruler.

8. Qureshi Tribe

9. Congregation of the fourth Buddhist gathering, Propagate Buddhism.

10. He was the last great ruler of ancient India. He had brought north India under once thread to hold them together. He gave protection to the scholars. He expanded his kingdom from Kannauj to Narmada.

Mughals and After Them

The first battle of Panipat was in 1526 AD. This battle was between mughal ruler Babar and Ibrahim Lodhi. Babar defeated Ibrahim Lodhi in this battle. After being victorious in this battle, Babar founded the Mughal Empire in India. The Mughal rule started the Mansabdari practice and further developed the land revenue system. They became friendly with the Indian rajputs. Mughal rulers made marriage alliances with the rajputs and emphasized on Hindu-Muslim unity. Akbar took steps to end the practice of female infanticide and child marriages. Mughals contributed to the development of art and culture. Mughals fought with Shivaji and his successors. Relationship between mughals and rajputs strengthened the mughal rule.

In this lesson we will learn about Delhi Sultanate in detail.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe the arrival of mughals in India and how they established the Mughal Empire.
- Narrate the mughal's political, economic and social achievements as well as art and culture during the mughal period.
- Clarify about the Maratha Empire and their relations with the mughals.
- Describe rajput history as well as the relations between rajputs and mughals.

6.1 Arrival of Mughals and Foundation of the Mughal Empire.

In 1494 AD, Babar's father Umar Sheikh Mirza expired. After this, Babar sat on the throne of Fargana. At that time his age was 12 years. The lineal class opposed it. Due to instability in Central Asia and defeat at

the hands of Uzbeks encouraged Babar to march towards India. In 1517 AD Babar decided to move towards India. At that time due to disunity among the smaller kingdoms there was political instability in India. The subedar of Punjab Daulat Khan Lodhi and the ruler of Mewar Rana Sanga encouraged Babar to invade India.

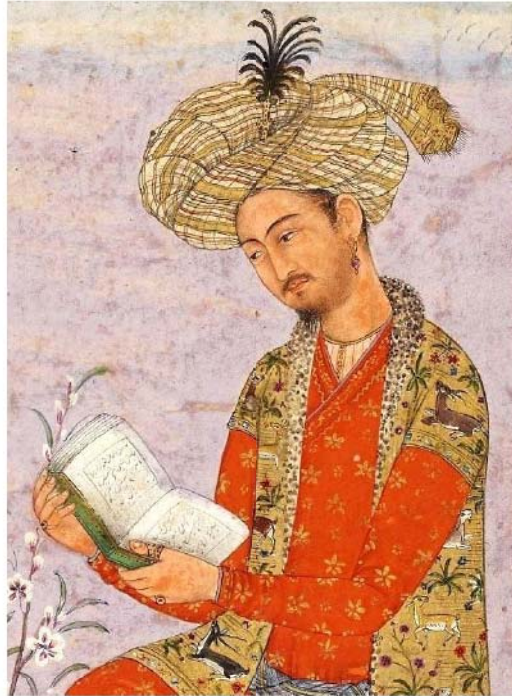


Fig. 6.1: Babar

Babar won Bheera in 1519-20 AD. After conquering Sialkot (1520 AD) and Lahore (1524 AD) he reached Panipat in 1526 AD. The first battle of Panipat was in 1526 AD. In this battle, Babar defeated Ibrahim Lodhi and ended the Delhi Sultanate. In this war he adopted the Ottoman and Turkish method. Babar only had 12,000 troops but with the usage of guns and horses he defeated the army of Ibrahim Lodhi consisting of 1,00,000 soldiers. Babar exerted his authority over the cities of Delhi and Agra and took possession of its treasures. This seized wealth was distributed between his generals and soldiers. Babar laid the foundation of Mughal dynasty in India. Initially Babar had to face a number of problems, like 1. The elite class and generals because of a different environment wanted to return back to Central Asia. 2. The ruler of Mewar Rana Sanga was readying an army to throw out the Mughal army. 3. The Afgans Kings were trying to get back their lost power in Bengal and Bihar.

Babar faced all these problems efficiently. Babar was able to convince the generals and the elite class to stay in India. Humayun was sent to tackle the Afgans.

Rana Sanga rallied together the rajput rulers of Jalore, Sirohi, Dungarpur, Amber, Medta etc and formed an army combination. Medini Rai of Chanderi, Hasan Khan of Mewat and Sikandar Lodhi's son Mahmud Lodhi also agreed to provide army support.



Fig. 6.2: Rana Sangha

Rana Sangha believed that after invading and plundering India, Babar would return back to Kabul. Then he would be in possession of Delhi, but Babar decided to stay back in Delhi. To lay the foundation of Mughal dynasty, Babar decided to end the military strength of Rana Sangha. This was the reason for the battle of Khanwa in 1527 AD between Babar and Rana Sangha. Babar won the battle of Khanwa due to better warfare system, technique and efficient leadership. In 1528 AD Babar defeated Medini Rai in the battle of Chanderi. The victories in the battles of Panipat and Khanwa were important but still the voices of dissent were present.

Babar died in 1530 AD and his son Humayun managed the government. Humayun had to face a divided state and administration. The lineal support was also missing. Humayun was facing challenges from Sher Khan of Bihar and Bahadurshah of Gujrat.

Sher Khan defeated Humayun in the battle of Chausa (1539 AD) and battle of Kannauj (1540 AD). Humayun had to run and leave India. Humayun married Hamida Bano the daughter of the ruler of Iran and again consolidated his military power. In 1555 AD Humayun defeated the Afgan ruler and regained his control over Delhi and Agra and thus established the Mughal dynasty. In 1556 AD Humayun fell down the stairs of his library and died. Humayun's son Akbar ascended the throne at the age of 13 years. In the second battle of Panipat in 1556 AD Akbar defeated Hemu the minister of the Afghani ruler. In this way he not only re-established the Mughal Empire but also strengthened it. He made the mughal empire so strong that great rulers like Jahangir, Aurangzeb and also rulers after them were able to continue the mughal dynasty till 187 AD.



1. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct word.
Khanwa, Akbar, Humayun, 1494 AD, Babar, Hemu.
 - a. In _____, Babar at the age of 12 years sat on the throne, after his father's death.
 - b. The second battle of Panipat in 1556 AD was fought between _____ and _____.
 - c. In the plains of _____ in 1527 AD there was a battle between Babar and Rana Sanga.
 - d. In 1556 AD _____ died, after falling from the stairs of a library.
2. Answer the following questions
 - a. Where was Babar ruler of? When did he ascend the throne?
 - b. Which war technique did Babar apply in India?
 - c. When and between whom was the first battle of Panipat fought?
 - d. Who was Humayun? How did he die?

6.2

Political, Economic, Social Achievements and Art and Culture

In 1526 AD Babar founded the mughal dynasty in India. The beginning of the mughal dynasty started a new process in political, economic and social transformation. At the time when mughal dynasty was established and during the early years of Akbar, the mughals had to face a lot of problems. The Rajputs were mainly concentrated in Rajasthan but they were spread out independently also in the form of subedars and kings. It was necessary to control them. The political power of the Afghans had to end in Bihar, Bengal and Gujrat.

Kabul and Kandhar were ruled by mughal groups who had enmity with Akbar and they also had to be dealt with. Akbar also had to control the Muslim state of Deccan. These were Khandesh, Ahmadnagar, Bijapur, Golkunda and some other southern states.



Fig. 6.3: Akbar

The solution to overcome these political problems was to adopt the policy of expansion. Akbar tried to establish friendly relations with the Rajputs to fulfill his ambitions. He married the daughter of King Bharmal of Amer. He gave employment to the Rajputs in the army and administration. He fought a battle with Mewar and conquered it, was victorious over Marwar, Bikaner, Jaisalmer, Ranthambore and Kalinjar. After defeating Rana Pratap in the battle of Haldi Ghati in 1576 AD he ended any challenges from the Rajputs. Akbar had already occupied Malwa, Gwalior and Gondwana state by 1564 AD.

In 1572 AD on the invitation of prince Itimaad Khan, Akbar began a war against the Afghans of Gujarat, Bengal and Bihar. After winning Surat, Ahmedabad along with Gujarat he handed it over to Mirza Aziz Koka. In 1574 AD, Akbar with the help of Munim Khan won Hazipur, Patna, Gaur (Bengal) and established his control over Bengal and Bihar. By 1592 AD Man Singh had brought Orissa also under the control of the Mughals.

The feudal landlords and the rebels revolted and announced Akbar's brother Haimir Mirza as the king of Kabul. With the help of Todermal, Farid Bakshi, Aziz Koka and Shahbaaj Khan, the revolt in Bihar, Bengal and surrounding areas was crushed.



Fig. 6.4: Maharana Pratap

Hakim Mirza attacked Punjab and North West provinces. Then Akbar himself moved forward towards Lahore. He handed over the administration of Kabul to his sister Bakhtunessa and later made Man Singh the Subedar of Kabul. Birbal died while crushing the revolt of the Roshanyas in the North West region. Todermal and Man Singh were successful in curbing the revolt. The Mughals were able to establish their authority over Kashmir in 1586 AD and by 1595 AD along with Multan and Thatta, over the whole of North West India.

Between 1591 AD to 1598 AD, the Mughals had established their control over Ahmadnagar, Bijapur, Golconda and the Deccan states of Aseergarh, Burhanpur and Barar. After this Jahangir managed the kingdom. During the reign of Jahangir and Aurangzeb, the Mughal rule had expanded to 21 states. During Akbar's rule there were 15 states. Mughal administration was based on the mansabdari system. The administration was divided between central and state rule. The king governed with the help of wazir's, diwan's, mir bakshi, sadr-Us-sudur and mir sawa. The state administration was under the subedars. The smallest unit of local administration was a village which was under a Faujdar and Amalguzar. Muqqadam was the village chieftan and the Patwari kept the land records.

The economic activities were agriculture animal husbandry, trade and industry. Industries were mainly dependent on agriculture. The major source of state income was tax from land. For this reason the management of land revenue policy was prepared by Akbar with the help of Todarmal. It is also called Aiyar-E-Dahsala. Land was distributed as Polaj, Parohi, Chnehr and Banjar. On the basis of the average yield, one-third part of the produce was taken as land revenue. Cotton and silk clothes and ornaments were also manufactured. Trade was international as well as national. Surat and Bhargukutch were important ports from where goods were exported. Gold and silver came to India from western countries. Surplus production and profitable trade made the economic position of the mughals strong. Hindu-Muslim unity and goodwill was an important achievement of the Mughals. Akhbar adopted a policy of tolerance towards the Hindus. Due to this, he received the support of Hindus, especially the rajputs and Mughals benefited from it.

Akbar took steps to levy Jaziya tax and ended child marriage and infanticide.

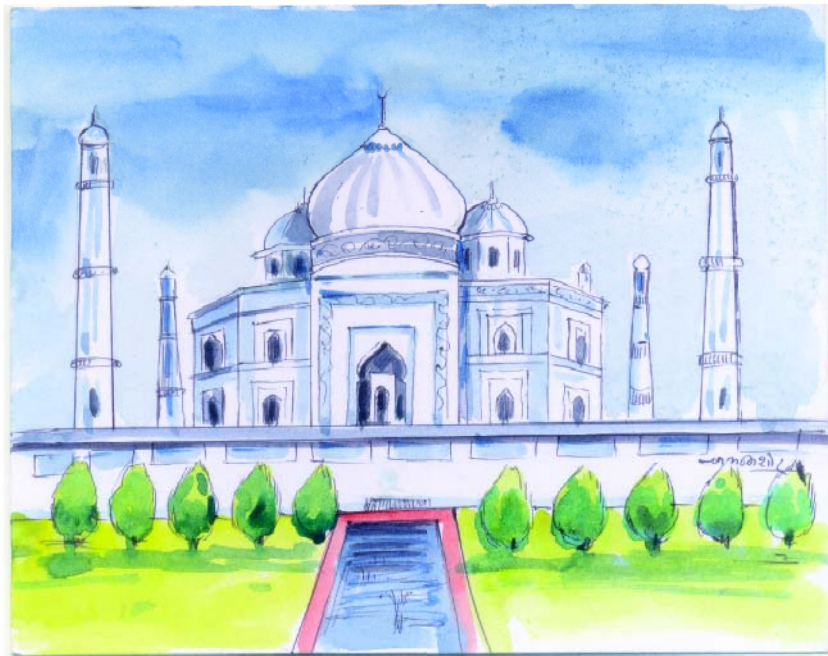


Fig. 6.5: Taj Mahal

In the cultural field an important achievement of the mughals was progress of Hindu-Muslim integrated culture. Science of architecture during the period of Shahjahan and paintings during Jahangir's rule is called the golden period. Shahjahan built Red fort and Jama Masjid in Delhi and Moti Masjid and Taj Mahal in Agra. Taj Mahal has pietra dura work on it. During the mughal period magnificent buildings, tombs mosques, forts, mehrabs, domes, mausoleums were constructed. Along with Islamic form the local art style was also included.



Fig. 6.6: Red Fort

In the Mughal period, music, art, language and literature were also promoted. Haridas, Tansen, Baiju Bawra, Sadarang - Adarang were well known musicians. Babar wrote his autobiography 'Tuzuke-Babri' in Turkish language. Persian language got a boost during mughal period. The main style of painting during the Mughal era was miniature art which along with regional style of painting was patronized.



Question from the Lesson

6.2

1. Put a (✓) on the correct and a (✗) on the wrong sentence.
 - a. Akbar fought against the Afghans in Gujarat, Bengal and Bihar in 1572 AD.
 - b. By 1592 AD, Man Singh had brought Orissa under the control of the Mughals.
 - c. Muqqadams kept the land-revenue records.
 - d. The main source of state revenue was tax levied on trade.
 - e. Akbar's land revenue system was prepared by Todarmal.

2. The main characteristic of Mughal architecture is;
 - a. Pietradura
 - b. Use of domes
 - c. Use of marble
 - d. All the above

3. In Mughal period how much was taken as land tax.
 - a. 1/3 Part
 - b. 1/4 Part
 - c. 1/5 Part
 - d. 1/6 Part

4. In which language did Babar write his autobiography 'Tuzuke-Babri'
 - a. Persian
 - b. Sanskrit
 - c. Turkish
 - d. None of the them

5. What was the basis of Mughal administration?
 - a. Jagirdari
 - b. Iqtadari
 - c. Mansabdari
 - d. None of the them

6.3 Maratha Empire and their relation with the Mughals

The Maratha Empire rose under the leadership of Shivaji in the 17th century. The name of Shivaji's father was Shahji Bhonsle. He worked in the army. Shivaji's childhood passed under the protection of his grandfather Kondev and mother Jijabai. Shivaji was motivated by his guru Samarth Ramdas for a self nation and to lay the foundation of a Maratha kingdom, he clashed with the Mughals. In 1656 AD, Shivaji adopted aggressive tactics. He attacked Jawli and Bijapur and achieved victory.

In 1659 AD Shivaji with great shrewedness killed Afzal Khan. In 1662 the Sultan of Bijapur under an understanding, accepted Shivaji as an independent ruler. Shivaji started attacking the Mughal states. Aurangzeb sent Shaista Khan in 1665 AD to sign the treaty of Purander. Under this treaty, Shivaji agreed to return 23 out of 35 forts back to the Mughals. The rest of the 12 forts whose annual income was one lakh remained with Shivaji.

During the period of this treaty, Shivaji was invited to Agra but on reaching the court at Agra, he was ill-treated. When he protested against it, Shivaji was made a prisoner. In 1666 he escaped from his captivity

and reached Raigarh. He won back the forts which he had given to the Mughals. In 1670 AD he again attacked Surat. In 1674 AD, Shivaji made Raigarh his capital and coronated himself. He assumed the title of Chhatrapati.



Fig. 6.7: Shivaji

After his coronation, Shivaji started a big military campaign in South India. He won a number of forts in Jhinjhi and Karnataka. Shivaji died in 1680 AD but in a short period of six year, he laid the foundation of a Maratha kingdom. Later Maratha kings were able to rule for nearly one and a half decades based on its strong foundation.

After Shivaji's death the Maratha chieftains did not endorse his son Sambhaji. They supported his second son Rajaram. In 1689 AD, Sambhaji was given death penalty by Aurangzeb. After his death, Rajaram was considered the successor because the sons of Sambhaji were minors. In 1700 AD after Rajaram's death, his wife Tarabai and her son Shjivaji III were the inheritors.

Tarabai with her strength and intelligence did not allow Aurangzeb to become successful. The Mughals were able to divide Marathas into two groups. The first was under Tarabai and another was under Sahuji the son of Sambhaji. Sahuji stayed in the Mughal court for a fairly long time. Sahuji with the help of a chitpawan brahmin Balaji Vishwanath removed Tarabai. The Mughals gave a tax called 'Chauth' to the Peshwa Marathas and the Maratha chieftans also, gave a tax called 'Sardeshmukhi'. The Peshwa quadrupled the might of the Marathas. The Peshwas showed their dominance over north India and the mughal court but in the third battle of Panipat, Ahmad Shah Abdali defeated the Marathas. This defeat almost destroyed the Martha power and empire.



1. Choose the correct word and fill it in the blank.

Chauth, Shivaji, Balaji Vishwanath, Raigarh, Maratha Kingdom, 1680 AD

- a. In 17th Century the _____ rose under the leadership of _____.
 - b. Shivaji died in _____ AD.
 - c. The Marathas took _____ tax from the Mughals.
 - d. Sahuji with the help of _____ removed Tarabai from the government.
2. When was the third battle of Panipat?
- a. 1526 AD
 - b. 1556 AD
 - c. 1761 AD
 - d. None of the above
3. When was the treaty of Purander?
- a. 1660 AD
 - b. 1665 AD
 - c. 1674 AD
 - d. 1659 AD
4. When did Sambhaji get the death penalty?
- a. 1689 AD
 - b. 1589 AD
 - c. 1688 AD
 - d. 1700 AD

There are a number of beliefs regarding the origin of the Rajputs. Historians believe that Rajput origin was from the igneous age. Foreign historians think that rajputs originated from Shaka, Kushan and Huns who mixed with the Indian Kshatriyas and became residents of Rajasthan. Some historians placed rajputs in the kshatriya category of the caste system. In North India the Pratihar dynasty disintegrated. After this a number of rajput clans such as - Chauhan, Chandel and Parmar etc controlled the rajput areas. In the 11th and 12th century they fought against the invasion of Mohammad Ghazni and Ghoris but since they were not consolidated against the invaders, the rajput rulers lost. Prithviraj Chauhan defeated Mohammad Ghori in 1191 AD in the first battle of Terain but in the next year in 1192 AD in the second battle of Terain, Ghori defeated Prithviraj Chauhan.

The ruler of the Sultanate period, took over rajput areas from time to time and included it in their territory. During the Mughal period the main power centre of the rajputs was concentrated in Rajasthan. Rana Sanga, Rana Kumbha were important rajput rulers. During Akbar's reign, except for Mewar, all other rajput kings had accepted the subjugation of the Mughals. Maharana Pratap challenged Akbar and in 1576 AD he lost in the battle of Haldi Ghati. Later on, Jahangir made Rana Amar Singh accept Mughal Subordination. Mughals returned all regions to rajputs which.

During the reign of Shahjahan, there were good relations between the mughals and the rajputs but in the reign of Aurangzeb the rajputs became angry regarding the Marwar succession. The capture of the fort of Jodhpur had deteriorating effect on the Mughal-Rajput relationships. In the elite class the number of rajput kings decreased and for this reason the Mughals had to forge an understanding with Marathas.

Sawai Raja Jaisingh and Jawant Singh were the chief Rajput mansabdars of Aurangzeb. The rajputs were impressed with Mughal policy, of tolerance. The Rajputs provided a lot of support to the Mughals in military and administration, which established the powerful Mughal empire.



Questions from the lesson

6.4

1. Put a (✓) on the correct and a (✗) on the wrong sentence.

- | | | |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. | Some historians believe the rajputs originated from the igneous age. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b. | The second battle of Terain happened in 1195 AD. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c. | After the disintegration of the Pratihar dynasty, the rajput areas did not come under the control of the Chauhans, Chandels and Parmars. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d. | During the Mughal period the main power centre of the Rajputs was in Rajasthan. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Fill in the blanks:

1576 AD, Jahangir, Mohmmad Ghori

- a. Prithviraj Chauhan defeated _____ in the first battle of Terain in 1191 AD.
- b. The battle of Haldighati was in _____.
- c. During the rule of _____ Rana Amar Singh accepted the subordination of the Mughals.



What have you learnt?

- Babar came to India by taking advantage of the instability in central Asia as well as Indian political conditions. Babar ended the Delhi Sultanate after defeating Ibrahim Lodhi in the first battle of Panipat (1526 AD). After his victory in the battle of Khanwa and Chanderi, he established the foundation of the Mughal dynasty.
- The start of Mughal dynasty led to political, economic and social changes. The Mughals established a vast empire which led to political integration. In the economic field, agriculture, trade, animal husbandry and industries received encouragement. Prevalence of monetary system. In the social field it started, Hindu-Muslim unity and solidarity. There was development of a mixed hindu-muslim culture. The Mughal rulers took steps to end the practice of Sati, female infanticide and child marriages. There was progress in the field of architecture, painting, music and literature.
- The Mughal period saw the rise of the Maratha kingdom under the leadership of Shivaji which reached its zenith during the time of Peshwas. In the third battle of Panipat in 1761 AD Ahmad Shah Abdali defeated the Marathas. This destroyed their power.
- There are a number of theories regarding the origin of the rajputs - theory of igneous origin, foreign origin, origin from Indian kshatriyas.
- Before the Sultanate period there was rajput rule in India but it weakened during the Sultanate rule. The rajputs lost to the muslim rulers. During the time of Akbar, Mughals and Rajputs had good relations among themselves.

Come, Let's do

Collect information about Babar and Shivaji from various sources and prepare their biography.



Terminal Questions

1. Choose the right word and fill in the blanks.

Rajput, Akbar, 1680 AD, 1857 AD, Humayun

- Sher Khan defeated _____ in the battle of Chausa.
- The Mughal dynasty remained in India till _____.
- Shivaji died in _____.
- In the Mughal period, the main power centre of the _____ was concentrated in Rajasthan.

2. Put a (✓) on the correct and a (✗) on the wrong sentence

- Babar decided to proceed towards India in 1517 AD.
- Babar defeated Medini Rai in the battle of Chanderi in 1528 AD.
- Akbar was friendly with the Mughal clans of Kabul and Kandhar.
- Mughal administration was based on the mansabdari policy.
- Maratha rule rose under the leadership of Shivaji in 15th century.
- The Peshwa Marathas took Sardeshmukhi tax from other Maratha chiefs.

3. Match the following

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------|
| a. Chausa war | 1665 AD |
| b. Battle of Haldi Ghati | 1761 AD |
| c. Third battle of Panipat | 1539 AD |
| d. Babar's death | 1576 AD |
| e. Treaty of Purander | 1530 AD |

4. Answer the following questions.

- Name the reasons which motivated Babar to proceed towards India?
- Who laid the foundation of Mughal dynasty in India?
- When and between whom was the battle of Khanwa?

- d. The Mughal administration was based on which system?
- e. Who prepared the land revenue policy of Akbar? Write two characteristics of this policy?
- f. What was the effect of Mughal Rajput relations on Mughal empire?
- g. Write five sentences on the cultural style of Mughal Empire?

Answers

Question from the Lesson

6.1

1.
 - a. 1494 AD
 - b. Between Akbar and Hemu
 - c. Khanwa
 - d. Humayun
2.
 - a. Fargana in 1494 AD
 - b. Rumi and Tuglana
 - c. In 1526 AD between Babar and Ibrahim K Lodi.
 - d. Son of Babar, after falling from the stairs of the library.

6.2

1.
 - a. ✓
 - b. ✓
 - c. ✗
 - d. ✗
 - e. ✓
2.
 - d. all the above
3.
 - a. 1/3 Part
 - b. Turkey
 - c. Mansabdari

6.3

1.
 - a. Shivaji, Maratha kingdom
 - b. Raigarh
 - c. 1680 AD
 - d. Chauth
 - e. Balaji Vishwanath
2.
 - c
3.
 - b
4.
 - a

6.4

1. a. ✓ b. ✗
c. ✗ d. ✓
2. a. Mohammad Ghori b. 1576 AD c. Jahangir

Questions from the lesson

1. a. Humayun b. 1857 AD c. Akbar
d. 1680 AD e. Rajput
2. a. ✓ b. ✓ c. ✗
d. ✓ e. ✗ f. ✓
3. a. 1539 AD b. 1576 AD
c. 1761 AD d. 1530 AD
e. 1665 AD
4. a. Protest against the elite class, alienation from the nobility and due to instability in central Asia.
b. By Babar
c. In 1527 between Babar and Rana Sanga
d. They got military and administrative support of the brave Rajputs. Mughal Empire became powerful.
5. Mughal period culture.
a. Hindu Muslim mixed culture
b. Encouragement to music
c. Development of architecture based on Mughal style
d. Encouragement to literature
e. Progress in drawing and painting

Rule of British Company

Portuguese were the first who came to India around 15th century. After their invasion, Dutch, British, French and Danish companies came for business in India. British East India Company got permission from Mughals to do business in India. East India Company defeated Indian rulers in the Battle of Plassey and Buxar. British East India Company started their rule in Bengal in 1765. Slowly they expanded their rule to other parts of India. They started collecting taxes (lagan) in agriculture sector. This tax was obtained in the name of izaredari system and permanent settlement (sthayi bandobast). British East India Company had an impact on Indian business and industries. This policy of the company increased poverty and unemployment. Company abolished sati system and made laws for widow remarriage. Company also popularized English education. Raja Ram Mohan Roy started reforms in religion and society in 19th century. These works led to national movement in Indians. This gave rise to an aggression against British rule in Indians. This aggression came out in the form of revolt of 1857.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe the Advent of English and British East India Company in India;
- Explain the establishment of British rule in India by British company;
- Explain the effects of British Empire on agriculture, business, industry, commerce and society;
- Explain the effects of 19th century mass movement in various areas in India;
- Describe the dis-satisfaction in Indians against the policies of British East India Company and
- Explain the revolt of 1857.

7.1 Coming of English and East India Company in India

Vasco Di Gama, a Portuguese came to India 1498. He landed on Calicut port where ruler Jemorin welcomed him. He took back spices, cotton clothes and other items to his country. Afterwards other European people like Dutch, French, Danish and English came to India. All these Europeans came for business to India.



Fig 7.1: Vasco Di Gama

Businessmen in London started a joint share company on 31 December, 1600. This company was named British East India Company. Another name for this company was 'John Company'. The major contest for business was between French company and British East India Company. The first person to ask permission for business in India was Captain Hawkins. He represented British East India Company but he was not given the permission.

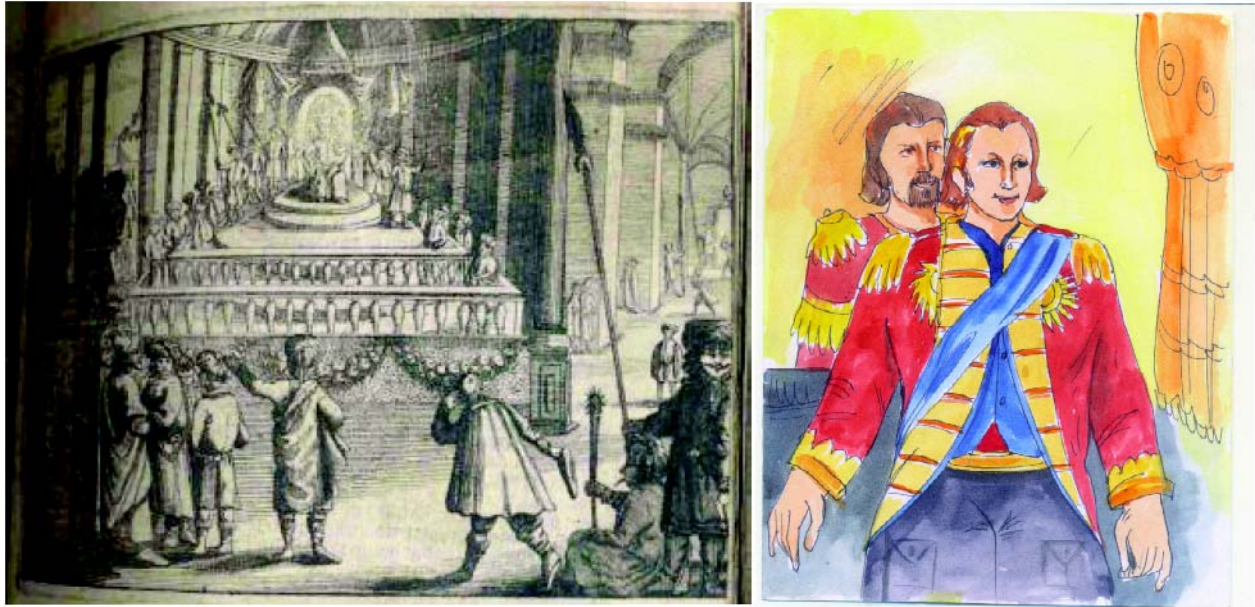


Fig. 7.2: Sir Thomas Roe in Jahangir's court

Sir Thomas Roe, ambassador of Queen Elizabeth I of Britain came to Mughal court during the rule of Jahangir. Jahangir gave him the permission to establish a commercial centre in Surat in 1612. This Mughal order gave East India Company the permission to do business in India.

There was a huge demand of Indian goods in Europe. This huge demand was because goods were cheap and had a better quality. European companies purchased goods from India and sold them in Britain to earn profit. British East India Company limited themselves to business activities just like the Portuguese.

After 1650 British East India Company came under new business class. New business class followed the imperial businessman of America and West Indies. These people connected the colonies of England, Africa and India.

Mughal Empire became weak after the death of Mughal emperor Aurangzeb in 1707. Regional powers like Bengal, Hyderabad, Awadh, Punjab and Maratha led to political instability. These situations gave opportunity to East India Company to establish their rule. Thus East India Company began to see the dream of ruling India. This was done by making India a British colony. They established few rules to establish their rule in India. East India Company made 3 rules for their expansion which were:

1. Annexing Indian territories by winning the war against them;
2. Doing subsidiary alliance (sahayak Sandhi) with Indian states;
3. Occupying Indian areas by merging policy.

Various treaties and agreements were signed with local rulers for the establishment of British Empire. Lord Wellesley gave expansion by the policy of subsidiary alliance. Lord Dalhousie propounded Doctrine of Lapse.

Three wars took place in southern India in 18th century. The reason of these wars was the commercial competition between French and English companies. These wars are known as Carnatic War. East India Company wanted to shed the dominance of French company. Thus a seven year war began in Europe between 1756-63. Due to this war both companies started fighting in India and third Carnatic war took place. Sir Ayar Koot of British Company defeated Duplex and Busy in Wandiwash war in 1760. This led to the end of French power in India.

Pondicherry came under English power in 1761. French company was limited to only business by the treaty of Paris in 1763. In this agreement, French got their property back. Before this treaty, battle of Plassey took place in 1757. The cause of this battle was the differences between Nawab of Bengal, Siraj Ud Daula and British East India Company. Nawab Siraj Ud Daula was defeated in this battle.



Fig. 7.3: Battle of Plassey

The main causes of battle of Plassey were- misuse of Mughal ruler's royal order, building fort without the permission of nawab, questioning Nawab's authority, British conspiracy against Nawab with the help of Amir Chand, Jagat Seth and commander Mir Jafar, tax free business facility for British for Rs. 3000/- etc.

After becoming nawab, Mir Jafar gave money and gifts to British company. The demands of company and its officials began increasing. Mir Jafar was unable to fulfil these demands. He started getting close to Dutch company but the British didn't like it. They made Mir Qasim the Nawab of Bengal instead of Mir Jafar.

Mir Qasim did not want to become a puppet in the hands of British East India Company. He gave the company the areas of Vardhman, Midnapur, Chitagaong (chatganv) for army expenses. But they had a dispute over the business. Mir Qasim gave both British and Indian businessmen the facility of tax free business. This was a big blow to British East India Company.

Mir Qasim started building his army on European technique. He shifted his capital from Murshidabad to Munger. He built a factory of gunpowder and guns. This was the biggest mistake of Mir Qasim in the eyes of British. Mir Qasim, Mughal emperor, Shah Alam and Nawab Shuja Ud Daula of Awadh came together against British company. The common army of these rulers fought with British army headed by Clive on 22 October 1764 at Buxar, near Patna. British East India Company won this battle.

After the battle of Buxar, mughal emperor Shah Alam signed a treaty with British in Allahabad. The nawab of Awadh separated himself from the war. Mir Qasim fought alone and died soon afterwards. By winning battle of Buxar, British East India Company won the civil rights on the state of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Now British East India Company became a political power. Clive had established British Empire in India.



Fig. 7.4: Nawab Siraj Ud Daula



Intext Questions

7.1

1. Match the following:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------|
| I. Battle of Buxar | A. 1707 |
| II. Battle of Plassey | B. 1760 |
| III. Battle of Wandiwash | C. 1763 |
| IV. Paris Treaty | D. 1764 |
| V. Death of Aurangzeb | E. 1757 |

2. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:

(British East India Company, Surat, Lord Dalhousie, subsidiary, Portugal)

- Vasco Di Gama belonged to _____.

2. _____ was established on 31 December, 1600.
3. Sir Thomas Roe got the permission to establish business centre in _____ in 1612.
4. Lord Wellesley started _____ alliance.
5. Doctrine of Lapse was started by _____.

7.2 British empire- effects on the development of agriculture, business, commerce and society

British East India Company established political power in Bengal after the battle of Plassey in 1757 and battle of Buxar in 1764. Clive started dual system of government in Bengal. By this policy, Clive started indirect rule in Bengal. According to this policy, English had powers and resources without any responsibility. The whole responsibility was with the Nawab of Bengal. The nawab of Bengal neither had resources nor power. This dual system of government made Bengal a chaotic place. The corruption increased and confusion expanded.

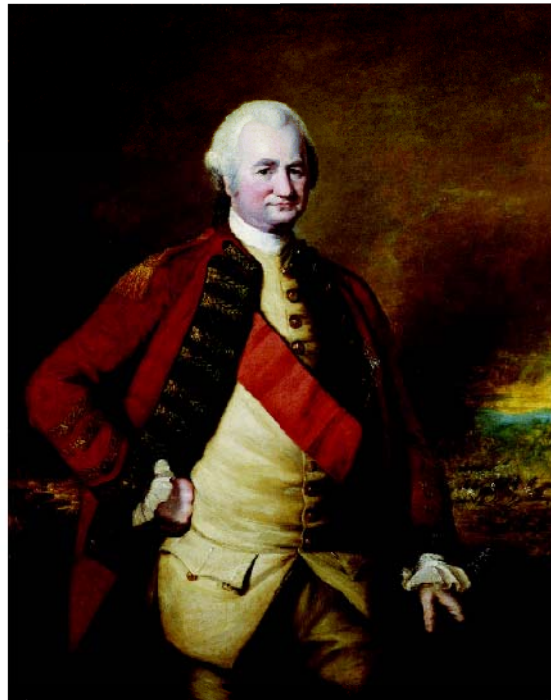


Fig. 7.5: Lord Clive

British government decided not to leave company alone. Businessmen and producers in England pressurized the British government to end monopoly of the company. There was huge corruption in Bengal. Therefore British parliament passed regulatory act in 1773. The main provisions of this act were- to control the open business of the company, limit the rule of company for 20 years, areas of Bengal, Bombay and Madras came under the rule of British government, Bombay and Madras came under the rule of governor. Governor

of Bengal was now known as governor general. Warren Hastings became first governor general.

Pitts India act was passed in 1784. A board of control was established by this act. This bill increased the powers effect of parliament. Lord Cornwallis ruled from 1786 to 1793. Cornwallis declared the business by workers illegal. He reformed the salary of workers. He divided the commercial and administrative works of company. Collecting revenue now became the important administrative work of the company.

Lord Cornwallis started permanent settlement in Bengal. This was the beginning to remove the demerits of Izaredari system by Warren Hastings. Under this policy company paid one time amount to landlords for their settlement of land. The result was that land lord became the owner of the land and the farmer became his labourer. Land could be sold, purchased, mortgaged and could be transferred to other's name. Company stopped the expansion of agriculture and development of the land.

Alexander Raden collected tax by Ryotwari system in Bombay and Madras. Here farmers used to pay taxes on their land directly to the government. Mahalwari was also a system of collecting tax in 1822. Mahalwari refers to the submission of all collected tax to British East India Company by big villages (mahal). This system was implemented in Punjab and north India.

The land revenue policy of British East India Company did not pay attention to the development of agriculture. They increased the rate of land revenue. Farmers left agricultural work due to the oppression by landlords (Zamindars). Starvation and poverty increased. Drought, famine and loans of creditors increased their problems. The charter of 1813 ended the business monopoly of East India Company. The charter of 1833 ended the business monopoly of the company with China.

Company purchased and exported readymade Indian products in England. For this, company used Indian revenue from 1757 to 1813. The major product among them were opium, cotton, silk, jute, grains, oil, seeds and tea. Drought and famine were the result of commercialization of agriculture.

The free trade policy of British administration changed the nature of Indian colonies. The more production of goods by British industries was the reason of declining price of products. Indian products were costly as they were handmade and production was less. Therefore, Indian market was open for British goods. The taxes on products made in England were negligible. Products made in England replaced Indian made products as they were cheap and durable. This had a bad effect on Indian business and industries. The business was destroyed. There was a bad effect on Indian cotton clothing industry also. Condition of weavers and businessmen got worsened. Due to the policies of British East India Company Indian society suffered unemployment, starvation and poverty.



Intext Questions

7.2

1. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (x) the wrong one:

- a. Clive started dual rule in Bengal.

- b. Warren Hastings was the second governor general of Bengal.
- c. Alexander Raden started Ryotwari system.
- d. Mahalwari system of land revenue started in 1822.
- e. The charter of 1833 stopped the monopoly of company's business with China.

2. Choose the correct option to fill in the blanks:

(Cornwallis, Ryotwari, Mahalwari, 1784)

- a. Pitts India act was enacted in _____.
- b. _____ declared the business by workers illegal.
- c. In _____ system farmers paid their land revenue taxes directly to government.
- d. _____ refers to the system where the collective tax is given to company by big village.

7.3

Mass movement of 19th century- effects of reforms in social, educational and religious sphere

19th century is considered to be a mass movement age in India. This mass movement started in Bengal and spread in entire India.

Raja Ram Mohan Roy established Atmiya Sabha in 1814 in Bengal. Atmiya sabha started a debate on earstwhile social and political issues. He supported western scientific education. He was against the customs of Hindu religion like idol worship, untouchability, sati system etc. Atmiya sabha was changed to Brahma samaj in 1828. Lord William Bentinck declared sati system illegal in 1829. Raja Ram Mohan Roy established Vedant College in 1825. After the death of Raja Ram Mohan Roy in 1833, Brahma samaj was headed by Devendra Nath Tagore.

Keshav Chandra Sen became a member of Brahma samaj in 1858. He expanded the activities of samaj outside Bengal like Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Madras and Bombay. Keshav Chandra Sen opposed caste



Fig. 7.6: Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar

system. He was a supporter of women rights and widow remarriage. He made reforms of Brahmo samaj universal. In 1866 brahmo samaj split in two sections- one Adi Brahm Samaj headed by Devendra nath Tagore and second, Brahm samaj of India under the leadership of Keshav Chandra Sen.

Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar advocated education of girls. He opposed social evils like polygamy, child marriage etc. He framed widow remarriage act with Lord Dalhousie to improve the condition of widows.

Ram Krishan Paramhans and his disciple Narendra gave the principle of spiritual Hinduism. This principle had unity of all religions and had trust in Hindu religion. Narendra became famous with the name of Swami Vivekananda. He established Ram krishan Mission in 1897. He created social and religious awareness by opposing caste system, untouchability and superstitions.

Reformist leaders like Atmaram Pandurang, Mahadev Govind Ranade, Keshav Chandra Sen, Karson Das Moolji, R. G. Bhandarkar, V.N. Mandlik, K. T. Tailing opposed caste system, untouchability, discrimination, idol worship, polytheism (bahudewad) etc. in western India in 19th century. They supported widow remarriage, women education and monotheism (ekeshwarwad). Manav Dharma Sabha was established in 1844. Paramhans Mandli was established in 1849. Atmaram Pandurang established Prarthna Samaj. Mahadev Govind Ranade played an important role in Southern educational society.



Fig. 7.7: Ram Krishna Paramhans



Fig. 7.8: Swami Vivekananda

Dayanand saraswati established Arya Samaj in 1875 in Bombay. He also wrote Satyarth Prakash. Arya Samaj became popular in Punjab and other Hindi speaking areas. Lahore became the chief centre of the activities of Arya samaj. Arya samaj oposed idol worship, polytheism, dominance of Puranas and Brahmans, child marriage, untoucability, discrimination and the conversion of Hindus into christianity and Islam. Arya Samaj laid stress on improving the conditions of widows and education of girls.



Fig. 7.9: Dayanand Saraswati

Arya samaj had a downfall after the death of Dayanand Saraswati in 1883. Dayanand Anglo Vedic Trust and Management Society was established in 1886 in Lahore. The society opened a school for expanding education. Lala Hansraj was a lecturer here. Arya samaj was divided in 1893. Dayanand Anglo Vedic (DAV) group was headed by Lala Hansraj and Lala Lajpat rai. The other Gurukul group was headed by Munshi Ram and Lekha Ram.

Gurukul group established Arya Kanya Pathshala in Jalandhar. Munshiram established Gurukul in Kangri of Haridwar. This gurukul became the chief centre of Arya Kanya education. Munshi Ram became a sage (sanyasi) in the name of Swami Shradhanand. The main slogan was "vedon ki ore lauto" (go back to Vedas). This slogan was to bring back hindus who had turned Muslim and Christians. Arya samaj did for "punah shudhi andolan" (re purity movement) for such people. Arya samaj gave importance to Hindi language and devnagri script.

The power had come in the hands of English from Mughal rulers. The language of employment and work changed from Persian to English. Therefore the employment of educated Muslims and upper class was lost. They were fed up of being un-employed and powerless. Farajis movement started in Bengal under the leadership of Shariatullah. Baliyutaalah headed this movement in delhi. This movement laid importance on the purification of islam. 'Tarikh-ae-muhadiya' was started by Titu Mir. This movement was further headed by Syed Ahmed Banarelvi. All these supported Islamic tradition.

Syed Ahmed Khan (1814-1898) advocated modern science and technical education to improve the condition of Muslims. Syed Ahmed Khan established British Indian Association in 1866. He also established Muhmadan Anglo Oriental College in 1875. This college is now known as Aligarh Muslim University. The movement Syed Ahmed Khan took Muslim society towards modernity. It also helped in removing social and religious evils.

In this way all these reform movements produced awareness in various areas of India in 19th century. These movements had a mission to eradicate social and religious evils by expanding education. They laid foundation for national freedom struggle against British rule also. They created a referendum (janmat) against British rule.



Intext Questions 7.3

1. Which century is known for reforms?
 - a. 17
 - b. 18
 - c. 19
 - d. 20

2. What was established by Raja Ram Mohan Roy in 1814?
 - a. Prarthna Sabha
 - b. Singh Sabha
 - c. Atmiya Sabha
 - d. Bal Sabha

3. Who helped Lord Dalhousie in widow remarriage act in 1856?
 - a. Raja Ram Mohan Roy
 - b. William Bentinck
 - c. Atmiya Sabha
 - d. None of the above

4. Who wrote Satyarth Prakash?
 - a. Vivekanad
 - b. Dayanand Saraswati
 - c. Ram Krishna
 - d. Syed Ahmed Khan

5. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
 - a. Arya Samaj was established at _____ in 1875. (Bpmbay/Aligarh)
 - b. Atmaram Pandurang established Prathna Samaj in _____. (1865/1867)
 - c. _____ established Gurukul in Kangri in 1902. (Munshi Ram/ Lala Lajpat Rai)
 - d. British Indian Association was established by _____ in 1866. (Syed Ahmed Khan/ Lala Hansraj)

7.4 Struggle of 1857

You have already read that British East India Company was formed on 31 December, 1600. British East India Company defeated Portuguese, Dutch, French and Danish companies in business competition. British East India Company defeated French company in the war of Wandiwash.

Clive defeated the Nawab of Bengal Siraj Ud Daula in the battle of Plassey in 1757. British East India Company defeated the combined forces of Mir Qasim, Sujha Ud Daula and Mughal Emperor Shah Alam in the battle of Buxar in 1764. Company got civil rights on Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. British East India Company became a political centre from business company.

Clive started dual system of administration in Bengal in 1765. This made Bengal a chaotic place. Bengal became centre of plunder (loot). Company tried to stop corruption by a regulating act of 1773. Lord Cornwallis started permanent settlement in Bengal in 1763. This put more burden on farmers about land revenue and made their condition worse.

Lord Wellesley started subsidiary alliance in 1798. According to this treaty the rulers had to use their army to safeguard British. They had to spend all the amount on British army. British residents could intervene in the internal matter of the state. The first state to accept subsidiary alliance was Hyderabad. Other states were Cochin, Jaipur, Travancore and Mysore. Indian rulers lost their freedom by accepting subsidiary alliance.

The imperialism expansion policy of Lord Wellesley was changed to annexure policy by Lord Dalhousie. He annexed Satara, Jaipur, Sambhalpur, Nagpur and Jhansi on the excuse of absence of natural heir. British did not accept adopted sons as the legal heir. This was opposed by Nana Saheb and Laxmi bai. They annexed Awadh on the pretext of bad administration in the state. Therefore, local rulers developed dis-satisfaction, anger and aggression against British East India Company.

Lack of business in India and cheap mill cloth of England worsened the condition of Indian weavers and labour. British East India Company imposed many taxes on Indian goods. The tax on British goods sold in India was very less. The business policy of British government was not profitable to Indian businessman. There was a dis-satisfaction in business class also against British.

Lord William Bentinck made a law against sati system. Lord Dalhousie made a law against widow remarriage. People considered these laws as an interference in their religious and social matters. This also created unrest against British in Indian people.



Fig. 7.10: Mangal Pandey



Fig. 7.11: Bahadur Shah Zafar



Fig 7.12: Rani Laxmi Bai



Fig 7.13: Begum Hazrat Mahal

Heroes of the revolt of 1857 and places related to them

Mangal Pandey	-	Barackpur (Bengal)
Soldiers	-	Meerut Cantt
Bahadur Shah Zafar	-	Delhi
Nana Saheb	-	Kanpur
Begum Hazrat Mahal	-	Lucknow
Rani Laxmi Bai	-	Jhansi
Veer Kunwar Singh	-	Jagdishpur (Aara)

Indian soldiers working in British army lived in a miserable condition. They were facing problems in their post, salary, discrimination, anomaly (visangati) and inhuman behavior. Indian soldiers started their struggle in Meerut Cantt on 10 may, 1857. The other classes of Indian society who were unhappy with their condition joined them. These were farmers, weavers, business, Indian rulers, land lords and other classes. The revolt of 1857 failed due to lack of resources, lack of unity among leaders and lack of better coordination. But this unsuccessful revolt became the basis of successful unrest in India against British. They united all the classes in their miserable condition. India got freedom by national struggle.



Intext Questions 7.4

1. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (X) the wrong one:
 - a. East India Company won the business competition of European companies.
 - b. Lord Wellesley started annexure policy.
 - c. Hyderabad was the first state to accept subsidiary alliance.
 - d. British East India Company imposed less tax on Indian goods and high on British goods.
2. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct answer:
 - a. British Empire annexed _____ on the excuse of bad administration. (Satara/Awadh)
 - b. Soldiers started struggle on 10 may 1857 at _____. (Delhi/Meerut)
 - c. Farmers were unhappy with East India Company due to increase in _____. (land revenue tax/ business tax)
 - d. Nana Saheb and _____ opposed the British because adopted children were not considered legal heirs by the British. (Shah Alam / Laxmi Bai)



What you have learnt

- Portuguese came first to India. They were followed by Dutch, French, English and Danish companies. The commercial competitiveness was won by British East India Company. They maintained their dominance and established British Empire.
- The bad policies of British empire destroyed Indian agricultural system, business and industries. Indian society suffered poverty, starvation and unemployment.
- In 19th century social and religious reformists created mass movement. This mass movement removed all social, religious and educational evils. These movements made Indian society modern.

- The policies of British East India Company made soldiers, farmers, labour, weaver, land lord, local rulers and businessman angry. They all fought in the struggle of 1857 against British East India Company.
- The causes responsible for 1857 revolt were the economic, social, religious and political policies of British.

Let us do it

1. Collect and discuss all the information regarding the revolt of 1857.
2. Note all the classes of society who fought the struggle of 1857. Try to find their cause for participating in the struggle of 1857.



Terminal Questions

1. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (x) the wrong one:
 - a. Vasco Di Gama was a citizen of England.
 - b. British East India Company was established on 31 December 1600.
 - c. Lala Hardayal established Atmiya Sabha.
 - d. Mir Qasim transferred the capital from Murshidabad to Munger.
 - e. The condition of Indian weavers was improved by the cheap products of cloth mills in England.
2. Match the following:

a. Regulating Act	I. 1828
b. Atmiya Sabha	II. 1857
c. Brahm Samaj	III. 1773
d. Arya Samaj	IV. 1886
e. British Indian Association	V. 1814
f. Starting struggle from Meerut Cantt	VI. 1875
3. When did Sir Thomas Roe, the ambassador of Queen Elizabeth I met Jahangir?

a. 1516	b. 1612
c. 1650	d. 1618

4. When did Pondicherry come under British rule ?
- a. 1756
 - b. 1760
 - c. 1757
 - d. 1761
5. Who established Brahm Samaj?
- a. Keshav Chandra Sen
 - b. Devendranath Tagore
 - c. Raja Ram Mohan Roy
 - d. Ishwar Chandra Vidasagar
6. Who started subsidiary alliance?
- a. Lord Wellesley
 - b. Lord Clive
 - c. Lord Cornwallis
 - d. Lord William Bentinck
7. Answer the following questions:
- a. Who was Vasco Di Gama?

 - b. Who started subsidiary alliance?

 - c. Where was Ryotwari implemented?

 - d. Write the names of any three social and religious reformists of 19th century?

 - e. Who established Arya Samaj ? where was it established?

f When and where was the revolt of 1857 started?

g What were the chief causes of Battle of Plassey?

Answer Key

Intext Questions

7.1

1. I. d II. e III. b IV. c V. a

2. a. Portugal

b. British East India Company

c. Surat

d. Subsidiary alliance

e. Lord Dalhousie

7.2

1. a. ✓ b. x c. ✓ d. ✓ e. ✓

2. a. 1784 b. Cornwallis

c. Ryotwari d. Mahalwari

7.3

1. c 2. c 3. d 4. b

5. a. Bombay b. 1867

c. Munshi Ram d. Syed Ahmed Khan

7.4

1. a. ✓ b. x c. ✓ d. x

2. a. Awadh b. Merrut c. Land revenue d. Laxmi Bai

Terminal Questions

1. a. x b. ✓ c. x d. ✓ e. x

2. a. 1773 b. 1814 c. 1828
 d. 1875 e. 1866 f. 1857
3. 1612
4. 1761
5. Raja Ram Mohan Roy
6. Lord Wellesley
7. a. Vasco Di Gama was a Portuguese sailor who came to India in 1498.
 b. Lord Wellesley
 c. Madras and Bombay
 d. Raja Ram Mohan Roy, Dayanand Saraswati, Vivekanand, Keshav Chandra Sen, Syed Ahmed Khan
 e. Dayanand Saraswati in 1875
 f. 10 may 1857 in Meerut Cantt.

British Rule and Independent India

If your age is more than 18 years, then you must be going to cast votes in the elections. We choose our representative by casting our vote. The elected representatives run the government of the country and the state. We can also choose our representative by casting votes in Zila, Samiti and Gram panchayat. This system of running the government is called a democratic system. Democracy is also known as republic or freedom. Different forms of government can be seen in history, such as- monarchy, dictatorship, colonialism etc. Democracy is considered the best governance system of them all. In this chapter we will learn about all these governance systems.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Describe the changes and effects of British administration;
- Explain the beginning and effects of freedom movement in India and
- Analyze the condition of India after independence.

As you have already read that British East India Company expanded its empire in India in 1612. Queen Elizabeth I of Britain had sent Sir Thomas Roe as her ambassador to mughal court. Jahangir was the mughal ruler. He gave permission to Roe to establish a commercial centre in Surat. Battle of Plassey took place in 1757. After this war, it was an official beginning of British rule in India. After the Battle of Buxar in 1764 British East India Company changed from a business company to a political power. They got all the civil rights in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Slowly British East India Company established its empire.

Clive established dual system of rule in Bengal in 1765. This created chaos and confusion in Bengal. To stop this corruption, Warren Hastings passed regulating act of 1773. Imperial court was also established in Calcutta. Izzadari system started for the collection of land revenue.

Lord Cornwallis started permanent settlement system for collecting land revenue in 1793. Police department was established for better administration. Various charters of 1813, 1833 and 1853 were made to control the functions of East India Company. Lord William Bentinck declared sati system illegal.



Fig. 8.1: Lord William Bentinck

Lord Macaulay presented his report in 1835. He suggested English as a medium of education and also implemented English education. Lord Dalhousie established railways, post, telegram and public service to make India modern. In his era, Wood's dispatch in 1854 came. Wood's dispatch was based on modern Indian education. The proposal of opening university in Calcutta, Bombay and Madras was sent to government. Lord Dalhousie made widow remarriage act in 1856 on the request of Ishawar Chandra Vidyasagar.

Indian states were mixed in British Empire by the annex policy (Hadap policy) of the British. These changes in the administration of British East India Company have a bad effect on farmers, businessman, landlords and local rulers. Soldiers revolted in 1857. They were helped by common people. This began the revolt of 1857. British government passed an act in 1858. This act made India a state under the British queen.



Intext Questions 8.1

1. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (x) the wrong one:
 1. Akbar gave the permission to Thomas Roe to establish a commercial centre.
 2. Permanent settlement was started by Lord Cornwallis in Bengal.
 3. Lord Dalhousie developed modern India.
2. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
(Wood dispatch, Lord Dalhousie)
 1. _____ made widow remarriage act in 1856.
 2. _____ developed modern India.

8.2 Beginning and effects of National Movement in India

Indian economy was based on agriculture in 19th century. Many languages were spoken by people in their regions. The feeling of nationalism was restricted only to their areas and culture. There was a lack of nationalism and national unity. English were ruling on the policy of 'divide and rule.'

The feeling of nationalism was developed in India as an opposition to British rule. Local rulers and people opposed English rule. They were not united. These people were divided in various classes as rulers, farmers, labour, artisan, soldiers and tribal people. There was a lack of unity and nationalism in the struggle of 1857. This was one of the causes of failure of this revolt.

British rule brought loss to Indian culture. People started uniting against British to save their culture. But the feeling of nationalism in India was also developed by the economic policy of British. British rulers sent all the profits, salary, interest, pension, land revenue etc from India to Britain. This made India poor and economically weak. British economic policy weakened farmer, labor, businessmen, weaver and landlord. Therefore, these people started uniting against British rule.

People united against the exploitation policy of British administration. People increased their aggression. This helped in developing the feeling of nationalism.

The activities of Indian national movement gave birth to national movement. Revolutionary leaders expanded national movement. The mass movement against English was prepared by the efforts of Bal Gangadhar

Tilak, Gopal Krishan Gokhale, Mahatma Gandhi, Jawahar Lal Nehru, Shubash Chandra Bose, Dada Bhai Naroji etc. Indian railways press and modern education increased national movement. Slowly various stages of national movement came, like - 'Champaran movement' by Mahatma Gandhi in 1917, 'Non cooperation movement' in 1920-22, 'Civil Disobedience Movement' (Namak Satyagrah) in 1930. In the end 'Quit India Movement' in 1942 helped Indian freedom struggle to reach its goal. With this movement, our patriotic revolutionary leaders forced British to leave India. Some of them were- Saheed Bhagat Singh, Chandra Shekhar Azad, Ashafaquallah Khan, Rajguru, Sukhdev etc.



Fig. 8.2: Bal Gangadhar Tilak



Fig. 8.3: Gopal Krishan Gokhale

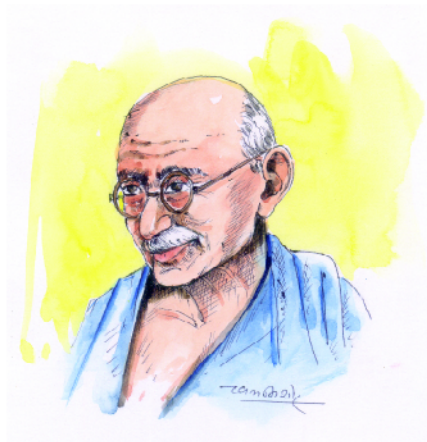


Fig. 8.4: Mahatma Gandhi



Fig. 8.5: Jawahar Lal Nehru

English started thinking to give independence to India. Lord Wavell organized an all party meeting in Shimla in 1945. The main parties who attended this meeting were Congress, Muslim League and other political parties. This 'Shimla Meeting' failed because of dis-satisfaction of Congress and a demand for separate area by Muslim League.



Fig. 8.6: Subhash Chandra Bose

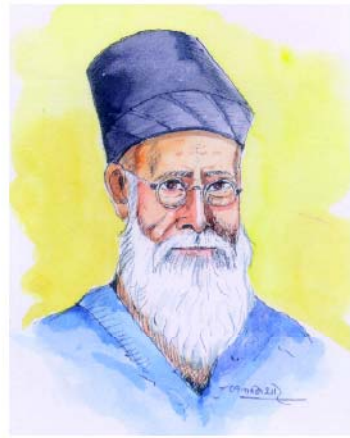


Fig. 8.7 : Dada Bhai Naroji



Fig. 8.8: Lala Lajpat Rai Fig.



8.9 : Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel



Fig. 8.10: Adul Kalam Azad

English administration had set up a cabinet mission in 1946. The main aim of cabinet mission was to build constitution of India and constitute a constitution drafting assembly. The demand of Muslim League for a

separate constitution assembly was rejected. Therefore, Muslim league started Day of Deliverance (pratyaksh karyawahi Divas). There were riots in the country. These riots became dangerous in Punjab and Bengal. Gandhiji tried to stop riots in Noakhali (Bengal). Gandhiji was alone in stopping riots here. Every party gave the permission of partition because of riots. Only Gandhiji was against the partition till the end. Gandhiji was murdered on 30 January 1947. After a long struggle India got freedom on 15 August 1947.



Fig. 8.11: Chandra Shekher Azad



Fig. 8.12: Saheed Bhagat Singh



Fig. 8.13: Asfaquaal Khan



Fig. 8.14: Sukhdev



Intext Questions 8.2

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
 - a. Indian economy was based on _____ in 19th century. (industries/ agriculture)
 - b. British rule brought _____ to Indian culture. (loss/profit)
 - c. _____ India movement started in 1942. (Quit/Tore)

2. Match the following:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| A. Champaran Movement | I. 1930 |
| B. Non cooperation movement | II. 1942 |
| C. Civil disobedience Movement | III. 1917 |
| D. Quit India Movement | IV. 1920-22 |

8.3 India after Independence

India got independence on 15 August 1947. There were many challenges in front of India at the time of independence. The major challenges were - framing of a constitution, finalizing the form of administration, building united India, India Pakistan border, determining territorial property of the nation, riots, reconstruction of weak Indian economy, rehabilitation of people affected by partition etc.

Sardar Patel made a unified India by combining 565 local states. The state of Hyderabad, Junagarh and Kashmir created problems. They were made a part of India by army invasion. This army invasion was done due to the demands of people. The merging letter of Kashmir was signed by Maharaja Hari Singh. Kashmir became a part of India. Goa, Pondicherry etc were included in India in 1961 by operation Vijay.

Indian constitution was framed by the drafting committee or constituent assembly. This framing of constitution began in 1946. Indian constitution was drafted over a period of 2 years 11 months and 18 days. The members of constituent assembly passed the constitution on 26 November 1946 in constituent assembly; Indian constitution was implemented on 26 January 1950. India was declared a democratic republic on 26 January 1950.

Planning commission was set up on 15 March 1950. Five year plans were framed for the development of the country. Democratic government was set up in India by the first general elections of 1951-52.

The first five year plan emphasized on agriculture for the economic development of the country. Second five year plan had industries as the chief area. This increased production and employment. India started non alignment movement in foreign policy on world level. Non Aligned Movement (NAM) was organized and headed by India.

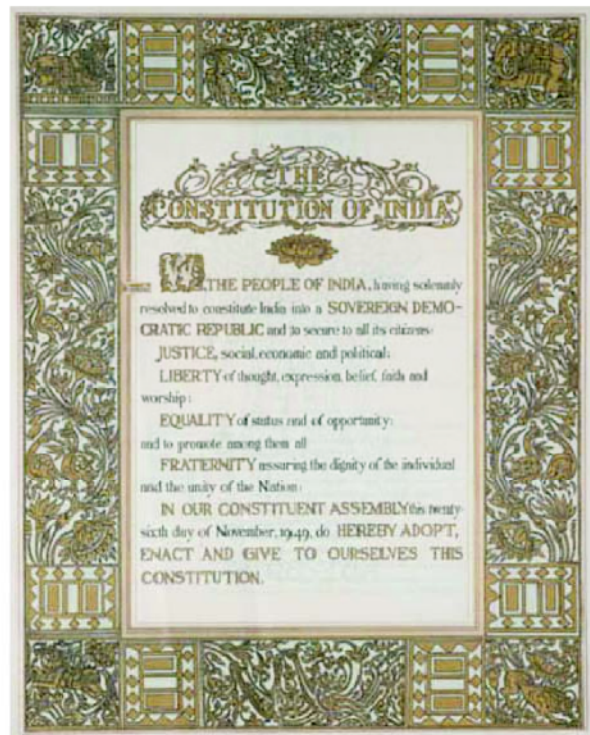


Fig. 8.15: Constitution of India

India maintained good relations with its neighboring countries. India gave the doctrine or principle of Panchsheel on regional level. SAARC was established to maintain peace and cordiality in South Asia. But we had a war with China in 1962. This war was a problem in maintaining good relations. From this war, we have a border dispute with China. We also fought three wars with Pakistan in 1947, 1965 and 1971. Kargil war was also fought between India and Pakistan in 1999. The 'Tashkent agreement' in 1966 and 'Shimla pact' in 1972 were between India and Pakistan. Agra summit was held to improve the relations between India and Pakistan. But the relations could not be improved. The main cause of tension between these countries is border dispute, Kashmir problem and terrorism.

India also progressed in science and technology after independence. Before independence India was a poor, backward and undeveloped country. We progressed a lot after independence. Today India is walking on the path of development. We are now standing in the line of developing countries.



Intext Questions 8.3

1. Match the following:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| a. Setting up planning commission | I. 1966 |
| b. Tashkent Agreement | II. 15 march 1950 |
| c. India China war | III. 1951-52 |
| d. First general elections | IV. 1962 |



What you have learnt

- Sir Thomas Roe, the ambassador of British East India Company established a commercial centre in Surat in 1612.
- Battle of Plassey and battle of Buxar made East India company a political power from a business company.
- Various changes were made in administration from 1757 to 1858. In 1858, the company rule ended. India came under the rule of the British queen.
- National Movement in India started after 1858. India got independence after many stages of struggle.
- After independence India faced a lot of economic, political and social challenges. India framed five year plans for the development of the country. India established itself on regional and international level in the world.

Let us do it

1. Collect and discuss the role of Gandhiji in Civil Disobedience Movement.
2. Prepare a short life introduction of various great personalities with photographs who took part in the freedom struggle of the country.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
 - a. Lord William Bentinck made sati _____ illegal. (system/program)
 - b. _____ and rule was the policy of British administration. (divide/join)
 - c. National freedom struggle got successful after a long _____ (struggle/happiness)
 - d. Five year plans were implemented for the _____ of the country. (development/loss)
2. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (x) the wrong one:
 - a. Indian economy was based on agriculture in 19th century.
 - b. British administration encouraged Indian culture.
 - c. Gandhiji supported the partition of India till end.
 - d. India-china war was fought in 1962.
3. Who made widow remarriage act?

4. When did India get independence?

5. When did the framing of Indian constitution start?

6. How many days were taken in drafting constitution?

7. Which works have been completed in your area after independence for development?

Our Country: India

We often see different types and shapes of land around us. Among them some are very high while some are completely flat. In India, this difference is even more apparent. Why is this so? This is because India is the seventh largest country in the world on the basis of area. Its three sides are surrounded by sea. On its west is the Arabian Sea, in its south is the Indian Ocean and on its east is the Bay of Bengal. In the north, the huge Himalayan mountain range makes its boundary. Due to its vastness and nature it is also called an Indian subcontinent. It is because of its large shape that all types of land-forms like mountain, plateau, plain, desert etc. are found here. Similarly, different types of climates can also be seen here. All these have together given an invaluable natural richness to India and enriched it with soil resources, water resources, flora and fauna. In this chapter we will read about these land-forms of India. We will also learn about the climate, soil, water, flora and fauna of India.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain the location of India;
- Explain the physical division of India like (mountain, plateau and plain);
- Explain the climates of India and define monsoon;
- Explain the types of soils and methods of soil conservation;
- Efficiently use and conserve water resources;
- Conserve forests after learning about the forests of India, advantages of forests, disadvantages of deforestation and
- Learn about and conserve the biodiversity of India.

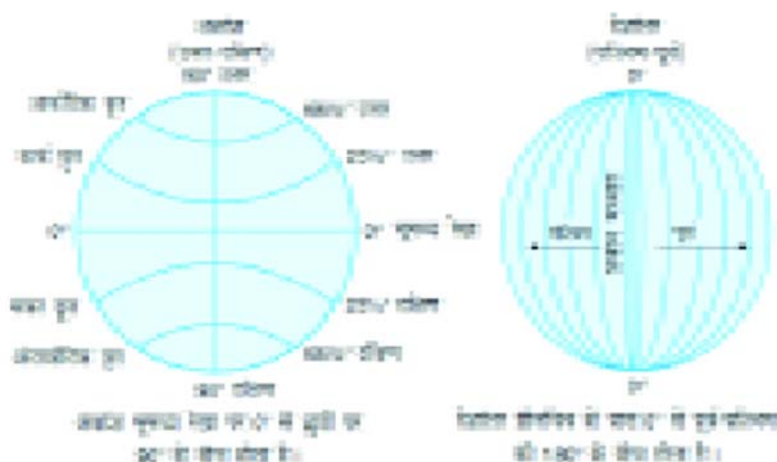
India is a vast country. You can estimate its vastness on the basis of the fact that, it is the seventh largest country in the world in surface area. India is 2.42 percent of world's total land area. We can measure the vast expanse of India by its latitude and longitude. The Indian mainland lies between $8^{\circ}4'$ to $37^{\circ}6'$ north latitude and $68^{\circ}7'$ to $97^{\circ}25'$ east longitude. Similarly, India measures 3,214 kilometres from north to south and 2,933 kilometres from east to west. The Tropic of Cancer ($23^{\circ}30'$ northern latitude) passes almost through the centre of India. The southernmost tip of India is called the Indira Point which is situated at $6^{\circ}4'$ southern latitude. Whereas the southernmost tip of Indian mainland is Kanyakumari ($8^{\circ}4'$ northern latitude).

Do You Know?

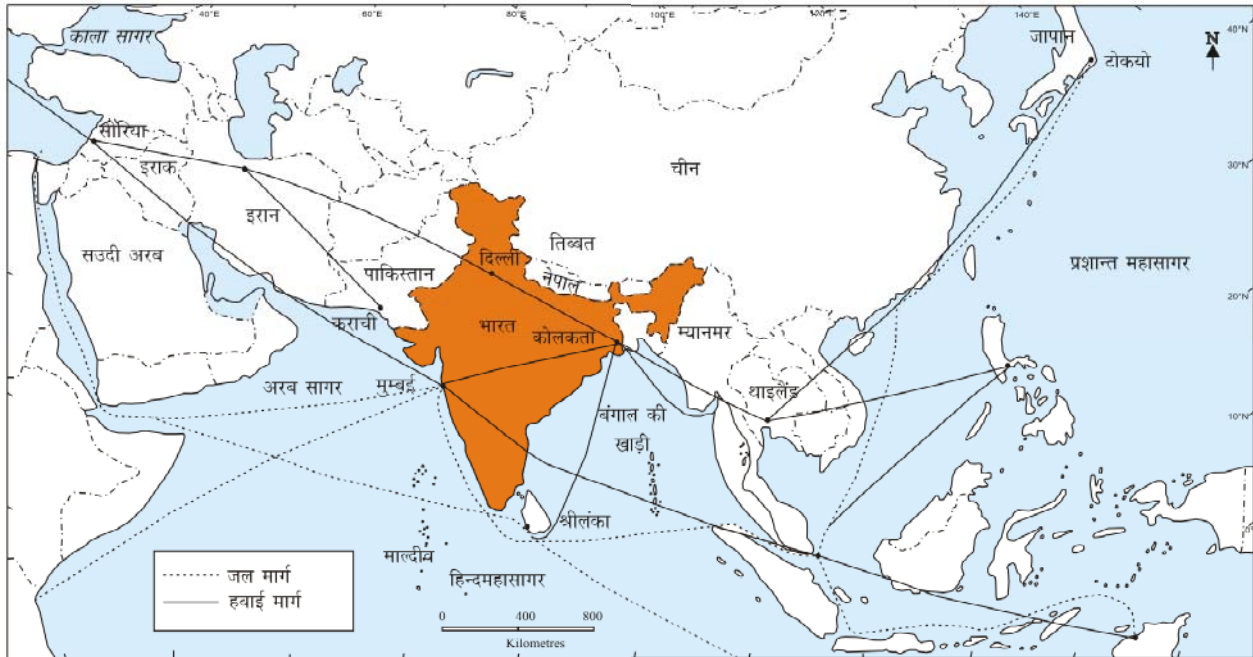
Latitude: latitude is the angular distance of any place on earth's surface measured from north or south of the equator.

Longitude: longitude is the angular distance of any place on earth's surface measured from east or west of the Greenwich's prime meridian.

Angular Distance: the distance from the centre to points is called angular distance.



India is a part of Asia. It is also the second largest country of Asia after China. Its three sides are surrounded by water. On the northwest side of India are Pakistan and Afghanistan. China, Nepal and Bhutan are located in its north; in the east are Bangladesh and Myanmar; and in the south are Sri Lanka and Maldives in the Indian Ocean. The northern side of India is surrounded by land while the southern side is surrounded by the Indian Ocean. The southern side of India is surrounded by the Bay of Bengal in the east and the Arabian Sea in the west. India has a land frontier of 15,200 kilometres long, whereas its coastline is 6200 kilometres long. The total area of India is 32.8 lakh square kilometres.



9.1 : Location of India

For a smooth functioning of the administration, India has been divided into states and union territories. In the present, India has 29 states and 7 union territories.



9.2 : Political Map of India



Intext Questions 9.1

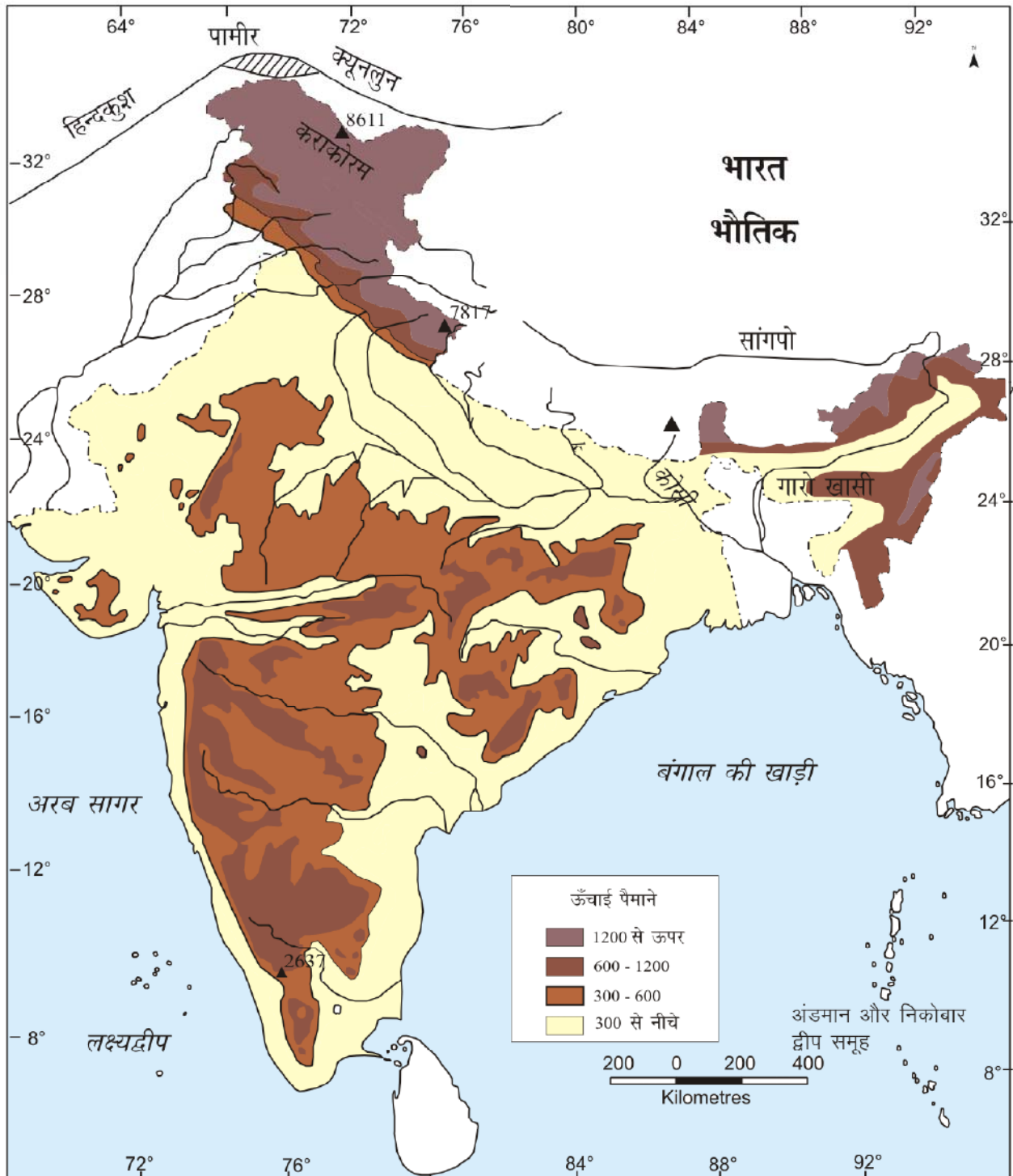
1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate words :
(second, $8^{\circ}4'-37^{\circ}6'$, China, seventh, $68^{\circ}7'-97^{\circ}25'$, Pakistan, Afghanistan)
 - (a) India is the largest country in the world.
 - (b) The northern latitude of the Indian mainland measures
 - (c) India lies between east longitude.
 - (d) and are on the northwest of India.
 - (e) India is the largest country of Asia after

9.2

Landforms of India: Mountain, Plateau and Plain

India is a land of geographical diversity. Here, some regions have high mountains while some have flat plains formed by rivers. But do you know how these land-forms are created? In fact, these are created by the occurrences happening in and out of earth. The mountains and plateaus are created by the activities happening inside the earth, while plains are created by the consolidation of rivers, air and other means. These land-forms are mainly divided into four regions:

1. The Great Northern Mountain Ranges
2. The Great Northern Plains
3. The Great Peninsular Plateau
4. The Coastal Plains and group of Islands



9.3 : Geographical Divisions of India

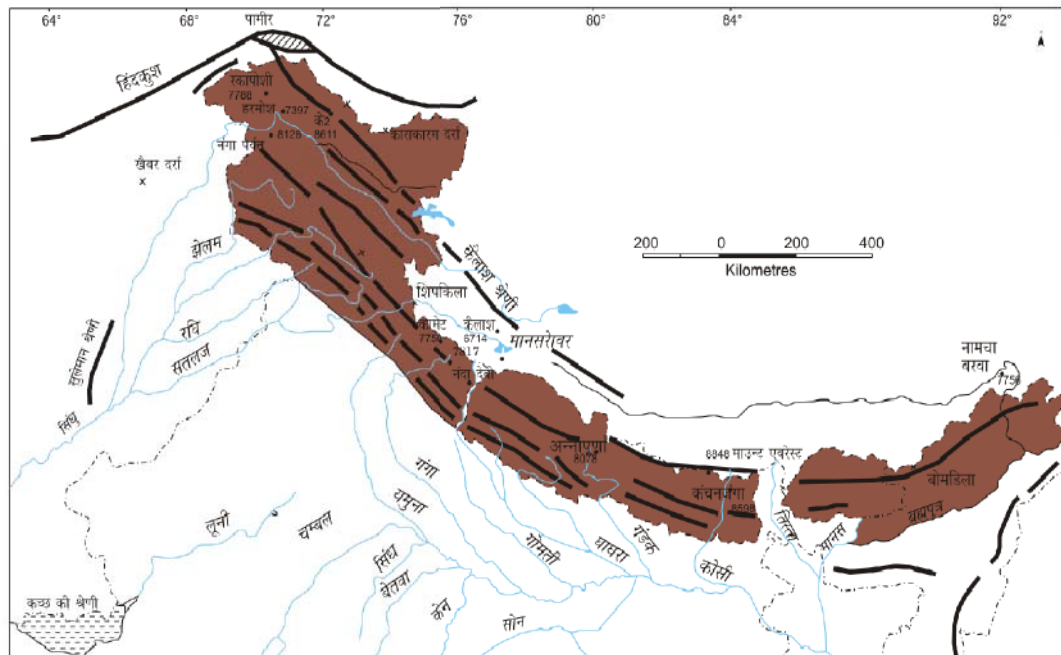
(A) The Great Northern Mountain Ranges

It is a group of big and high mountains spread across the northern part of India. For centuries, it has protected us from invaders coming from the north and also from the cold northern winds. It has been divided into three regions:

1. The Himalaya
2. The Trans-Himalaya
3. The Purvanchal Himalaya

1. The Himalayas - it is the highest mountain range of the world. It measures approximately 2,500 kilometres in length bordered on the north of India stretching alongside the Indus river in the west to the Brahmaputra river in the east. Its width is 400 to 150 kilometres. The Himalaya is also divided into three regions:

(a) **The Great Himalayas or Himadri** : its average height is 6,000 metre and is between 120 to 190 kilometres in width. It also includes the northern ranges and peaks which are always covered with snow. The Ganges and Yamuna rivers originate from many glaciers that are found here. World's highest mountain peak, Mount Everest is in Nepal, which is 8848 metre high. The highest mountain peak of India, Kangchenjunga (8,598 meter) is located in the Himalaya. There are many other mountain peaks in the Himalaya, for example - Makalu, Dhaulagiri, NangaParbat etc.



9.4 : The Great Northern Mountain Ranges

(b) **The Middle Himalayas or Himachal** : The height of this range lies between 1,000 to 4,500 metre. Its width is approximately 50 kilometres. The PirPanjal, DhaulaDhar and Mahabharata ranges are found here. This mountain region is a major tourist area. Many famous places, such as, Shimla, Dalhousie, Darjeeling, Chakrata, Mussoorie, Nainital etc. are located in this region.

- (c) **The Outer Himalayas or Shivaliks** : This is the southernmost Himalayan mountain range. It also has the lowest height of approximately 900 to 1,100 metre. Many valleys that lie between the Shivalik Hills and the Middle Himalayas are called the Doon, for example, Dehradun, KotliDoon, PatliDoon etc. These Doon or valleys are a major region for agriculture.
2. **The Trans-Himalayas** - This mountain range runs parallel to the Himalayas. Its main mountain ranges are Zaskar Range and Ladakh Range. The second highest mountain peak of the world is located here. On its northernmost side is the Karakoram range.
 3. **The Purvanchal Himalaya** - This is located in the eastern part of the northern mountain range. Mishmi, Naga and Mizo, Garo, Khasi and Jaintia hills are some of its main hills. The largest area of rainfall in the world is located here.

(B) The Great Northern Plains

Have you ever noticed that a huge region of north India is almost flat. This large plain region is called the northern plain. These plains are formed by the settlement of the sediments since lakhs of years in the past by the three main rivers- the Indus, the Ganges and the Brahmaputra and their tributaries. These plains are spread across approximately 7 lakh square kilometres. It spreads across an area of approximately 2,400 kilometres stretching from Punjab in the west to Assam in the east. Its width stretches from 150 kilometres in the east to 300 kilometres in the west. There are perennial rivers in these plains, that is, they are always flowing with water throughout the year as they originate from glaciers. These plains are very fertile and since the ancient times they have been the centre of civilisation. The Harappa and Mohanjadaro civilisations originated and spread in these plains because of the fertility of this region and easy availability of water. Even in the present this is the best land area for crop production. Wheat, rice, sugarcane, pulses, oil seeds, jute etc. are produced in huge quantity in this region. The irrigation system has been well developed because of the availability flat region. These plains are divided into two regions:

1. **The Western Plains** - These are made up of the sediments brought by the Indus River and its tributaries.
2. **The Ganga-Brahmaputra Plain** - This is made up of the sediments brought by the Ganges, Brahmaputra and its tributaries.

(C) The Great Peninsular Plateau

There is a huge region of triangular shaped plateau in the southern part of the great northern plains which spreads across approximately 16 lakh square kilometres of land. This occupies almost half of India's total area. This plateau is divided into different regions. The Narmada river divides it into two parts in the eastern and the western side. They are:

1. **The Central highlands** - These highlands extend from the Narmada river towards the north in the Great Plains. On its west side is the Aravalli mountain range, whose highest peak is Guru Shikhar (1,722 meter). The central highlands have been divided into many different regions. The eastern region of the Aravallis is called the Malwa Plateau. On its east are the Bundelkhand Plateau and Bagelkhand plateau. On the east side of Bagelkhand plateau is the Chota Nagpur plateau. In the southern part of these highlands is the Vindhyan and in the north-east are the Mahadev, Kaimur and Maikal hills. Narmada, Son and Chambal are its main rivers. All rivers except the Narmada join the Ganga river system in the east, whereas the Narmada joins the Arabian Sea in the west.



9.5 : The Great Peninsular Plateau

2. **The Peninsular plateau (Deccan plateau)** - this is the largest region of the great plateau. Look at the given map carefully, you will see a triangular shape figure. That is the Peninsular plateau. Its northern region runs parallel to the Narmada river, and Satpura Range, Mahadev

hills, Maikal hills and Rajmahal hills lie in its boundary. Its second region extends from the Rajmahal hills to Kanyakumari, whereas its third region extends from Kanyakumari to the Narmada river, which is called the western ghat (Sahyadri hills). The average height of the Peninsular plateau is 500 to 1,000 metre. Its highest peak, Anamudi (2,695 metre) is located in Kerala. Godavari, Kaveri, Pennar, Mahanadi etc. are its main rivers. This plateau is rich in mineral resources. Spices are also primarily cultivated here.

(D) The Coastal Plains and group of islands

Two sides of the Peninsular plateau are surrounded by coastal region. They are divided into two regions - western coastal plains and eastern coastal plains. The western coastal plains extend from the mouth of the Ganges river in the west to the to Kanyakumari near the Bay of Bengal in the south. Its average width is 210 kilometres. It has been divided into two parts - the northern part is called Northern Circars and its southern part is called Coromandel coast. Its main rivers are Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri. All these rivers make a delta. India's largest saltwater lake, Chilka is in the delta of Mahanadi. The western coastal plains extend from Kanyakumari to the Runn of Kuchchh. Its average width is 10-20 kilometre, but it is more wide in the north. It has been divided into three regions - (1) Konkan (from Daman to Goa), (2) Karnataka coast (from Goa to Mangalore), (3) Malabar coast (from Mangalore to Kanyakumari)

There is also a group of beautiful islands around the vast land of India - one is the the Andaman and Nicobar islands in the Bay of Bengal which is a group of 204 islands. Second is, the Lakshadweep, which is relatively small group of 43 islands in the Arabian Sea. The southernmost region of India, the Indira Point is located in the Andaman and Nicobar islands. Both of these groups are major tourist places.



Intext Questions 9.2

1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the appropriate words:

(2,500 Km, 7 lakh square km, Plains, Malwa Plateau, Coromandel Coast, northern Circars)

- (a) are formed by the settlement of the soil brought by the rivers and the wind.
- (b) The height of the Himalayas is approximately
- (c) The great northern plains measure approximately
- (d) The northern reaction of the eastern coastal plains is called and the southern part is called

2. Choose the correct option:

- (a) The average height of the Peninsular Plateau is -

- (a) 200 to 400 km (b) 2000 to 3000 km
 (c) 500 to 1000 km (d) 0000 to 6000 km
- (b) The height of Guru Shikhar is -
 (a) 1722 km (b) 1011 km
 (c) 1800 km (d) 1600 km
- (c) The western plains are formed by -
 (a) the Ganges and its tributaries (b) the Indus and its tributaries
 (c) Godavari and its tributaries (d) none of these

9.3 The climates of India and monsoon

Have you ever thought about why we experience different seasons in different months throughout the year in India? Sometimes we feel cold, sometimes hot and sometimes there is constant rainfall. Moreover, when we go to some far off place we experience different types of seasons. But why does this happen? Monsoon is the climate of India but different types of seasons are found here.

Do you know?

Climate is the sum total of the weather conditions and its diversity in a vast area over a long period of time (more than 30 years). The state of atmosphere at a particular time is called weather. The consistency of these weather conditions is responsible for the development of climate.

There are different seasons found in different regions of India. The reasons behind the diversity of seasons are height from sea level, distance from the coast, location of the mountains, distance from the equator etc. You will see that the northern region of India is extremely cold and covered with snow while the southern region is always warm. There is heavy rainfall in the eastern region while there is scant rainfall in the vast deserts of the west.

You must be wondering about what monsoon is. The word monsoon comes from the Arabic word, *mawsim* which means season or weather. The seasonal change in the wind conditions over a year is called climate.

Do you know?

Air has weight which exerts pressure on us. Temperature and air pressure have an opposite relationship. Places with high temperature have low air pressure whereas places with less temperature have high air pressure. The difference in air pressure is responsible for the movement of air. Air always moves from places with high air pressure to places with low air pressure.

During the summer, when major part of India is burning with heat, the vast Indian Ocean in the south experiences less heat. Similarly, the plain land of India is a region of low air pressure, whereas the area

above the Indian Ocean is a region of high air pressure. So, the wind starts moving from the watery region to the plain land. The wind contains a lot of moisture as it moves from the watery region. That is why these winds bring rain in almost all of the Indian subcontinent from the month of June to the mid of September. Moreover, it rains in the winter as well when the monsoon is retreating. You must be wondering what is this retreating of the monsoon. In entire north India winter begins from the end of the month of September. In the next few months it becomes an area of high air pressure. Whereas the watery region still stays warm. Therefore the winds start moving from the regions with high air pressure (North India) to the regions with low air pressure (Bay of Bengal). That is why whirlwinds start form in the Bay of Bengal, due to which it rains in the coastal regions of Odisha, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu.

The Seasons of India

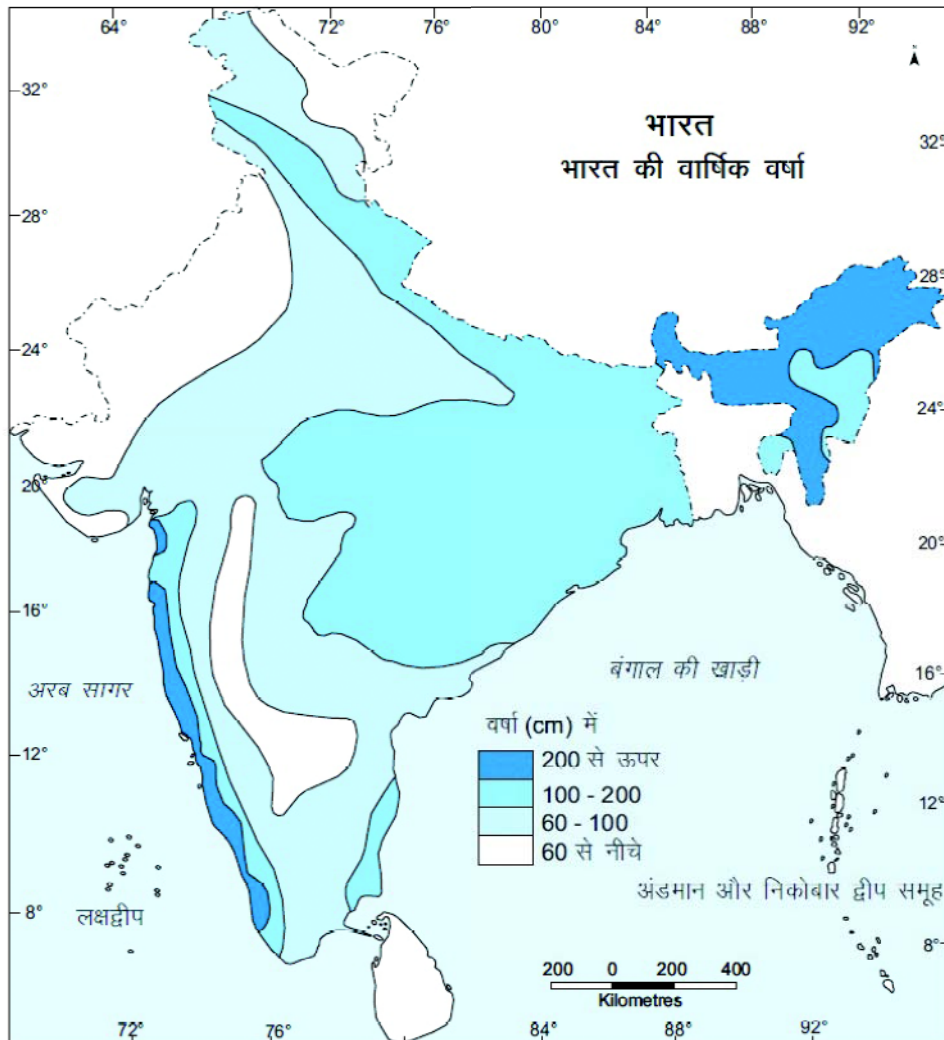
We are completely connected with seasons because India is an agricultural country. It affects our social-economic life. Our farming activities are based on these seasons. Have you ever wondered why we sow Kharif crops when the monsoon starts? Why do we start thinking about harvesting of Rabi crops in the beginning of summer? Even our festivals are also associated with these seasons. That is why it is essential to know about these seasons. India has mainly four kinds of seasons -

- (a) Winter (December - February)
- (b) Summer (March - May)
- (c) The moving southwest monsoon season (June - September)
- (d) Retreating monsoon season (October - November)

(a) Winter (December - February) : In India winter begins from December till February. The temperature in the south is relatively more, while on the north side it is less. In winter, the average temperature of North India is 12 to 15 degree centigrade while in the south it is 25 centigrade. December and January are the coldest months. At this time there is frost in most of the north and north west India. There is snowfall as well in the sloped region of the Himalayas. There is rainfall in many parts of north India due to the winds coming from the west side. Although it does not rain in the rest of India, because the winds are blowing from the plains to the watery region.

(b) Summer (March - May) : this is the time full of heat. The temperature gradually increases. The northern plains, western and peninsular region of India are specifically hot. The northwestern India is affected by dusty winds. Scorching hot and dry winds blow in the northern plains, which is called 'loo'. At this time almost the entire northern plains and peninsular plateau are an area of low air pressure, while the Indian Ocean is becoming an area of high air pressure. This difference in air pressure is the reason behind the beginning of monsoon. During this time, sometimes fast dusty winds blow and heavy rainfall also happens. Sometimes there is heavy rain with hail. These storms which come in the month of baishakh are called 'kalbaishakhi'. Before the monsoon light rain falls in Kerala and Karnataka at the end of summer. This is helpful for mango cropping, that is why it is also called 'amravrishti' (mango shower).

(c) **The moving southwest monsoon season (June - September)** : after the heat of summer starts the pleasant season, which is much awaited by everyone especially the farmers. This season comes in between the months of June to September. As you have read before, this is the time of low air pressure in north India while there is high air pressure in the Indian Ocean. Therefore, at this time moist winds begin to blow from water to land. During the first week of June these winds enter the coastal region of Kerala with lightning and roar resulting in the beginning of rainfall. Gradually monsoon moves towards north India. There are two branches of southwest monsoon - (1) the Arabian Sea branch coming from the Arabian Sea, and (2) the Bay of Bengal branch coming from the Bay of Bengal.



9.6 : Rainfall in India

In this season, the main point about rainfall is that it gradually decreases towards the north. For example, in Kolkatta the rainfall is 120 cm but in Delhi it is only 56 cm. The monsoon rain is not consistent, and there are periods of dry spell in between when it does not rain for some days. Southwest monsoon is uncertain. Therefore, flood becomes a big problem during this time. Due to excessive rains and lack of optimum

water management many parts of India are affected by floods during this time. On the contrary, many parts get caught into the grip of drought.

- (d) **Retreating monsoon season (October - November)** : it is the shortest season, which stays for only two months (October and November). In September-October the temperature is less and the low air pressure region of north India also becomes weak. During this time the weather is hot and humid which is commonly called 'kvar humidity'. By the end of October nights are relatively cold and pleasant. Due to the low air pressure during these months in the Bay of Bengal cyclonic storms are formed which result in heavy rainfall in the coastal regions of Odisha, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu. This results in massive damage in these areas every year.



Intext Questions 9.3

1. **Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate words -**

(kalbaishakhi, low air pressure, kvar humidity)

- (a) The plain region of India is a place of in summer.
- (b) The storms coming in the month of baishakh in the West Bengal is called
- (c) comes during the retreating monsoon.

2. What is mango shower?

3. Write the names of the southwestern monsoon branches.

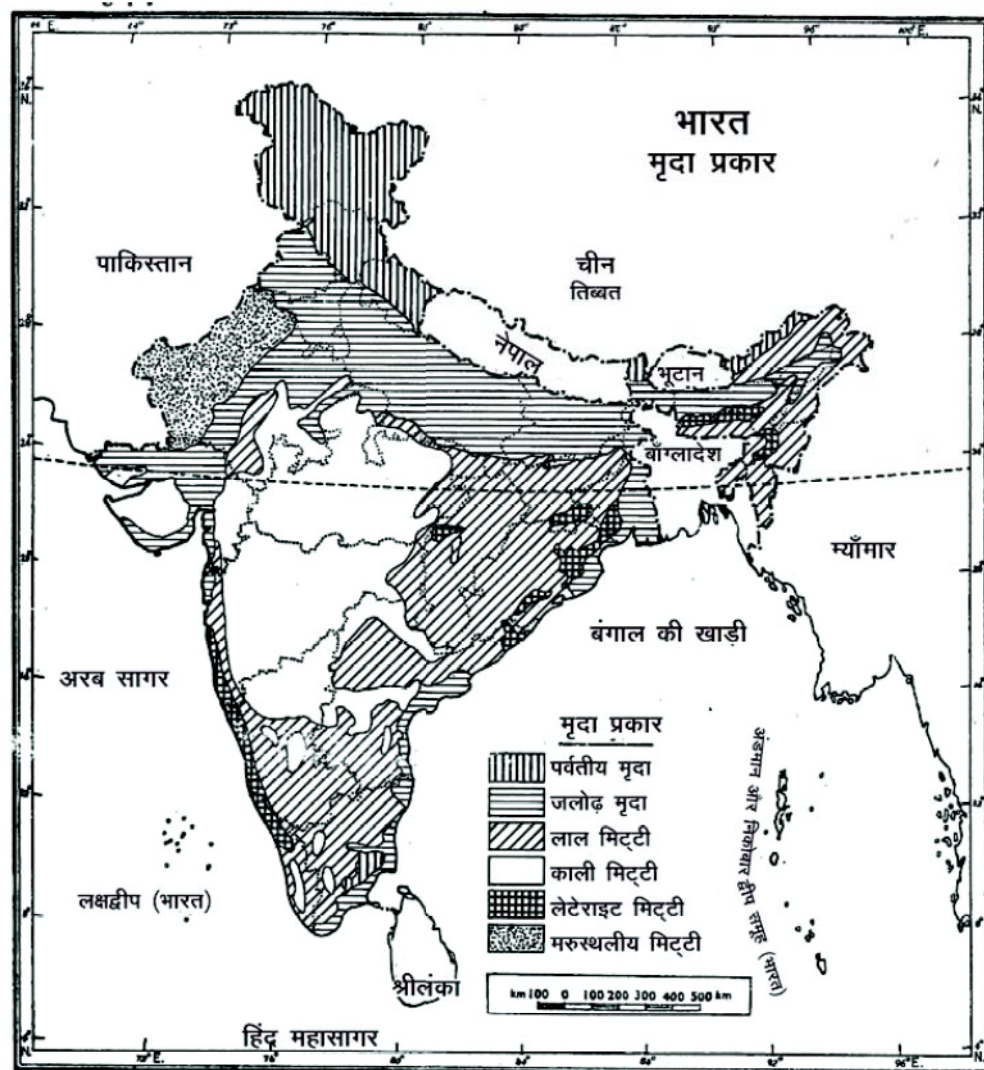
9.4 Soil and its Conservation

From birth and in all the stages of life we are associated with soil. In order to know the forms of soil in India let's first learn about what soil is. The upper layer of the earth which is made up of unorganised substances is called soil. It is formed by the remains of minerals, plants and living beings over a period of many years. Fertile soil is the basis of many human activities. But the soil is not the same in all the places. Differences in soil can be found on the basis of the type of land. India also has many forms of soil. Let us know about them-

Do you know?

Humus is the dark coloured top most layer of soil formed by the dead organic remains. It is very fertile.

- a. **Alluvial Soil** - it is one of the major soils of India. It is formed by the continuous deposits of sediments and waste brought by the rivers coming from the Himalayan mountain range and the peninsular plateau. Generally the colour of this soil ranges from pale to reddish brown. It is also known as domat or regur soil. This soil is very fertile. Alluvial is divided into two sub-parts on the basis of its productivity, composition etc. First is new alluvial (khadar). It is made up of loam, that is a mixture of sand and clay. It is found in the new enclosed areas made by the rivers such as flood plains and delta area. Second is old alluvial. It is found relatively far from the rivers. It is also known as bangar.



Based upon Survey of India outline map printed in 1979.

The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles, measured from the appropriate base line.

The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971, but has yet to be verified.

© Government of India copyright, 1979

9.7 : Types of soil in India

- b. **Black Soil** - Black soil is found in the lava region of the Deccan plateau. It is spread over the big area of Gujarat, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil

Nadu. It is formed by the lava emitted from the volcanoes. It is also called regur soil in many places. This soil can store moisture for a long period of time. Big cracks are formed due to the moisture from this soil in the summer. Another quality of this soil is that it can store oxygen upto huge depth therefore, it is fertile. This soil is suitable for the cultivation of cotton, sugarcane, wheat, onion and fruits.

- c. **Red soil** - Red soil is found in one of the large regions of the peninsular plateau. These include the plateau regions of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Goa, Southeast Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Odisha and Meghalaya. This soil is red in colour because of the excess of iron compound present in it. Due to the lack of organic matter in it, this soil is less fertile as compared to Alluvial and Black soil. But its productivity can be increased by the use of irrigation and fertilisers. It is suitable for the cultivation of rice, jowar, millet, corn, peanuts and fruits.
- d. **Laterite soil** - It is found in those regions of Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Assam, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Jharkhand and Meghalaya which are high and receive more rainfall. Excess rainfall damages the nutrients, which makes the soil less fertile. This soil is suitable for planting crops such as tea, rubber etc.
- e. **Desert soil** - It is a sandy soil and less fertile. It has less organic matter. This soil is found in western Rajasthan, Saurashtra, Kutch, western Haryana and southern Punjab. Normally this soil is less fertile, but with the availability and use of fertilisers it can be used for the cultivation of cotton, wheat etc.

Soil erosion and its conservation

Soil erosion is washing away of soil by natural factors such as water, wind, glacier etc. Soil erosion is a big problem today. Heavy rainfall, steep slope, flood and other factors, and human activities increase this problem. Deforestation, excess of pasturing, ways of land use and many times several approaches of cultivation also increase soil erosion. On one hand, this leads to the washing away of the fertile upper layer and on the other, there is a decrease in the cultivable land. Therefore, it is essential to conserve soil. Let us learn about some measures through which we can conserve soil -

1. Deforestation must be controlled. Trees hold the soil with their roots which keeps the soil from getting washed away. Plantation must be done in the places where forests are destroyed.
2. In the land of more erosion, due to wind, such as desert area erosion can be prevented by the row of trees.
3. It can be prevented by planting across the slope on the slopped mountain (contour plowing) and terrace farming.
4. Soil erosion can also be prevented by the controlling of excess pastures.
5. Soil erosion not only cuts the soil but also damages the fertility of soil. Therefore, its fertility can be

brought back by the use of fertilisers and sufficient manure. We can retain the fertility of soil by using organic farming without using any chemical elements.



Intext Questions 9.4

1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the appropriate words:

(Laterite soil, Desert soil, Black soil)

- (a) is found in the lava region of the Deccan plateau.
- (b) is suitable for planting crops.
- (c) is found in western Rajasthan.

2. What is the reason behind the red colour of the red soil?

3. Give any two measures of Forest conservation.

9.5 Water Resources and its Conservation

Water is essential for life. It is the most valuable gift of nature. It is one such resource which never finishes, but it is constantly becoming endangered. The demand for water is constantly increasing but its supply is becoming less and uneven. You know that a large part of the world is surrounded by water, but most of it cannot be used by humans. So, the supply of sufficient amount of drinking water is a major problem. There are two forms of acquiring water in India - surface water and ground water.

- (a) **Surface Water** - Its original source is rain. Some part of it either evaporates or becomes groundwater and flows into the oceans. The remaining large part is found in river stream, ponds and lakes. A huge portion of surface water is found in the rivers. There are two major groups or systems of rivers - (1) rivers of north India or drainage system and (2) rivers of south India or drainage system.



9.8: Major Rivers

1. **Rivers of North India or drainage system-** The rivers of this river system are perennial, as they are filled with water throughout the year. The origin of most of these rivers is from the Himalayas or the glaciers in that area, whereas some rivers originate from the Peninsular region. This river system has three parts-
 - (i) Indus river system- its main rivers are Indus, Jhelum, Chenab, Sutlej, Raavi and Beas.
 - (ii) Ganga river system- The main rivers of this river system are Ganga, Ram Ganga, Gomti, Ghaghara, Gandak, Son, Yamuna and Damodar. They originate meet with the Bay of Bengal.
 - (iii) Brahmaputra river system- Its main rivers are Brahmaputra, Dibang, Lohit and Teesta. They also originate meet with the Bay of Bengal.

2. **Drainage system of South India-** The rivers of this region are very old. That is why they are very deep. Its main source of water is rain. So, in the summer the water is relatively low. The main rivers of this river system are Narmada, Tapi, Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri, Mahanadi, Penner, Palar and Bejai. All the big rivers, except Narmada and Tapi, of this river system flow into the east and fall into the Bay of Bengal, whereas Narmada and Tapi fall into the Arabian Sea.

b. **Ground water-** Rainwater seeps into the ground and becomes groundwater. It is called ground water or underground water. The groundwater is not equally distributed everywhere. Its distribution is affected by the amount of rainfall, the nature of rain, the quality of land and the slope of land.

The Need of Water Conservation

Water is one of the most valuable resources of nature. Although a large part of the earth is covered with water, the source of drinking water is limited. Moreover with respect to India the supply of water is not only unequal and irregular but its distribution is also uneven.

Therefore the conservation and optimum use of the available water resources is necessary.

The tradition of water conservation has been in India since the ancient times. That is why the building of baoli-ponds is considered as a virtuous act. These Baolis are found in large numbers even today in Rajasthan, Gujarat and many other places. We can begin our efforts for water conservation from our home itself, because it is these small efforts that lead to a big campaign. Let us learn about the measures that can be beneficial for water conservation-

1. Dams and reservoirs should be built in order to prevent the unnecessary flow of river water into the seas.
2. River water should be protected from the city waste at all costs.
3. Every possible effort should be seriously made for the prevention of floods.
4. Water should be used wisely.
5. Public awareness should be directed towards water conservation.
6. People should cooperate in activities related to efficient management of water and help in conserving water.
7. Drinking water should not be used for gardening, washing vehicles, cleaning of house and toilet.
8. Reservoirs should be protected from pollution.
9. Broken pipelines should be quickly repaired.
10. Every drop of water is precious. This notion should reach the population.
11. Cultivation of the crops that need more water should be stopped in the rain-fed areas.
12. There should be an emphasis on plantation.



1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate words:

(the Bay of Bengal, Ganga, Indus)

- (a) Raavi, Sutlej are the main rivers of river system.
- (b) Son is the main river of river system.
- (c) Narmada River falls in

2. Match the following:

Tributary	River system
(a) Damodar	(a) Indus
(b) Lohit	(b) Ganga
(c) Chenab	(c) Brahmaputra

3. Put a tick (✓) mark on the correct answer and cross (✗) mark on the incorrect answer:

- (a) The drainage system of the rivers in South India is relatively old. ()
- (b) Tapi River falls into the Bay of Bengal. ()
- (c) Indus River Falls into the Arabian Sea. ()
- (d) Brahmaputra River does not have any tributary. ()
- (e) Godavari falls into the Arabian Sea. ()

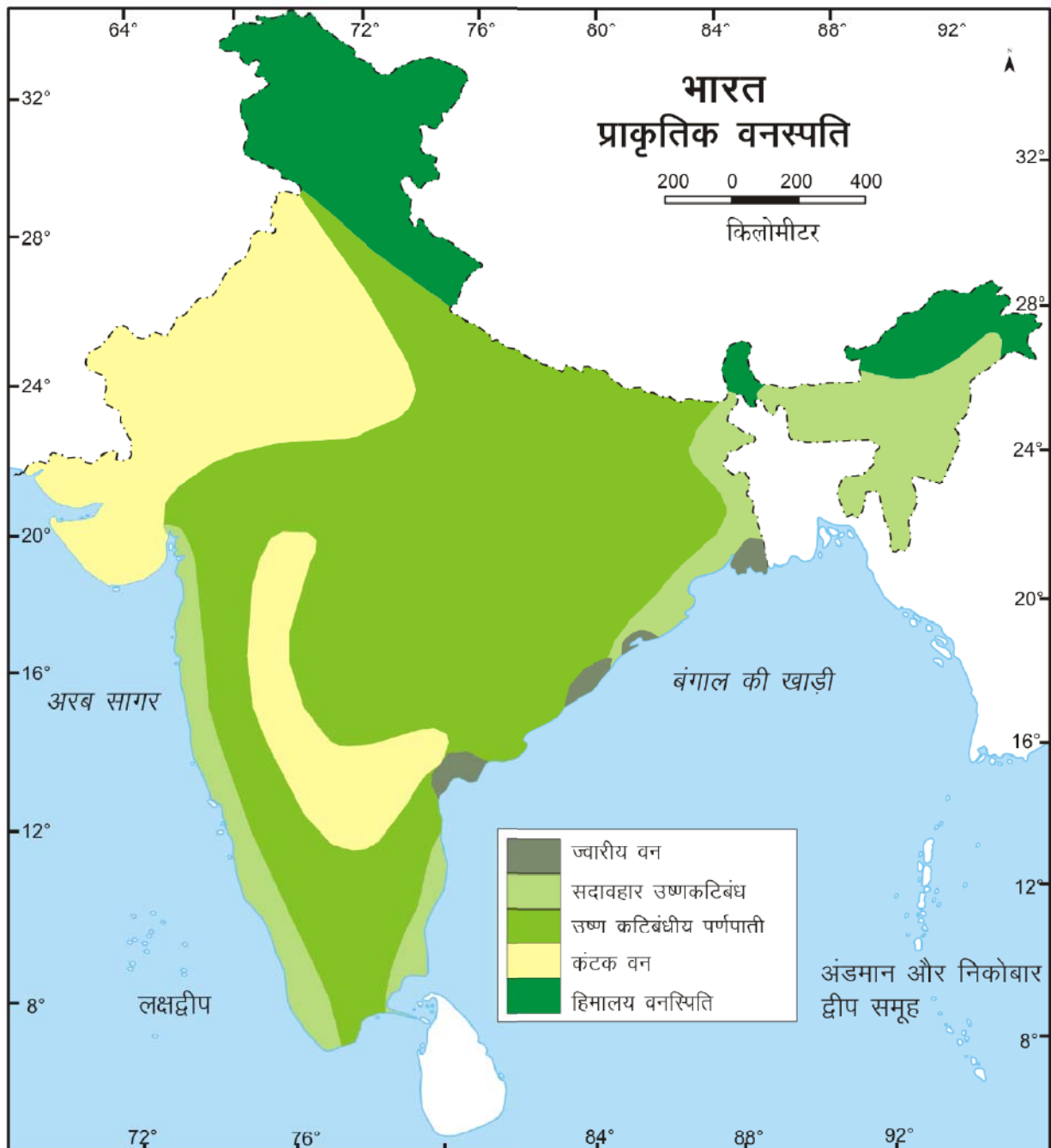
9.6 The Forests of India

There are many types of forests in India. We find different kinds of flora here. The reason is the variety of climate in India, and, therefore, the growth of different types plants in different climates. That is why on one hand we find evergreen forests and on the other thorny bushes. India has mainly five kinds of forests:

- 1. **Tropical evergreen forest-** The plants in this area are always full of greenery. Trees are very long, dense and evergreen. These forests are found in Kerala, parts of Karnataka, Meghalaya plateau, Lakshadweep and in the group of Andaman and Nicobar Islands. Its main trees are mahogany, Cinchona, bamboo, Palm, Champa, Ebony etc.
- 2. **Wet Tropical deciduous forests** - they are called deciduous forests because they lose their leaves in the dry season once in a year. They are spread in the largest part of India. They extend in the

Northern region of the Peninsula Plateau, Salyadri ranges, Southern part of Shivalik and lowland area. Its main trees are Teak, Sal, Rosewood, Chandan, Cane and bamboo.

- Dry tropical deciduous forests** - These forests are spread in Gujarat, Rajasthan, northern and western Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu and some regions of Uttar Pradesh. They have less dense trees, thorny bushes and grass fields. Babul, cactus, Teak, wild date palm, thorny bushes are its main plants.



9.9: India : Natural Forests

4. **Tidal Forests** - these are found mainly in the delta region of Ganga, Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna etc. rivers. Mangrove is the main plant of this forest.
5. **The Himalayan forests** - The forests are found in the mountainous region of the Himalayas. The height of the trees decreases with the increase in the height of the mountains. Its main trees are Cedar, Chestnut, oak, pine, alpine grass, birch and silver fir.

Do you know?

The delta created by the Ganga and Brahmaputra river is the largest delta of the world. Mangrove and Sundri trees are found here. It is very dense. It is called Sunderbans. It is a home to India's national animal, the royal Bengal tiger.

Various uses of forests

Forest is a very useful resource for human life. It helps us in many forms -

1. Forest purifies the environment. It gives us oxygen and absorbs the harmful carbon dioxide.
2. We get many types of medicinal plants such as, harad, Amla, cinchona etc from forests: which are used in medicines.
3. Raw material for industries is also obtained from forests; for examples, raw material for paper industry is obtained from forests.
4. It prevents soil erosion.
5. It is a natural habitat for the precious fauna of India. Lion, tiger, deer, peacock, sambar, wild buffalo, rhinoceros, cheetal and many other creatures are naturally found here. Many national parks and sanctuaries have been created in these forests to protect these animals.
6. These forests are an area of tourist attraction; through which the tourism industry progresses.
7. They provide us food for animals, fuel for cooking and wood for housing and other uses.

Conservation of forests

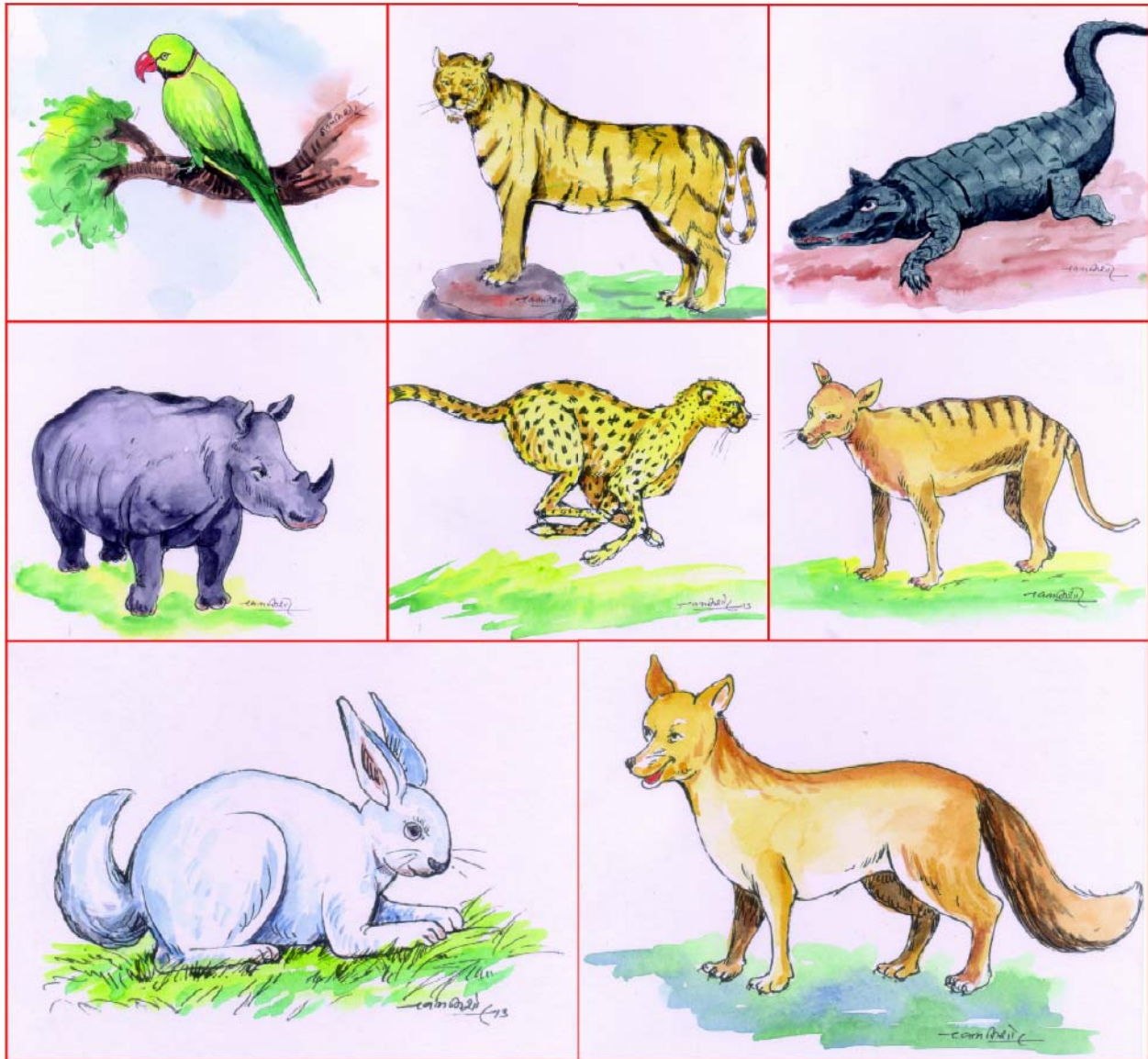
We are blindly cutting the forests for our use. They are being cut for industrial raw materials, excess pasturing, wood to use in building construction etc. Forest grow naturally, but they are being cut at a much faster rate. So, the vast forest area is getting reduced. Its effects can be seen on the environment that is getting imbalanced. If this process of destruction of forests continues then maybe some years later, neither will we get its beneficial products nor clean air. Therefore conservation of forest is very essential. The government is making every effort in this direction. Many laws have been made for forest conservation. The destruction of forest can be prevented by some efforts -

1. Many times people are dependent on forests for firewood. We can reduce deforestation by decreasing this dependence. So use of petroleum gas (LPG) needs to be emphasised.
2. Deforestation for commercial use must be controlled. Plantation and its protection should be done in the regions of deforestation.
3. Excessive grazing by cattle also results in the degradation of forests. So the use of other sources of fodder such as, corn, berseem should be increased.
4. There is much damage to forests from fire, especially in the summer season. Therefore efforts should be made to quickly control the fire.
5. Illegal cutting of trees must be stopped.
6. Excessive human activities in the forest also needs to be controlled.
7. Society should be made aware. The tradition of forest conservation has been in India since the ancient times. Many trees are of religious and social importance. There is also a practice of worshipping trees in various festivals. On such occasions plantation should be encouraged. We should also individually make efforts for conservation of forests.

Biodiversity of India and its Conservation

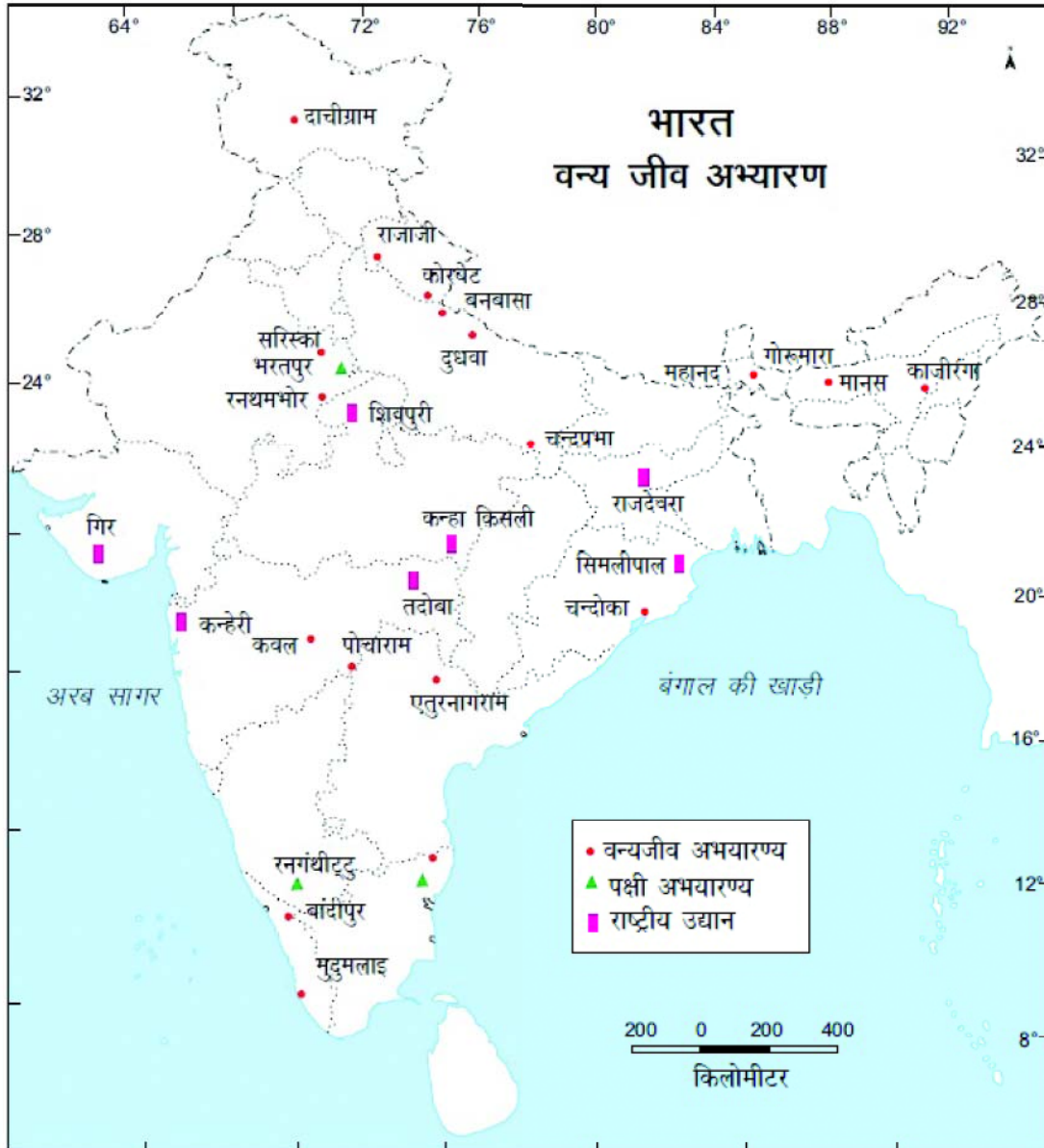
The fauna and species of flora found in a particular area, and their relationship with each other is called biodiversity. India is rich in biodiversity. We know that India is a land of many types of climate, spread in a vast area. That is why 6% of fauna species and approximately 12% of flora species of the world are found in India. Approximately 45,000 types of plants are found here.





9.10 : Major fauna found in India

This biodiversity makes the ecosystem of India rich. Along with providing us with the basic necessities such as food, water, clean air, habitat it also gives us many growth opportunities. Our social, cultural, religious aspects of life are also affected by it. But due to the persistent increase in human activities the biodiversity is getting deteriorated. Today there are many such species of flora and fauna; which are either extinct or getting endangered. Even the tweeting sparrows found in our homes are less seen now. Its biggest example is our national animal 'tiger', of which only a few thousand are left in number. So, the conservation of biodiversity has become essential. For this many national parks and sanctuaries have been opened.



9.11 Major national parks and sanctuaries

Our little efforts for conserving the biodiversity can bring a big change. By protecting the forests we can give the fauna its habitat. Conservation of biodiversity will also reduce soil erosion. It will also increase the level of groundwater. We can also clean and collect water in the small river-streams in our area. This will also control excessive pasturing. Plantation should be motivated collectively in Teej-festivals and local fairs. All these efforts will together conserve the biodiversity and make it prosper.



Intext Questions

9.6

1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate words:

(Wet/Humid tropical deciduous forest, carbon dioxide, five, fauna, petroleum gas)

- (a) There are types of forests in India.
- (b) Trees lose their leaves in
- (c) Forests absorb the harmful
- (d) Forest is natural habitat of
- (e) should be used instead of firewood.

2. Match the following:

- | (a) | (b) |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------|
| (a) Tropical evergreen deciduous forest | (a) Mangrove |
| (b) Tidal Forest | (b) Babul |
| (c) Wet/Humid tropical deciduous forest | (c) Mahogany |
| (d) Himalayan Forest | (d) Cane |
| (e) Dry tropical deciduous forest | (e) Cedar |



What you have learnt

- India is the seventh largest country of the world. Its mainland lies between 8°4' to 37°6' north latitude and 68°7' to 97°25' east longitude.
- The land-forms of India have been divided into four regions- the Great Northern Mountain Ranges, the Great Northern Plains, the Great Peninsular Plateau, the Coastal Plains and group of Islands
- The Great Northern Mountain Ranges have three parts- the Himalaya, the Trans-Himalaya and the Purvanchal Himalaya.
- The climate of India is monsoon, but different types of season are found here.
- India has mainly four seasons - winter, summer, the moving southwest monsoon season and retreating monsoon season.
- The upper layer of the earth which is made up of unorganised substances is called soil.
- The main forms of soil in India are- alluvial soil, black soil, red soil, laterite soil, desert soil.
- Soil erosion is a big problem, which occurs due to both natural and human activities.
- It can be prevented by plantation, parallel farming, controlled grazing.
- There are two main groups of rivers in India- North Indian Rivers and south Indian Rivers.

- Water conservation is extremely important. The tradition of water conservation has been in India since ancient times.
- In India forests have been divided into five types.
- Forest is a very useful resource for human life.
- Human activities are the main reason of forest destruction, but with persistent efforts they can be conserved.
- India is rich in biodiversity. 6% of fauna species and approximately 12% of flora species of the world are found in India.

Let us do it

Ask the people you know about the cutting of trees or harm done to forests around your area. Make a list of conservation measures which you can use for conserving forests.



Terminal Questions

1. Choose the correct option -

- the length of India from north to south is-

(a) 2933 km	(b) 3214 km
(c) 4528 km	(d) 6415 km
- the great northern mountain range has been divided into-

(a) five regions	(b) Six regions
(c) Three regions	(d) Two regions
- Andaman and Nicobar islands is a group of-

(a) 204 islands	(b) 180 islands
(c) 308 islands	(d) 98 islands
- mango season occurs in-

(a) Punjab	(b) Bengal
(c) Maharashtra	(d) Kerala
- alpine grass is found in-

(a) Himalayan forests	(b) Tidal Forests
(c) Dry tropical deciduous forests	(d) Tropical evergreen forests

2. Which is the southernmost point of India?

3. Why did civilisations develop in the northern plains?

4. Write the characteristics of the retreating monsoon.

5. Suggest any four measures for soil conservation.

6. Why do we need to conserve water? Suggest any four measures of water conservation.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

9.1

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) seven | (b) 8°4'-37°6' N |
| (c) 68°7'-97°25' E | (d) Pakistan, Afghanistan |
| (e) second, China | |

9.2

1. (a) plain (b) 2500 km
(c) 7 lakh square km (d) northern circar, Coromandel coast
(e) Malwa plateau
2. (1) c (2) a (3) b

9.3

1. (a) low air pressure (b) kalbaishakhi (c) kvar humidity
2. The rainfall before monsoon is helpful in the ripening of mangoes in Kerala and Karnataka. That is why it is called 'mango season'.
3. The two branches of southwestern monsoon are-
(i) the Arabian Sea branch (ii) The Bay of Bengal branch

9.4

1. (a) red soil (b) laterite soil (c) desert soil
2. The soil is red in colour because of the excess of iron compound present in it.
3. Measures of forest conservation-
 - (1) control over cutting of trees` (2) Plantation

9.5

1. (a) Indus (b) Ganga (c) the Bay of Bengal
2. (1) (b) (2) (c) (3) (a)
3. (a) tick mark (b) cross mark (c) tick mark
(d) cross mark (e) cross mark

9.6

1. (a) five
(b) humid tropical deciduous forest (c) carbon dioxide
(d) fauna (e) petroleum gas
2. (1) (c), (2) (a), (3) (d), (4) (e), (5) (b)

Terminal Questions

1. (1) (b), (2) (c), (3) (a), (4) (d), (5) (a)
2. Indira point 3. Fertile soil and easy availability of water
4. Characteristics-
 - (i) It is the shortest season (ii) the weather is hot and humid
 - (iii) There is heavy rainfall in the coastal regions of Andhra Pradesh, Odisha, Tamil Nadu
5. Measure of conservation-
 - (i) control over cutting of trees (ii) Row plantation in desert areas
 - (iii) control over excess pasturing (iv) contour plowing and terrace farming
6. Water conservation is very essential because there is a limited supply of drinking water. Some measures of water conservation are-
 - (i) Building of dams and reservoirs (ii) Protecting the rivers from city wastes
 - (iii) Preventing wastage of water (iv) Protecting the reservoirs from pollution

Mineral and Energy Resources of India

You have read about the forest resources, water resources and land resources of India. Apart from these mineral and energy are also important. Mineral resources, such as- iron, manganese, bauxite, mica etc are the major basis of Indian industry. Similarly, without coal, petroleum, atomic energy, power and solar energy etc. development is unimaginable. The countries which are more rich in these resources are more strong and self reliant. India is also rich in some of the minerals. Now let's learn about the mineral and energy resources available in India.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Define minerals and energy resources;
- Explain the importance of minerals and energy resources in the development of a country;
- Mention the mineral resources available in India;
- Mention the traditional and non-traditional sources of energy and
- Explain the importance of non-traditional sources of energy.

10.1 Mineral Resources of India

Mineral resources are those resources which are obtained by digging into the ground such as, iron, manganese, gold, silver, mica, limestone etc. The regions in which these resources are found are called mines, for example, iron mines, coal mines.

Our country is enriched with mineral resources. More than 100 kinds of minerals are found here. The economic and commercial importance of 30 types of these minerals is relatively high. The major minerals are coal, iron, manganese, bauxite and mica.

Mineral resources are of two types- metallic and non-metallic. Metallic minerals are those from which metals such as, iron, aluminium etc are obtained. Nonmetallic minerals do not contain any metal such as, mica, limestone etc.

Metallic minerals are also of two types- a. Metallic Ferrous Minerals, b. Metallic Non-Ferrous Minerals. Let us learn about these in detail.

A. Metallic Ferrous Minerals

Metallic Ferrous Minerals are those which contain a significant amount of iron element such as, iron, manganese, chromite etc. Three fourth amount of the total mineral resources found in India is of iron. Iron ore and manganese ore are the major iron minerals. India has abundant reserves of these minerals.

1. Iron ore

India is one of those countries in the world which has huge reserves of iron ore. India has 20 percent of the world's total iron ore reserves. The iron ore found in India contains approximately 60 percent of iron. That is why the quality of the Indian iron ores is considered very high.

Indian iron ore are of three type-

(a) Hematite, (b) magnetite, (c) limonite

(a) **Hematite:** Hematite ore consists of 68 percent of iron. This ore is red in colour which is why it is also known as red ore.

(b) **Magnetite:** magnetite ore is black in colour. Therefore, it is also known as black ore. With respect to the presence of iron ore its name comes second after hematite. It has 60 percent of iron in it.

(c) **limonite:** limonite ore stands third with respect to the presence of iron content in it. It is yellow in colour. It has 35 to 40 percent of iron content in it. As there is sufficient amount of hematite and magnetite reserve, the digging of limonite ore has been put on hold for the time being.

Iron ore reserves in India

Iron reserves are present in almost all the states of India. However, 96 percent of India's total reserves are found in Odisha, Jharkhand, Chattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka and Goa. 50 percent of the reserves in Odisha and Jharkhand have high quality of iron ore. Iron ore reserves in Odisha are found in the Sundargarh, Mayurbhanj and Keonjhar district. Whereas in Jharkhand these reserves are present in the Singhbhum district.



10.1: mining of iron ore

The states that come second are Jharkhand and Madhya Pradesh. 25 percent of of India's total iron ore reserves are found in these states. All of the iron ore obtained from Goa is exported to Japan. Apart from these places, iron ore reserves are also found scattered in Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra and Rajasthan.

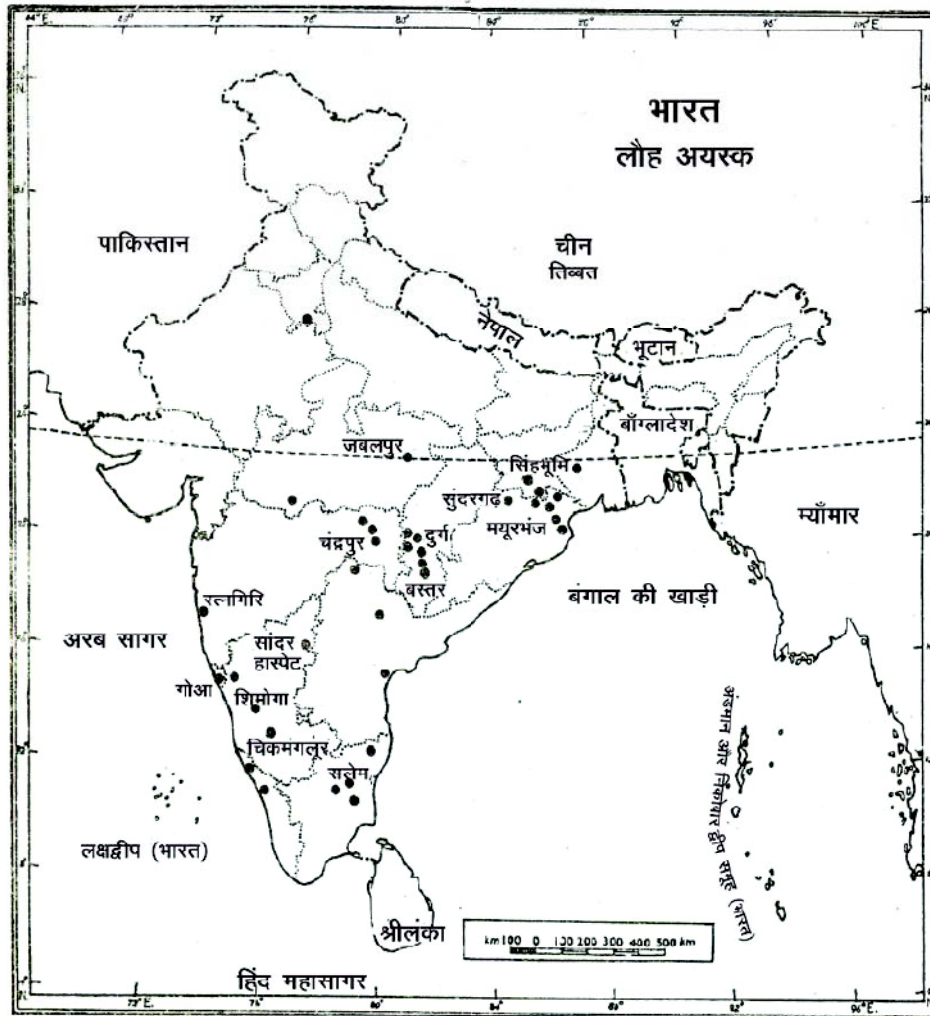


Image 10.2 : Iron ore reserves

2. Manganese ore

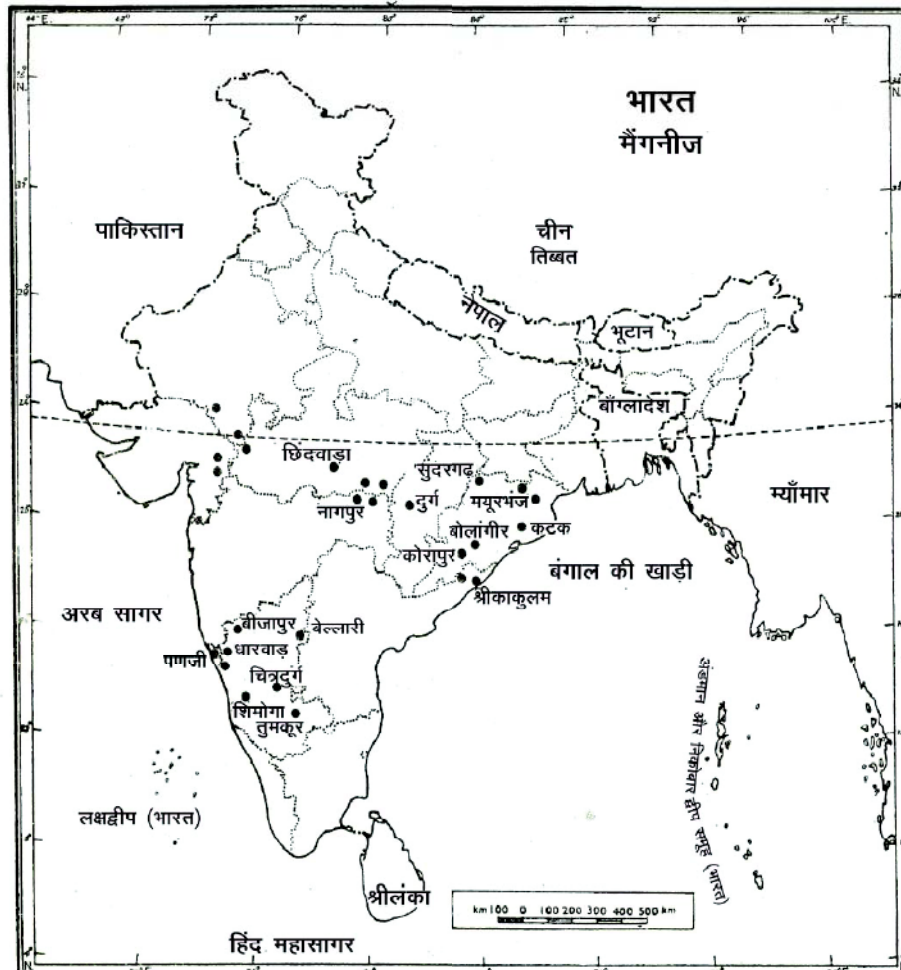
A significant amount of manganese is used in the making of iron and steel. Manganese is also used in the making of dry battery, photography, leather and match industry.

India stands third in the world after Russia and South Africa with respect to production of manganese. One fourth of total manganese production is exported from India to the other countries.

Manganese reserves of India

Most of the manganese reserves of India are found in Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.

78 percent of manganese reserves are present on the belt extending from Nagpur and Bhandara district of Maharashtra to Balaghat and Chhindabada district of Madhya Pradesh. Only 22 percent reserves are situated in Odisha, Karnataka, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Goa and Andhra Pradesh. India's maximum production of manganese is in Odisha.



10.3 : manganese reserve

B. Metallic non ferrous minerals

Nonferrous minerals are those which do not contain any amount of iron, such as- gold, silver, copper, tin, glass etc. These metals are of utmost importance and are very useful in everyday life. But India is very weak in terms of these metals. We do not have enough reserves of these metals. But India has sufficient reserves of bauxite. Let us learn about them.

1. Bauxite

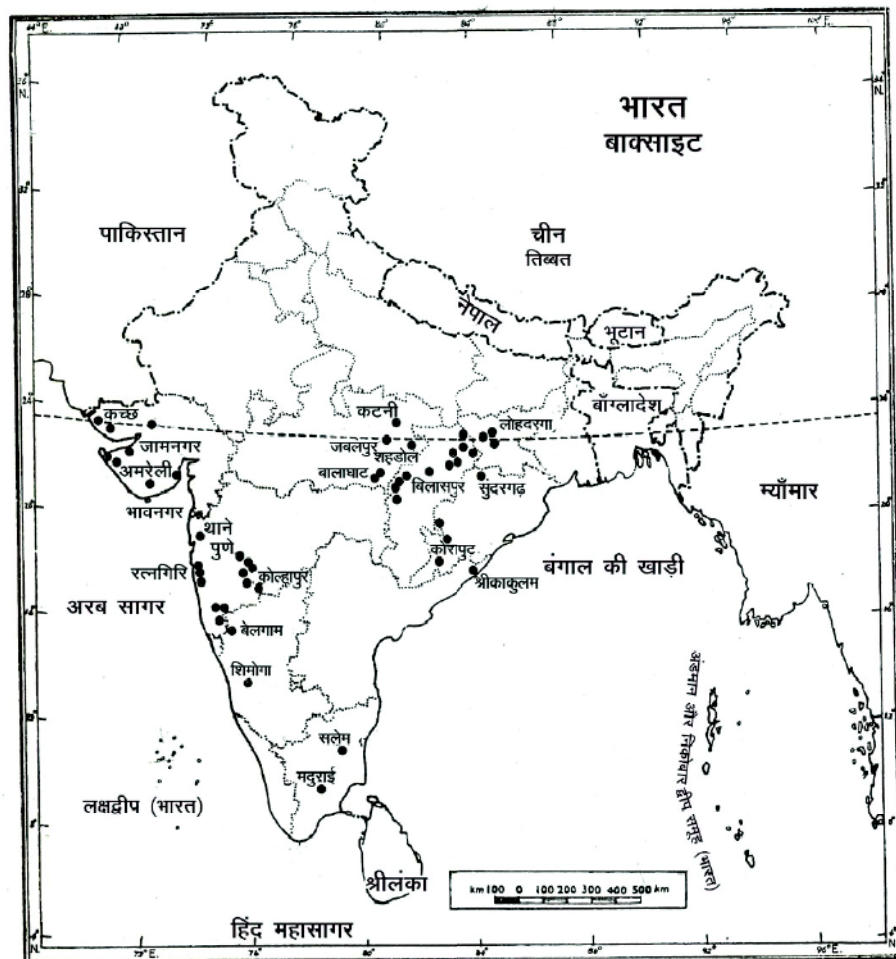
Bauxite is nonferrous mineral from which the metal named aluminium is extracted. There are enough reserves of it in India. Aluminium is used in the manufacturing of aeroplane, electric

appliances, electrical household goods and home décor. Bauxite is also used in the making of some chemical goods and white cement.

Bauxite reserves in India

India has sufficient reserves of bauxite in Maharashtra, Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Gujarat, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Goa and Uttar Pradesh. Its reserves are in Palamu, Ranchi and Lohardaga districts of Jharkhand and in Bhavnagar, Junagadh and Amreli districts of Gujarat. Amarkantak plateau and Maikal mountain range of Madhya Pradesh and Chattisgarh have the significant reserves of bauxite.

Bauxite reserves are found in Kolhapur, Raigarh, Thane, Satara and Ratnagiri districts of Maharashtra. Whereas its reserves are also found in Salem, Nilgiri, Madurai districts of Tamil Nadu and Banda district of Uttar Pradesh.



10.4 : bauxite reserves

Our country is self-sufficient with respect to bauxite. Bauxite is exported from our country to Italy, England, Western Germany, Japan etc.



Intext Questions 10.1

Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct words-

(aluminium, red ore, aeroplane, metal, digging, nonferrous)

- (a) Mineral resources are those which are obtained by under the ground.
- (b) Metallic minerals are those from which is obtained.
- (c) Hematite ore is also known as
- (d) The minerals which do not have any amount of iron are called minerals.
- (e) The metal named is extracted from bauxite.
- (f) Aluminium is used in the manufacturing of

10.2 Nonmetallic Minerals

There are many nonmetallic minerals in India, but only some of these minerals such as, limestone, mica, dolomite, kyanite, gypsum and phosphate are of more importance and use. Here we will learn about mica and limestone.

(A) Mica

India tops the world in the production of mica. Mica has been used abundantly in electric appliances and electronic industry. But since the manufacturing of artificial mica, both the production and export of mica have been reduced.

Mica reserves in India

Mica reserves are mostly found in Bihar, Jharkhand, Andhra Pradesh and Rajasthan. The region of mica extends from Bihar and Gaya district in west of Jharkhand via Hazari Bagh, Munger to Bhagalpur in the east. The best quality of Ruby mica is produced here. Apart from these regions mica reserves are also situated in the Dhanbad, Palamu, Ranchi and Singhbhum districts. 80 percent share of India's total mica production is of Bihar and Jharkhand.

In Andhra Pradesh mica reserves are only in Nallur district. Whereas in Rajasthan mica reserves are in Jaipur, Udaipur, Bhilwada, Ajmer and Kishanganj districts. Apart from these Mica reserves are also scattered in Kerala, Tamil Nadu and Madhya Pradesh.

(B) Limestone

Limestone has an important place in the commercial industry. It is mostly used in the cement industry. 76 percent of the total limestone production is used in the cement industry. Apart from this, 16

percent of its consumption is in iron steel industry and 4 percent in chemical industry. The remaining 4 percent is consumed in paper, fertiliser, Sugar and Ferro-manganese industries.

Limestone reserves in India

Most of India's limestone reserves are in Madhya Pradesh. Almost 35 percent of production is obtained from this state. After Madhya Pradesh there are enough limestone reserves in Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra, Himachal Pradesh, Odisha, Bihar, Jharkhand, Uttarakhand and Uttar Pradesh. Limestone reserves are also scattered in Assam, Haryana, Jammu and Kashmir, Kerala and Meghalaya.



Intext Questions 10.2

- (a) Why is the production of Mica reduced?

- (b) Where is the best quality of Ruby mica produced?

- (c) Which industry uses the maximum amount of limestone?

- (d) Which state has the maximum reserves of limestone?

10.3 Energy resources in India

You have already read about energy in detail. India is rich in terms of energy resources. The sources from which we get energy for different actions are called energy resources. We consume energy in different forms to carry out our day to day activities. A happy and comfortable life is unimaginable without the energy resources. Imagine how life would be if there was no coal, petrol, LPG and electricity etc. Could our country advance without them? Could we reach so easily and quickly from one place to another? Will it be possible to run big factories, trains and aeroplanes? We can imagine how hard life could have been without these energy resources. The available energy resources can be divided into two parts- a. Traditional energy resources, b. non-traditional energy resources. Let us know about these two types of energy resources in detail.

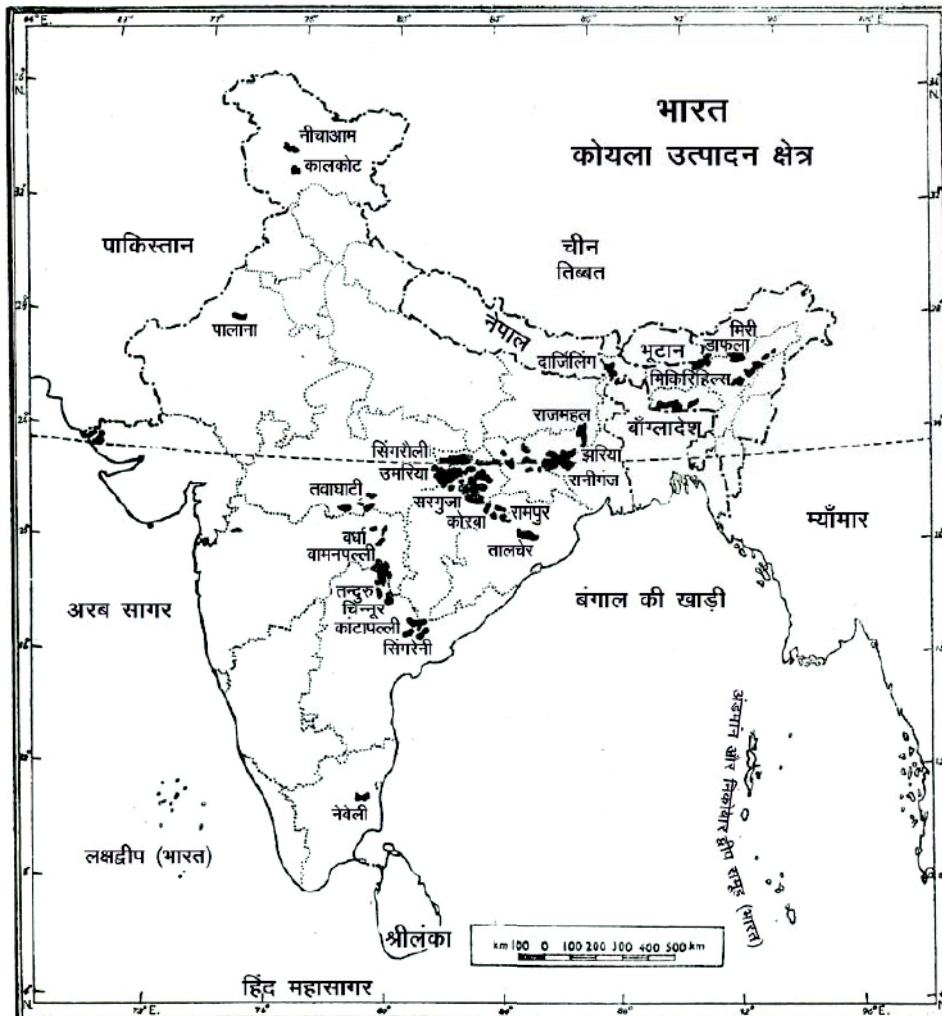
Traditional Energy Resources

Traditional energy resources consist of those sources of energy which are limited and get reduced gradually.

Due to their limited availability one day they will be finished if they are used constantly. Its major sources are coal, petroleum, gas and electricity etc.

1. Coal

Coal is an important source of traditional energy. Coal is used in almost all the factories and thermal Power Stations. Coal is also used as a fuel in some houses, dhabas and hotels. Coal was also used for running trains in the past. But now a days diesel and electricity are used to run the trains. It is used even today for making bricks in the brick burners.



Based upon Survey of India outline map printed in 1979
 The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baseline.
 The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as determined from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971, but has yet to be verified.
 © Government of India copyright, 1979

10.5: coal reserves

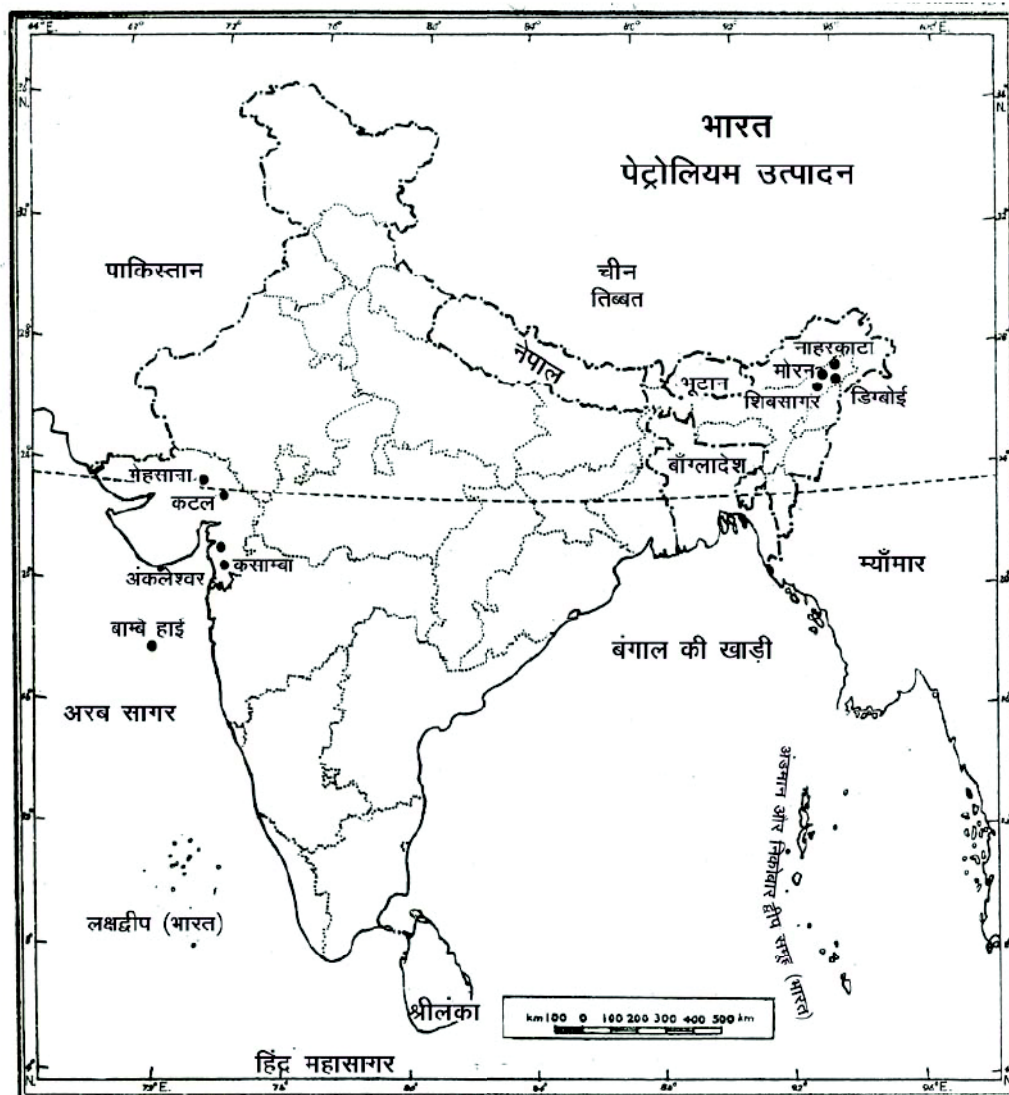
Coal Reserves in India

Most of the coal production in India is in Jharkhand. Its reserves are available in Dhanbad, Hazaribagh and Palamu districts of Jharkhand. Raniganj in West Bengal is the oldest coal region of India. It is the

second largest coal region of India. In Chhattisgarh coal reserves are located in Bilaspur and Sarguja districts. Coal reserves are situated in Sidhi, Shehdol, Chhindwada in Madhya Pradesh and Adilabad, Kareemnagar, Warangal, Khammam and west Godavari districts of Andhra Pradesh. Apart from these coal reserves are also scattered in Odisha and Maharashtra.

2. Petroleum

Petroleum is the most important form of energy resources. It is also called liquid gold because of its utility. The major products of petroleum are petrol, diesel and kerosene. Now a days trains and all the vehicles moving on the street use petrol or diesel. Diesel is also used in running big factories.



Based upon Survey of India outline map printed in 1979.

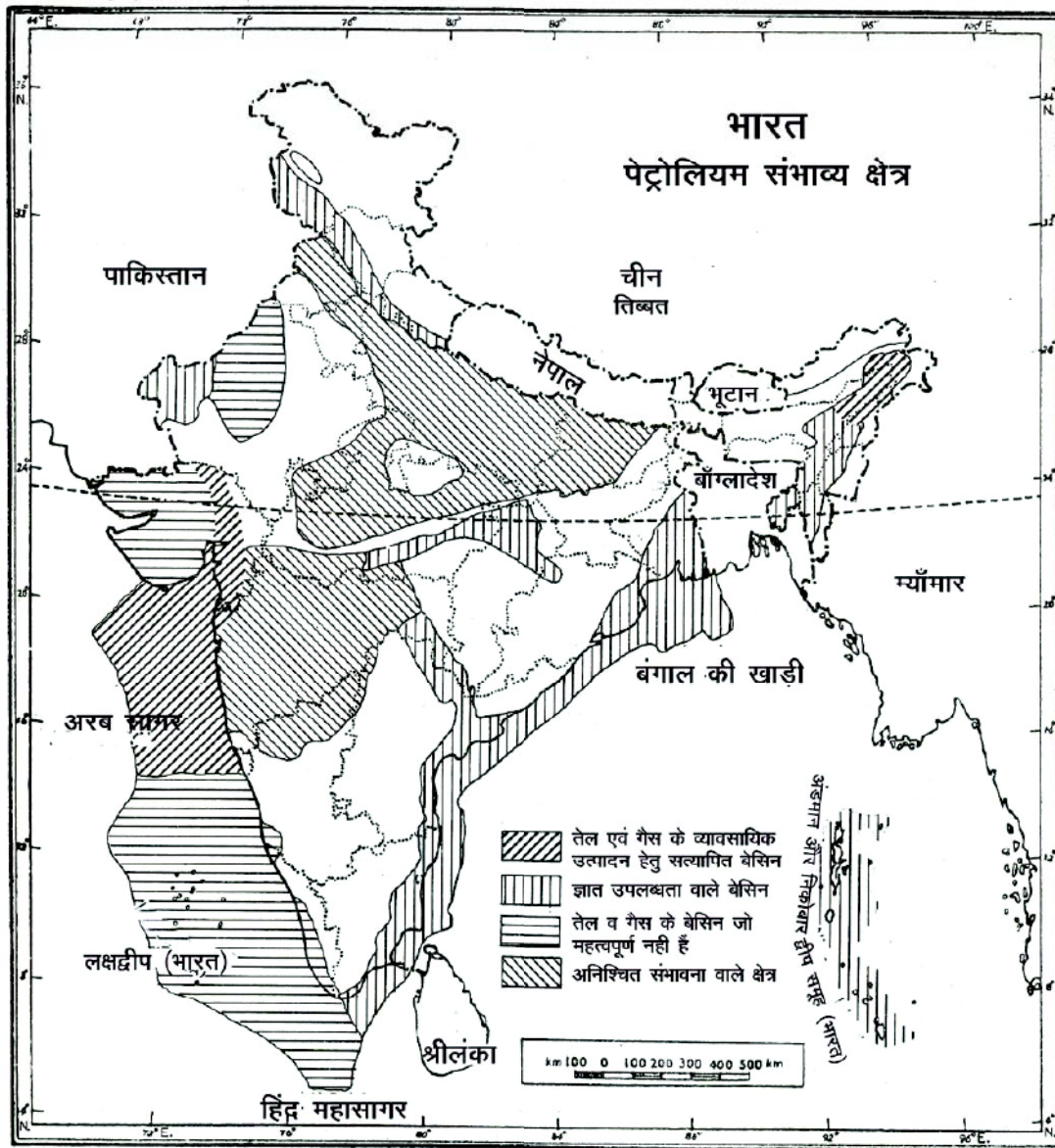
The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate base line.

The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act 1971, but has yet to be verified.

© Government of India copyright, 1979

10.6 petroleum reserves

The crude petroleum obtained from under the ground is not used directly in its crude form. There are many impurities in crude petroleum. These natural impurities are taken away by refining it in oil refinery factories.



Based upon Survey of India outline map printed in 1979.

The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles, measured from the appropriate base line.

The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971, but has yet to be verified.

© Government of India copyright, 1979

10.7 petroleum potential regions

India's public sector has 17 oil refinery factories which are located in Digboi, Bongaigaon, Noonmaati, Mumbai, Vishakhapatnam, Barauni, Koili, Mathura, Panipat, Cochin, Mangalore and Chennai. The one and only private sector of oil refinery factory driven by reliance industries is situated in Jamnagar, Gujarat.

3. Natural gas

The probability of finding natural gas in the regions of petroleum reserves is often high. This gas is of utmost importance as a form of commercial energy. Now a days tempo, cars and buses etc. are run by gas. It is being used as a fuel. The Natural Gas authority was established in 1984 in India because of its utility. The authority deals with natural gas reserves, transport, distribution and other system related work.

4. Nuclear power

Nuclear power is generated by the fragmentation of atoms present in certain types of minerals. The major minerals are uranium, thorium and radium. There are many reserves of uranium and thorium in India.

(i) Uranium

Uranium is obtained from some particular types of rocks. These rocks are found in Jharkhand, Rajasthan, Andhra Pradesh and some parts of Himalaya. There are enough uranium rocks present in the coastal regions of Kerala.

(ii) Thorium

Thorium is mostly obtained from monazite sand. Monazite sand reserves are mostly found in Paalghat and Kollam districts of Kerela. Its reserve is also found in the Visakhapatnam district of Andhra Pradesh.

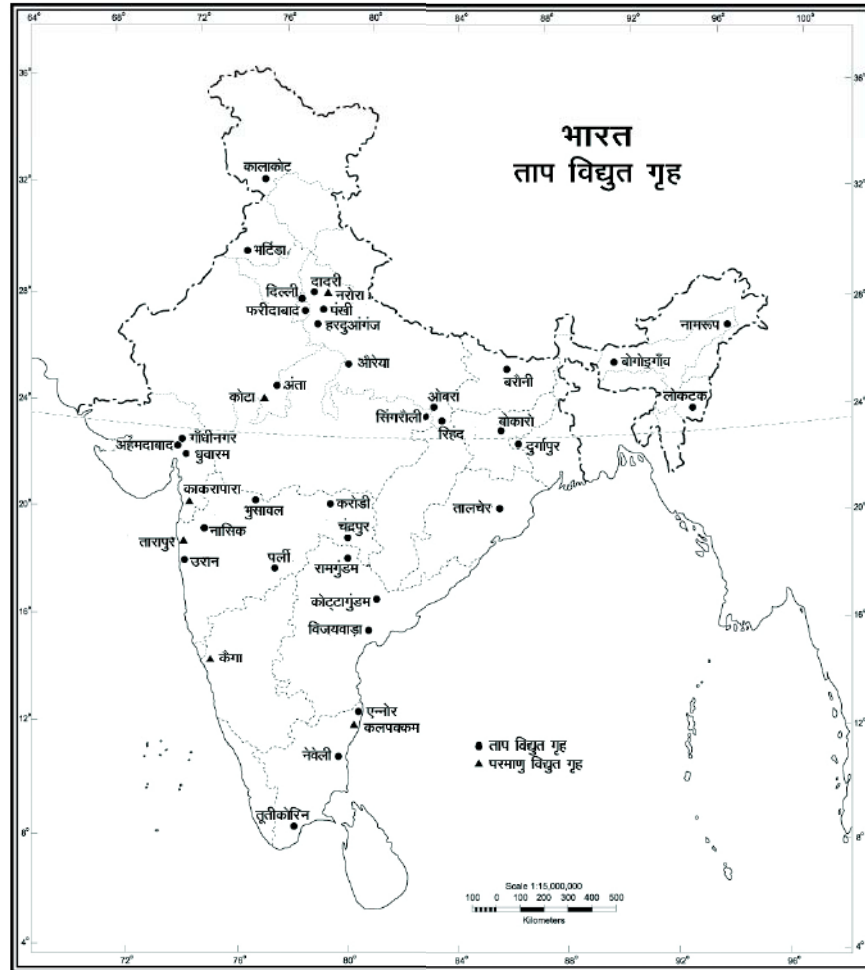
5. Electric energy

We are well aware of the importance of electric energy, that is, electricity. It has become an essential part of our life. The availability of electricity is not only in cities but also in remote villages. Efforts are being made for its provision in the regions with no access. Nowadays all of our household work is done with the help of electricity. The demand of electricity is increasing on a daily basis. Big factories are run by electricity. Most of the trains running on the tracks use electricity. With the blink of an eye we can reach the top floors of tall buildings with the help of electric lifts. Electricity is not only a means of comfort but also the basis of a country's development. Electric energy is produced in three ways. The electricity that is produced by using coal, petroleum or natural gas is called thermal electricity. In some places electricity is produced by the power of running water. This kind of electricity is known as hydro power or water electricity. Electricity can also be generated with the use of nuclear power. The electricity produced by it is called nuclear electricity. Nuclear electricity is a form of thermal electricity.

(i) Thermal electricity

Thermal electricity is generated by coal or natural gas. Thermal electricity has the biggest contribution in India's total electricity generation. Most of the thermal power plants are also

run by coal. The main reason is that our country has immense reserves of coal in many states. The production of thermal power is three times of hydro power. In order to reduce the cost of coal transportation most of the thermal power plants run by coal have been set up near coal mines.



Based upon Survey of India Outline Map printed in 1990
The territorial waters of India extended into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate base line.
The boundary of Meghalaya shown of this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971, but has yet to be verified
Responsibility for correctness of internal details shown on the map rests with the publisher.

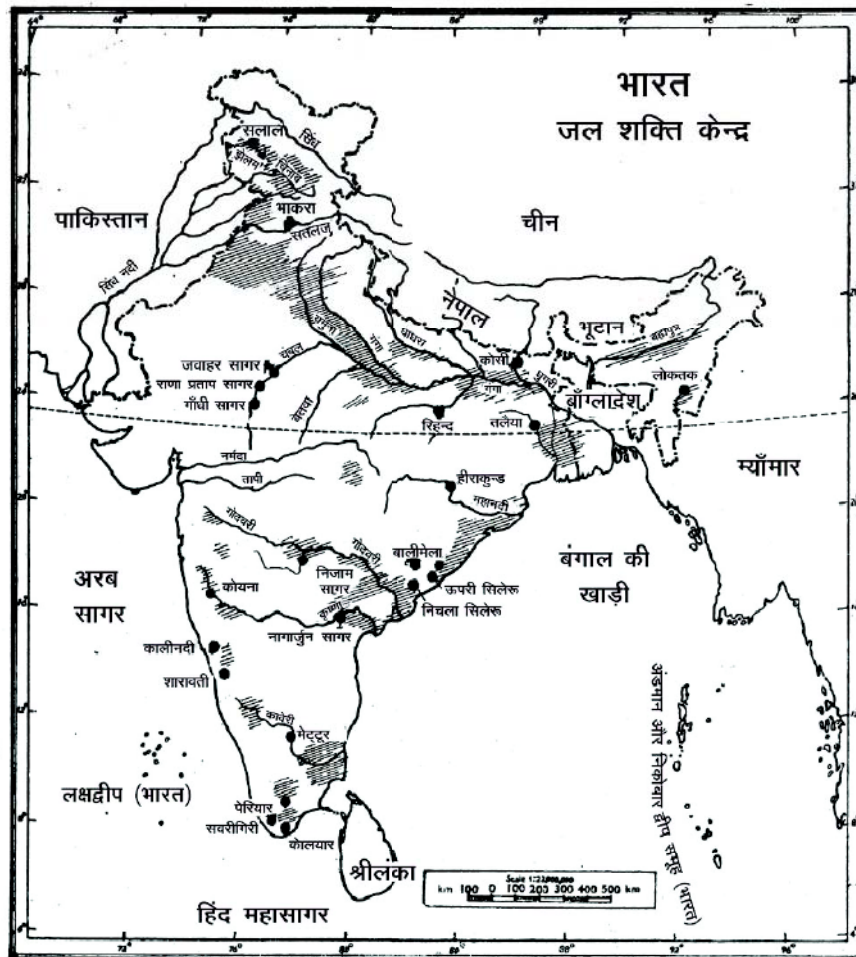
© Government of India copyright, 1996

10.8 : thermal Power Station

In India, West Bengal, Jharkhand, Bihar, Chattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Assam, Delhi, Haryana and Punjab are such states which have thermal power plants. Most of these states have an abundance of coal reserves. Only Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana and Bihar do not have coal reserves but coal is directly transported to these states by trains.

(ii) Hydroelectricity

The water sources or rivers required for the generation of hydroelectricity are those in which water is constantly flowing. The production of hydroelectricity is absolutely free of pollution. A huge initial cost is required in the installation of hydroelectric plants because of the need to build large reservoirs for the maintenance of constant water supply.



Based upon Survey of India Outline Map printed in 1987.
 The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate base line.
 Responsibility for correctness of internal details shown on the map rests with the publisher.
 © Government of India copyright, 1987.

10.9 : hydropower centre

In terms of hydro power generation the rivers originating from the mountains of the northern region of India are extremely suitable. The flow of water is maintained in these rivers because it comes from the ice capped mountains. This mountainous region is very uneven which is why these rivers flow in great speed. Karnataka, Kerala, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Jammu and Kashmir, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Tripura, Sikkim etc are such states in which hydro electricity is being generated.

(iii) Nuclear power

The installation of nuclear reactor is required for the production of nuclear electricity. This is very expensive and risky. Even the slightest mistake or negligence in a nuclear plant can lead to an incident of huge destruction. Thousands of people can die in such accidents.

The first nuclear electricity centre of India was situated in 1969 in Tarapur near Mumbai. After this another nuclear reactor was installed in Kota in Rajasthan, Kalpakkam in Tamil Nadu, Narora in Uttar Pradesh, Kaiga in Karnataka and Kakrapara in Gujarat.



Intext Questions 10.3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words-

- (a) The largest production of coal is in (Rajasthan/Jharkhand)
- (b) Petroleum is also called gold. (pure/liquid/big)
- (c) Thermal electricity is generated by diesel or natural gas. (Coal, sand, water)
- (d) Electricity produced by water sources is called (hydroelectricity/ thermal electricity)
- (e) The first nuclear electricity Centre of India was installed in Tarapur near (Delhi/ Mumbai/ Patna)

10.4 Non-Traditional Energy Resources

Coal, mineral oil and gas etc are such energy sources which are gradually getting reduced. They will be soon finished if their use keeps increasing in such a speed. In future even the supply of hydroelectric power will be insufficient for meeting the increasing demand of electricity. In such a situation the need to search for such resources arises whose reserves are inexhaustible. Sun, wind, tidal waves of oceans, organic waste and hot waterfalls are such inexhaustible resources which can be used for generating electricity. These sources of energy are called nontraditional sources of energy.

A. Solar Energy

Sun is the biggest and most important inexhaustible source of energy. It gives energy to the whole world. It is because of this energy that humans, forests, flora and fauna are alive. It is one such natural source of energy which is inexhaustible. The energy obtained from sun is called solar energy.

Solar energy is trapped in batteries with the use of solar panels. The energy trapped in these batteries is used to heat water, cook food, generate electricity for light and television, and for drying cereals. Solar energy can be developed in whole of the country. Solar energy is an extremely convenient medium especially in those regions which often receive intense sunlight during rainy season.

B. Wind energy

The energy obtained from wind is called wind energy. The use of wind energy is most convenient in those regions where fast and strong winds blow throughout the year. Wind energy is used in windmills. Windmills are used to generate electricity. In some places water pumps are operated with the use of wind energy for irrigation. Tamil Nadu, Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Kerala are such Indian states which are most suitable for the development of wind energy.

C. Bio Gas

Bio gas is produced with the use of animal dung. That is why there is an emphasis on the installation of bio gas plants in the villages. Bio gas is used to produce light and in the form of fuel in houses. The production of bio gas or electricity can also be done with the use of city and industrial waste in big cities. This process is in its initial stage. These plants are installed only in Delhi and few other big cities.

D. Biomass Energy

The energy produced with the waste coming from farm-barns and agricultural industries is called biomass energy. The process of generating electricity with the use of biomass energy is gradually becoming popular in India. Almost all sugar mills are using biomass energy to generate electricity.

E. Tidal Energy

There are high waves in the oceans when there is a tide, the energy of these waves is called tidal energy. Electricity can also be produced by the use of tidal energy. This process is also in its initial stage. Tidal energy plants are installed in gulf of Kutch and Khambhat in Gujarat and in the coastal regions of Kerala.

F. Geothermal Energy

The energy obtained from the sources of hot water coming from under the ground is called geothermal energy. Electricity can also be generated with the use of geothermal energy. Manikaran in Himachal Pradesh and puga valley in Ladakh are suitable regions of geothermal energy. Apart from these Uttarakhand, Jharkhand and Chattisgarh are the states in which such places are being searched.



Intext Questions 10.4

1. Match the following-

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| (a) Energy obtained from the sun | Tidal energy |
| (b) Energy obtained from wind | Geothermal energy |
| (c) Energy obtained from animal dung | Biomass energy |
| (d) Energy obtained from farm barns waste | Solar energy |
| (e) Energy obtained from high waves of the ocean | Bio gas energy |
| (f) Energy obtained from sources of hot water | Wind energy |



What you have learnt

- The resources which are obtained by digging into the ground are called mineral resources.
- Mineral resources are of two types- metallic and nonmetallic. Metallic minerals are those from which metals are obtained. Nonmetallic minerals do not contain any metal content.
- Metallic minerals are also of two types- 1. Metallic Ferrous Minerals, 2. Metallic Non-Ferrous Minerals.
- Ferrous Minerals are those which have iron content, such as- iron ore and manganese ore. Iron ore reserves are there in almost all the states of India.
- Nonferrous minerals do not have any iron content. Bauxite is the most important nonferrous mineral. The metal named aluminium is extracted from bauxite. Bauxite is also used in the making of white cement.
- Mica is a nonmetallic mineral. India stands on top of the world in the production of mica.
- Limestone is also a nonmetallic mineral. 76 percent of it is used in the manufacture of cement.
- Coal is an important source of traditional energy. Coal is also used as a fuel in houses, hotels, brick burners, factories and thermal power stations.
- Most of the coal production in India is in Jharkhand.
- Petroleum is also called liquid gold. Petrol, diesel and kerosene are obtained from petroleum. The crude petroleum obtained from under the ground is not used directly in its crude form. There are many impurities in crude petroleum. These natural impurities are taken away by refining it in oil refinery factories.
- The probability of finding natural gas in the regions of petroleum reserves is often high. Natural gas is used as a different kind of fuel.
- The power that is generated by the fragmentation of atoms present in certain types of minerals such as uranium, thorium and radium is called nuclear power.
- Electric energy is the basis of our comfort and the development of the country.
- The electricity that is generated by coal, diesel and natural gas is called thermal electricity.
- The electricity that is generated by the use of water sources is called hydroelectricity.
- When electricity is generated by the use of nuclear power, it is called nuclear electricity. The first nuclear electricity centre of India was situated in Tarapur near Mumbai.

- The energy obtained from the sun is called solar energy. It is trapped in batteries with the use of solar panels. The energy trapped in these batteries is used to heat water, cook food, generate electricity for light and television, and for drying cereals.
- The energy obtained from wind is called wind energy. Electricity is generated through the medium of windmills which are run by wind energy. In some places wind energy is used to run irrigation pumps.
- Bio gas is produced with the use of animal dung. This gas is used to produce light and in the form of fuel in houses.
- Biomass energy produced by the waste that comes out of farm-barns and agricultural industries. Biomass energy is used to generate electricity.
- Tidal energy is present in the high tidal waves in the ocean. Tidal energy is now being used to generate electricity.
- The energy obtained from the sources of hot water coming from under the ground is called geothermal energy. Electricity can also be generated with the use of geothermal energy.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks with the correct words-

- The region in which mineral resources are available is called (pride, mine, betel)
- Magnetite is also called ore. (black, red, green)
- is used in the production of thermal electricity. (water, lime, coal)
- There are many in crude petroleum. (Impurities, precautions, difficulties)
- Most of the trains are run on by electricity. (Roads, tracks, passengers)
- The Sun gives to the whole world. (Wind, fragrance, energy)
- Windmills are run by energy. (Water, wind, solar)

2. Answer the following questions-

- The minerals which have iron content are called?
- Which mineral is used in the manufacturing of white cement?
- Which mineral was used to run trains in the past?
- Which work is done in the oil refinery factories?
- Where is the probability of finding natural gas?
- Which rivers are useful for hydroelectricity?

3. Put a tick mark (✓) on the correct sentence and a cross (✗) on the wrong sentence-

- (a) Mineral resources are obtained by digging under the ground. ()
- (b) Hematite has the highest amount of iron content in it. ()
- (c) Bauxite is one such nonferrous mineral from which copper is extracted. ()
- (d) The maximum use of limestone is in the manufacturing of cement. ()
- (e) The maximum production of coal in India is in Delhi. ()
- (f) Solar energy is obtained from animal dung. ()

4. Match the following-

Mineral	Energy	Iron	Gas
Liquid		Panel	
Thermal		Petroleum	
Wind		Resource	
Lime		Gold	
Crude		Electricity	
Natural		Ore	
Solar		Stone	

5. What is the importance of electricity in our life? Write your answer in four/ five lines.

Let us do it

- If cow, buffalo, bull etc are reared at your place then try to collect information from your development section office and make efforts to install biogas plant. Cook food and generate light by the use of biogas.
- The information about solar energy and solar panel can also be collected from development section. Government aid can also be availed from there for the installation of solar panel. Take advantage of it and install solar panel at your place.
- Let us see the advantage of installing biogas and solar panel.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

- 10.1 (a) Digging (b) Metal
(c) Red ore (d) Nonferrous
(e) Aluminium (f) Aeroplane
- 10.2 (a) because of the manufacturing of artificial mica (b) In Bihar and Jharkhand
(c) In cement industry (d) In Madhya Pradesh
- 10.3 (a) Jharkhand (b) Liquid
(c) Coal (d) Hydroelectricity
(e) Mumbai
- 10.4 (a) Solar energy (b) Wind energy
(c) Biogas (d) Biomass energy
(e) Tidal energy (f) Geothermal energy

Terminal Questions

1. (a) mine (b) Black (c) Coal (d) Impurities
(e) Tracks (f) Energy (g) Wind
2. (a) Metallic Ferrous mineral
(b) Bauxite
(c) Coal
(d) The work of taking away impurities from petroleum
(e) Where petroleum reserves are situated
(f) In which the water flow is constant
3. (a) Tick mark (b) Tick mark
(c) Cross (d) Tick
(e) Cross (f) Cross
4. Mineral - resource iron - ore
liquid - gold thermal - electricity
wind - energy lime - stone
Crude- petroleum natural - gas
solar - panel

Agriculture in India

Most of the Indian population is dependent on agriculture. Especially in the villages the main basis of livelihood is farming. India has different types of climate, land and geographical conditions in different regions. Moreover it is not necessary that all the basic resources for farming would be equally available everywhere. There is a variation found in the methods of farming and types of crops in different regions according to land, climate, tools, facilities and geographical conditions. After Independence there was a constant effort to increase agricultural production. The results of these efforts were also good. But still the state of farming in our country is not satisfactory. In order to make it better we need to understand our needs, methods of farming and crop production techniques.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain about the current types of agriculture in India;
- Explain the main crops of India;
- Describe the elements affecting agricultural crops and
- Interpret the effects of these elements on the crops.

11.1 Types of Agriculture

The soil, climate and geographical conditions in India are not same at all the places. At some places there are plain fields while in others there are high mountains. Somewhere there are plateaus while somewhere else there are lowlands. Somewhere there is heavy rainfall, while in other places it is very less. Some places are too cold, while some are hot. Similarly soil is also not the same everywhere. Even the farming conditions,

our needs, demand, consumption and available resources are not the same everywhere. Keeping all these differences under consideration it is natural that there are differences in the ways of farming. Different places have different methods or types of farming. Some places have even more than one type of farming. Let us see these types of farming-

A. Single cropping

In single cropping only a single crop in its pure form is sown at a time, the second crop is sown only after the harvesting of the first crop. Mostly crops of wheat, potato, sugarcane, cotton, rice, etc. are grown in single farming. This type of farming is very good for preparing pure side. But a lot of loss is incurred due to pests, crop diseases and natural disasters.

B. Multiple cropping

Multiple cropping is also known as mixed cropping. In this cropping more than one crop seeds are intermingled and planted in rows or are planted by broadcasting sowing method. The ripening and harvesting time of these intermingled crops can be same or different. For example, wheat + gram or wheat + barley are such crops which ripe together. Whereas the ripening time of tur + millet is different. The advantage of mixed cropping is that if for any reason one of the crops is destroyed the chances of getting the other crop yield remain there. Moreover we can get multiple crop yields from the same farm at a time.

C. Intercropping

Intercropping is another form of multiple cropping. In this type of cropping also multiple crops are taken together. But the seeds of these crops are not sown by intermingling or broadcasting. In this type of cropping the sowing of seeds or transplantation is done in rows. After two or three rows of the main crop, one or two rows of the second crop are sown. After each row of the main crop single-single row of other crops can also be sown. Different crops can also be sown in rows at a distance around the four sides of the main crop and in between the main crop.

In intercropping or multiple cropping such crops are chosen which do not have a bad effect on the growth and yield of the each other. Such crops may be as follows-

Wheat + gram or barley	Cotton + sesame or fenugreek	Sorghum + guara or urad
Millet + urad	Rice + maize	Gram + mustard
Wheat + pea	Barley + pea or gram	Wheat + mustard
Maize + string beans	Sorghum + yellow lentils	Winter cane + mustard
Winter cane + garlic	Yellow lentils + peanut	Potato + lahi

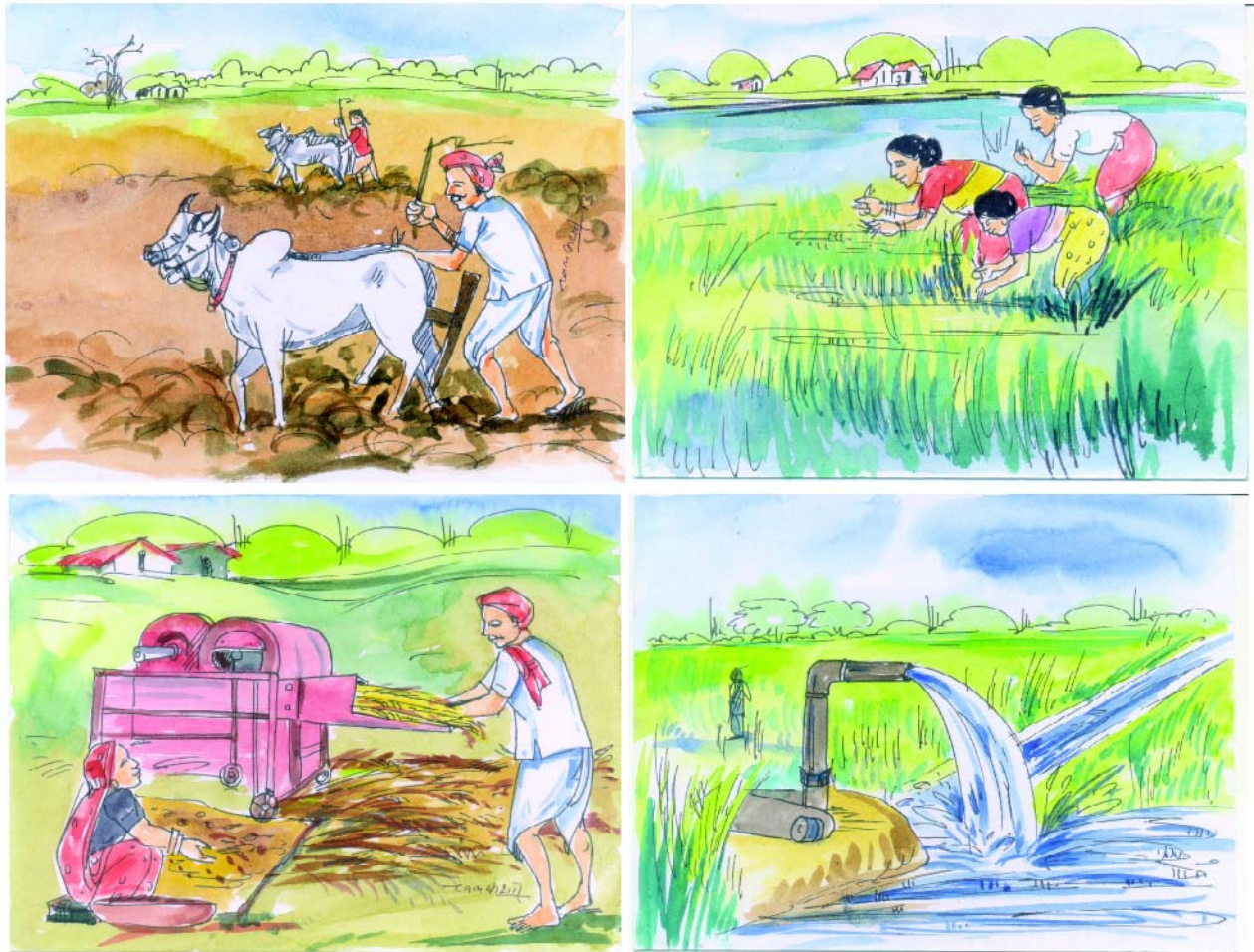


Image 11.1 Agricultural work

D. Subsistence farming

The farming which is done for subsistence is known as subsistence farming. In the regions of few and small farms such crops are sown which can give food and fulfil the needs of the people and their families. This type of farming is done by the farmer and his family members with the help of cheap and ordinary tools. The use of large, expensive and modern agricultural equipments is rare. This type of cropping is mostly done in the regions of Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Uttarakhand and all mountainous regions.

E. Terrace farming

Terrace farming is done on the slope of mountains. There are very less plain lands on mountains. People select and cut the land in the form of small terraced farms along the slope of mountains. This helps in retention of water and prevention of soil erosion in these farms. This type of farming is done mostly in Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand and in the north eastern region.



Image 11.2 : Terrace Farming

F. Intensive farming or multi-crop farming

When maximum production is obtained from a single farm by sowing crops one after the other throughout the year, it is called intensive farming or multi-crop farming. In this type of farming the crop rotation (group) is planned in such a way that the farm is not left empty even for a short period of time, throughout the year. In some places the next crop is sown even before the harvesting of the first crop, such as- potato + onion + ladyfinger + maize. Potatoes are sown in the month of October. After putting soil on the potato, onion is sown in the alleys in between the potatoes. After digging out potatoes ladyfinger is sown in the empty space. By the time ladyfinger finishes the maize crop grows. In this manner four crops can be produced throughout the year in the same farm.



Image 11.3 : Use of pesticides

To take maximum advantage of intensive farming some important things must be considered-

- select crops which are disease resistant and ripen in less time.
- Use disease free, pure and certified seeds.
- Clean the seeds before sowing, and roots of the plants before transplanting
- Use advanced agricultural techniques and equipments for farming
- Use the required amount of fertilisers
- Take proper measures for preventing diseases and pests in time
- Do not let the weeds grow
- Have proper irrigation and drainage system
- Adopt the proper crop circle (group) by planning the crops for the year. Some crop rotation (group) can be of the following types-

Three cropping crop rotation (group)

Maize potato cucumber	Maize potato onion
Maize potato melon	Maize potato wheat
Rice wheat mung	Sorghum wheat mung
Maize coleseed wheat	Millet wheat sunflower

Four cropping crop rotation (group)

Maize potato wheat moong	Cauliflower + radish cabbage + radish brinjal gourd
Maize potato wheat string beans	Cauliflower+turnip brinjal+gourd cauliflower+gourd
Maize coleseed wheat moong	Tinda potato radish bitter gourd
Rice potato wheat string beans	Ladyfinger radish cauliflower/cabbage bitter gourd

G Commercial farming

Commercial farming is helpful in running various industries. Such crops are produced which can be used as raw material in different industries. The crop yield of farmers are immediately bought by the related industries in the form of raw material. Cultivation of cotton in Gujarat, Maharashtra and Punjab, jute cultivation in West Bengal, sugarcane cultivation in Uttar Pradesh and Maharashtra is done in the form of commercial farming.



Image 11.4 : Commercial Farming

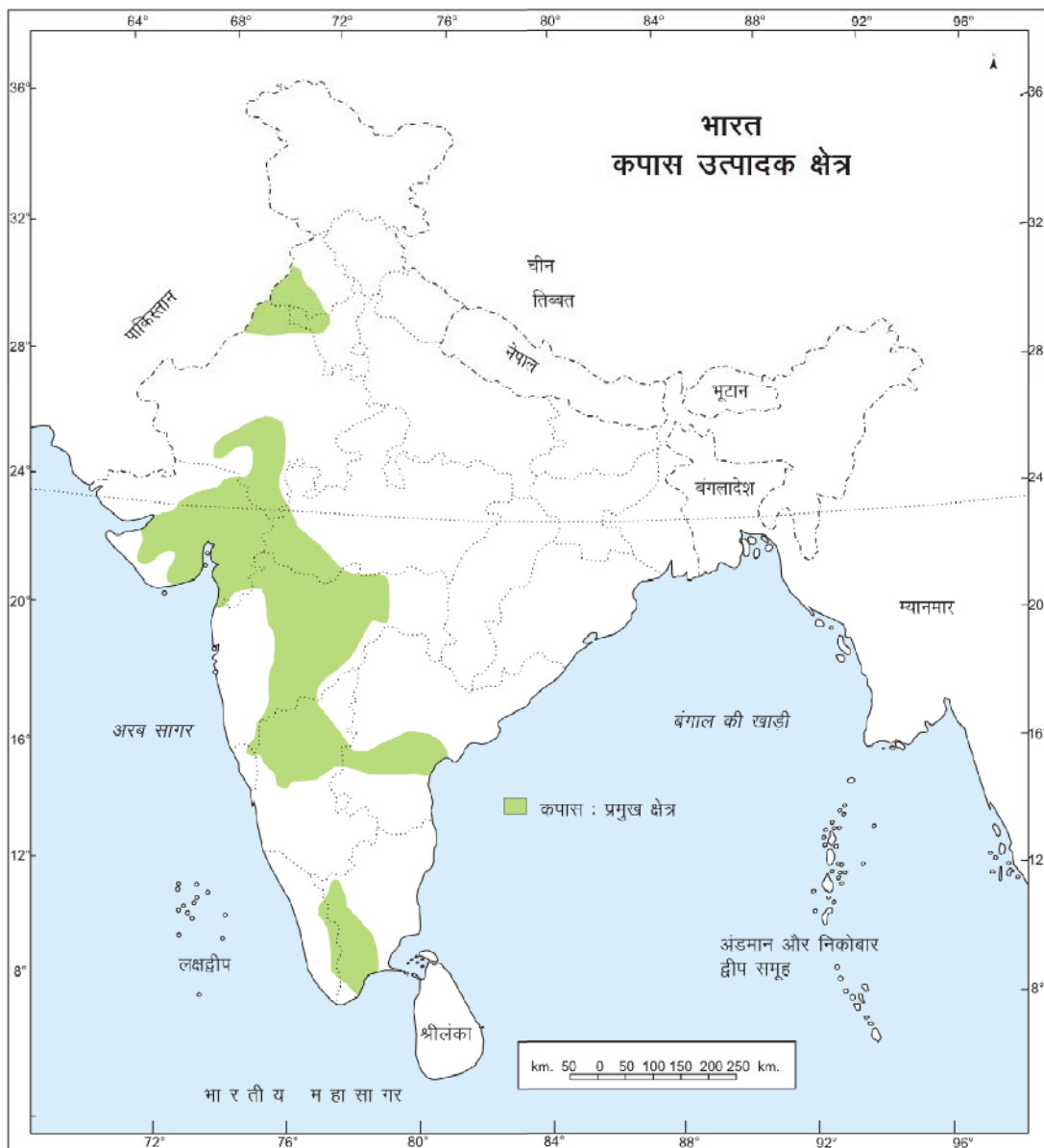


Image 11.5 : Regions of Cotton Cultivation

H. Organic farming

The use of organic farming is rapidly increasing now a days. Chemical fertilisers, pesticides and weed destroying chemicals are not used in this type of farming. These chemicals are harmful for health and environment. Therefore, organic fertilisers and organic pesticides are used in place of these from the preparation of the farm to the storage of the farm produce. The major organic composts are dung, compost, nadep manure, earthworm manure, dead remains of living creatures manure etc. Home made organic medicines are prepared and sprayed to prevent pests and diseases. Dung, cow urine, neem, garlic, green chilli, tobacco, evergreen, dhatura, buttermilk and cloth washing soap etc are used for manufacturing these organic medicines.

The cost of organic farming is very less. Cereals, pulses, fruits and vegetables etc produced by this kind of farming are delicious and healthy. This is also good for the health of the soil. The selling price of the organic produce is also good in the market.



Intext Questions 11.1

1. Where are terraced farms generally found?

2. More than one kind of crop seeds are intermingled in which type of farming?

3. In which type of farming the farm is never left empty and crops are sown one after the other?

4. Write any one crop circle of four crops in a year.

5. What are the effects of chemical manures and chemical pesticides on the health and environment?

11.2 Major crops of India

The weather and temperature of India are not consistent throughout the year. Most of the regions of India experience three major forms of season. They are- winter, summer and monsoon. Winters are very cold. At times fog and frost are also experienced during these days. Scorching heat and intense sunlight is experienced in summer. Sometimes loo winds also blow. Similarly in monsoon it keeps raining. Some places also suffer from floods due to these rains. There is a lot of loss due to the dust-storms in this season. If there is no rain or very less rainfall it leads to drought.

Weather and temperature have a direct effect on the settlement, growth and yield of the crops. Therefore crops are divided into three parts on the basis of the seasons of India-

A. Rabi

In the Rabi season wheat, barley, gram, pea, potato, flaxseed, lentil, cabbage etc crops are taken mostly. These are paired crops. Mild cold weather for its settlement and very cold weather for its growth and propagation are required. Whereas light warm weather is required during the ripening time of these crops. Therefore Rabi crops are sown in the months of October-November and harvested in the months of February-march.

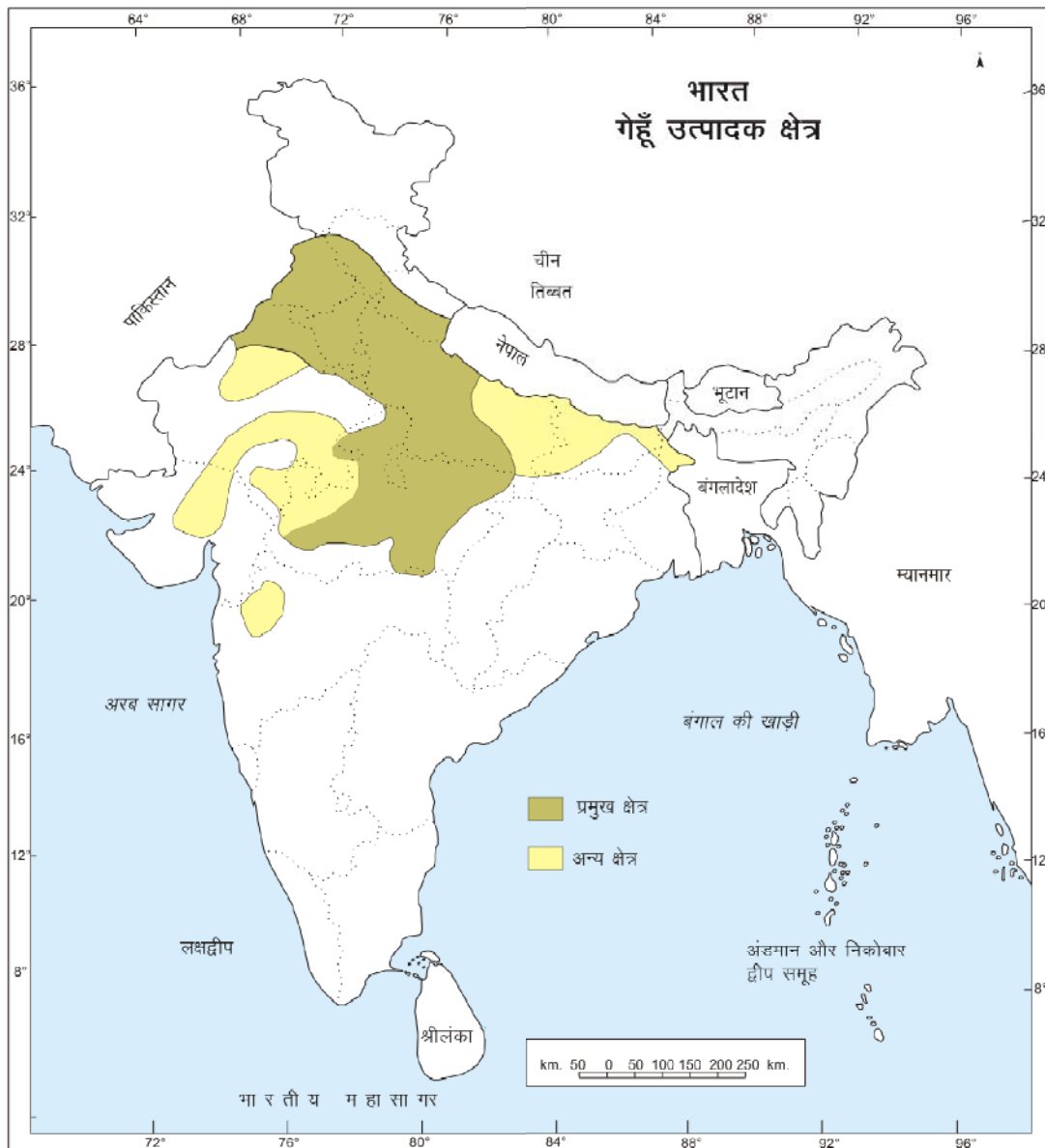


Figure 11.6 : Regions of Wheat Cultivation

B. Kharif

Kharif crops are sown in the beginning of the monsoon season. They require a lot of water and humidity. Rice, maize, sorghum, millet, urad, string beans, peanuts, etc are the major Kharif crops. They are harvested in the months of October-November.

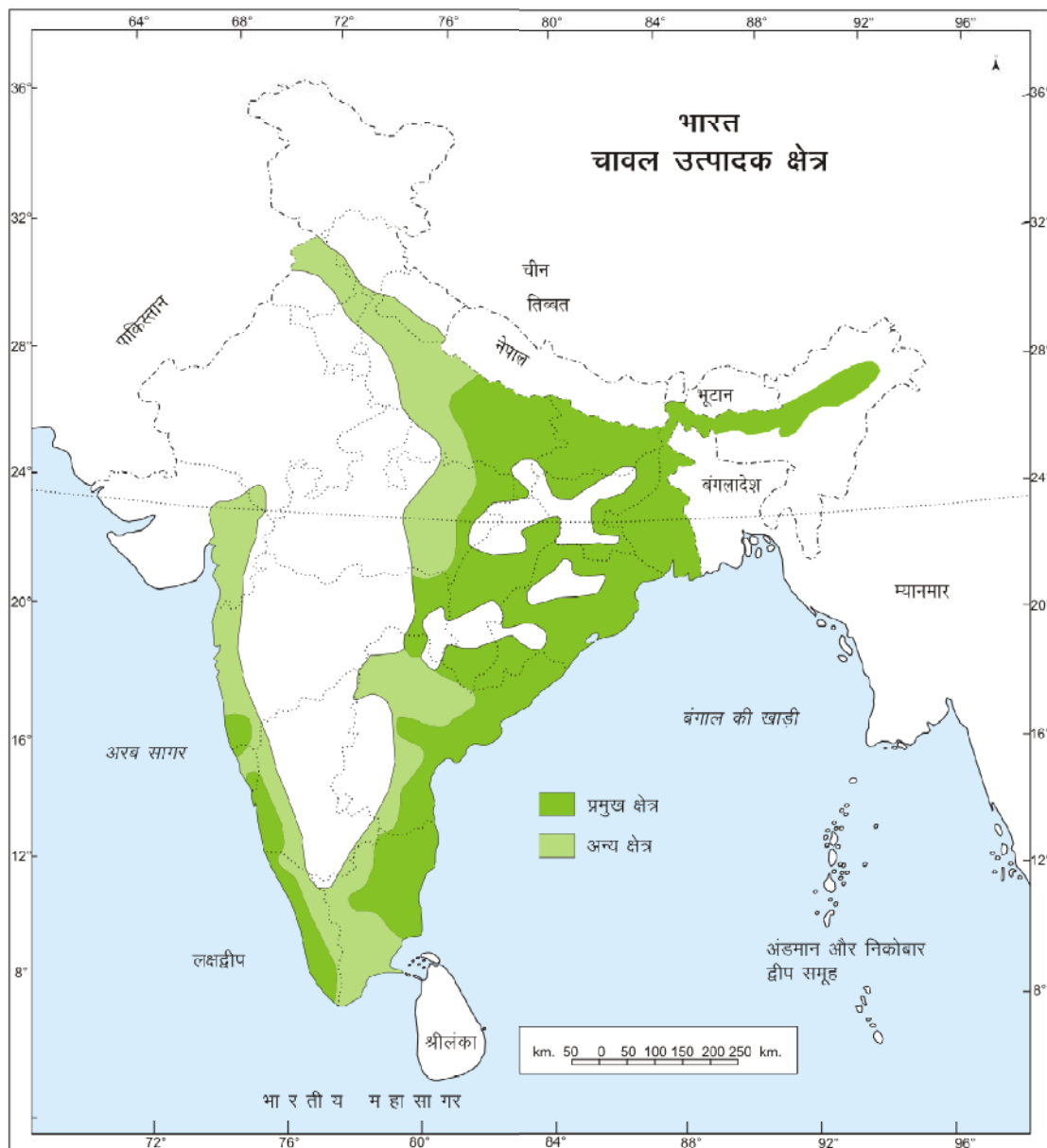


Image 11.7 : regions of rice cultivation

C. Zaid

Zaid crop is taken between the time of harvesting of Rabi and sowing of Kharif crop. During this period the farms are left empty for almost 3-4 months. Additional benefits can be availed by sowing Zaid crops in the empty farms. For the settlement of Zaid crops mild heat is required and for the growth and ripening intense heat is required. Therefore, these crops are sown in February-March

and harvested in May-June. The major crops are cucumber, watermelon, melon, mung, coleseed, sunflower etc.

Types of crops

We require many types of things to fulfil our food needs. Pulses, rice, vegetables and bread are the most important. Oil and spices are also required to prepare food. All these things are grown in the farms. Some crops are also sown which can bring cash after selling. In this manner crops are divided into many groups that are sown throughout the year. Some groups are as follows-

A. Food grains

Many types of cereals come under food grains, such as- wheat, rice, barley, maize, sorghum, millet, kodo, finger millet etc. These are such cereals, which can be used in the form of bread, parantha, poori and rice for food.

B. Pulse crops

Some crops are divided into two parts and they can be used as pulses. These crops are called pulse crops, such as- gram, yellow lentils, mung, urad, peas, red lentils, soya bean, string beans, horse gram etc. Most of the protein necessary for our bodies is obtained from pulses. Especially for vegetarians the requirement of proteins is fulfilled by pulses.

C. Oilseed crops

The crops from which oil is extracted are called oilseed crops, such as- rye, mustard, peanuts, flower, sunflower, flaxseed, sesame etc. Soya bean is used in the form of both pulse and oilseed.

D. Cash crops

These are crops which are immediately sold from farms or after they are ready and help farmers in generating cash. These crops are called cash crops. These crops are sown primarily for the purpose of making cash to meet the needs of home and family. The major cash crops are sugarcane, potatoes, onion, garlic etc. Different types of flowers, vegetables and spices come under category of cash crops. The major spices are turmeric, coriander, chilli, fenugreek, carom seeds, fennel seeds, ginger, cumin seeds etc.

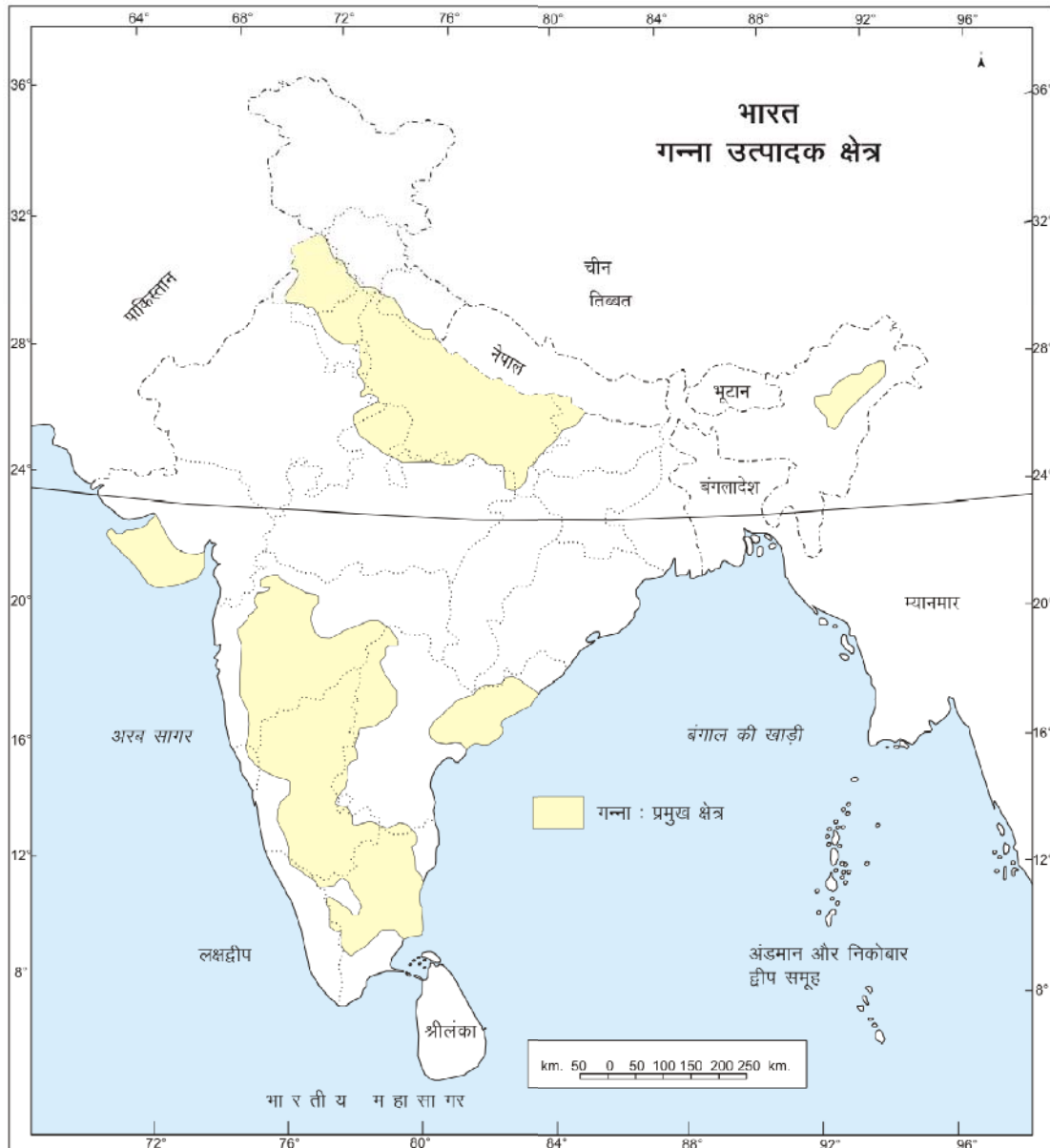


Image 11.8 : region of sugarcane cultivation

E. Fodder crops

In villages, animal husbandry is also a major activity along with agriculture. It is necessary to feed green fodder to the animals to keep them healthy and obtain maximum milk from them. That is why green fodder is also grown in the farms. The major green fodder crops are lea, millet, oats, napier grass etc.

F. Green manure crops

It is very important to use green manures to maintain the quality of the farm land and to obtain good yield of crops. For this, one or the other green manure crop is sown before the main crop. After 45

days of crop yield it is reversed in the farm to make manure. In this manner the farm gets green manure which helps in increasing the production of the main crop. The major green manure crops are maize, millet, string beans, etc.



Intext Questions

11.2

1. Write names of four crops sown in Rabi.

2. Write names of four crops sown in Kharif.

3. Write names of four crops sown in Zaid.

4. Write names of four pulse crops.

5. Write names of four oilseed crops.

6. Write names of four cash crops.

11.3 Factors affecting Agriculture

Everything related to agricultural work is uncertain. There is always some or the other risk. There is no certainty of a good yield even after proper measures are taken while sowing crops, sowing manure and watering, and for protection from weeds, pests and diseases. There are also some natural factors affecting crops which suddenly occur in the form of disaster. There is no definite time of their occurring and neither can they be stopped. However, in certain situations the loss incurred due to these factors can be minimised. These natural factors or calamities are-

A. Deluge

If there is constant heavy rainfall then it is called deluge. Regular rainfall is required for a good yield of Kharif crops. But when this rain consistently falls in large quantity then it can be destructive for the crops. Due to filling up of water during deluge heavy loss of millet, cotton, horse bean, crops is incurred. Due to the constant heavy rainfall during the flowering period flowers shed their leaves and thus production also gets reduced.

B. Drought

If there is very less or no rainfall it is called drought. This creates the conditions of drought. In the

situation of drought sowing of Kharif crops cannot be done. The farmers who somehow sow them after irrigation, are not able to settle or grow them. Even the developed crop dries in the absence of rain. Many years of drought conditions lead to famine. In the absence of fodder and food, cattle and people begin to die.

C. Untimely rain

Crops can benefit from rain only when it rains at the right time and in the right quantity. Untimely rain harms the crops. The season of rain is gone by the time of the harvesting period of Kharif crops in October-November. But sometimes during the harvesting period such rains are usual which do not even allow the harvesting of ripe crops. Harvested crops get destroyed in the farm-barns. Sometimes there is a lot of harm due to the constant rains in the harvesting period of Rabi crops. Cereal grains are ruined.

D. Hail

Usually there is hail in the season of Rabi. These hails can range from the shape of a pea to a big potato. The whole crop gets destroyed in the places of hail. Even the leaves of big trees, flowers and fruits also fall off.

E. Frost or blight

In winter when the sky is clear, and the wind doesn't blow, and there is moisture in the air and the temperature reaches zero degree centigrade, then the possibility of fog increases in the night. By the morning this fog gets collected on the crops and trees in the form of a white layer. Due to the effect of frost the fluid in the plant cells accumulates and their walls break which kills the plants. There is a lot of loss due to frost especially in crops such as peas, potatoes, chickpea, mustard, yellow lentils, etc. But there are some measures that can be taken to reduce the effects of frost, such as-

- Cover the plants which can be covered with a straw at night when the cold increases.
- Irrigate the crops. Moisture reduces the effects of frost on the crops in the farms.
- Increase the temperature of the atmosphere by blowing smoke in the surroundings.
- Plant the plants on the slope of the mountains and not in the valleys.
- Sow the frost resistant species of crop.

F. Fog and clouds

Fog or mist is common place in the winter. Sometimes clouds are also there along with fog. Due to the constant fog and clouds there is an increase in the outbreak of aphids in the crops. Usually there is a heavy loss due to aphids on chickpea, potato, pea, rye, mustard seeds, coriander, cabbage, cauliflower etc during these days. The mango crop also gets affected due to fog and clouds. Medicines can be sprayed on the crops to protect them from aphids in order to reduce the loss.

G Dust-storm

In the season of heat and rain dust-storms can attack in the form of massive calamity. Dust-storms cause harm to the plants and trees, and crops. The grains become weak and thin when they bend and do not get light and wind. This reduces production. Due to dust-storm big fruit trees also fall off. Raw mango fruits get destroyed.



Intext Questions 11.3

Choose the correct option-

- (a) If there is constant heavy rainfall then it is called (drought/deluge)
- (b) If there is very less or no rainfall it is called (drought/blight)
- (c) Due to the constant fog and clouds there is an increase in the outbreak of in the crops. (porcupine/aphids)
- (d) Due to the constant heavy rainfall during the flowering period start shedding. (fruit/flower)
- (e) Many years of drought conditions lead to (famine/richness)



What you have learnt

- The land, climate and geographical conditions are not the same in all the places of India. Our needs, wants, consumption and available resources also differ from place to place. due to all these differences the ways or methods of farming are different in different places.
- the major types of farming are - sole cropping, multiple cropping, intercropping, subsistence farming, terraced farming, intensive farming or multi-crop farming, commercial farming and organic farming.
- In India crops have been divided into three major parts on the basis of weather and temperature- Rabi, Kharif and Zaid.
- In Rabi season mostly wheat, millet, gram, pea, potato, flaxseed, lentil, cauliflower, cabbage etc. crops are grown.
- Rice, maize, millet, jwar, horse bean, string beans, peanuts, etc. are the major Kharif crops.
- The major Zaid crops are cucumber, watermelon, melon, mung, colesed, sunflower etc.
- The crops which are grown on the basis of needs can be divided into many groups.
- The cereals that come under food grains are wheat, rice, millet, maize, finger millet etc. These are used to make bread, parantha, poori and rice.

- Gram, yellow lentils, mung, peas, red lentils, soya bean, string beans, horse gram etc. are pulse crops. Pulses are made from them.
- Oil is extracted from oilseed crops. These crops are- rye, mustard, peanuts, flower, sunflower, flaxseed, sesame etc. Soya bean is used in the form of both pulse and oilseed.
- The crops of sugarcane, potatoes, onion, garlic, different types of vegetables, spices and flowers are called cash crops. Cash can be immediately obtained by selling these crops.
- Fodder crops are sown to feed the animals, such as- lca, millet, oats, napier grass etc.
- Maize, millet, string beans, etc. are green manure crops. These are sown with the objective of providing green manure to the farm.
- There are certain natural factors which harm the crops in the farm. These factors are- deluge, drought, untimely rain, hail, frost or blight, fog and clouds and dust storm etc.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks with the correct words-

- Multiple cropping is also known as cropping. (duplicate/mixed)
- Kharif crops are sown in the beginning of the (monsoon/night)
- Deluge is for the crops. (harmful/strength)
- Usually there is in the season of rabi. (chickpea/hail)
- the crops to protect them from frost. (stretch/irrigate)

2. The names of crop groups have been given below. Select the correct name of the group and fill in the blank below the box of crops.

(pulse crops, cash crops, oilseed crops, food crops)

A
sugarcane, potato, onion, garlic, cumin seed, ginger, turmeric, tomato, chilli

B
rye, mustard seed, sesame, peanut, flaxseed, sunflower

C
gram, red lentil, yellow lentils, pea, string beans, soya bean

D
wheat, rice, sorghum, millet, maize, Kodo, barley, ragi

3. Put a tick mark on the correct (✓) answer and cross (✗) mark on the incorrect answer:

- (a) There is a lot of frost in summer. ()
- (b) There is fog in winter. ()
- (c) Untimely rain harms the crops. ()
- (d) crops get dry due to deluge. ()
- (e) Due to the constant fog and clouds there is an increase in the outbreak of aphids in the crops. ()
- (f) Zaid crops are sown in the monsoon season. ()

4. Match the following-

- (a) crop cultivated in monsoon Zaid
- (b) crop cultivated in winter oilseed
- (c) crop cultivated in summer kharif
- (d) cash giving crop pulse
- (e) the crop from which oil is extracted rabi
- (f) the crop which is grown to obtain pulse cash

5. Answer the following questions-

- (a) What is subsistence farming?

- (b) Where is terraced farming done?

- (c) Frost or blight occur in which season?

6. Write five sentences on organic farming.

Let us do it

- If you have farms then in one portion of it do organic farming and observe. Do not use any chemical manure or pesticide chemicals at all. Use dung manure, compost manure, nadep manure or earthworm manure etc. Use neem, dhatura, cow urine etc to make pesticides at home and apply it. Collect as much information on organic farming as possible.
- Compare the agricultural produce obtained from organic method and from chemical method. Observe the difference in amount, taste and quality of the produce.
- Gradually increase the land area of organic farming. Then adopt the use of organic farming completely.
- If you don't have farm and there is vacant land near your house where sag-vegetables are grown then use only organic method of farming. Observe the difference in amount, taste and quality of the produce.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

11.1

1. On mountainous slopes
2. In multiple cropping
3. Intensive farming or multi-crop farming
4. Maize + potato + wheat + mung or something else
5. Harmful

11.2

1. Wheat, gram, pea, barley, flaxseed, red lentils, potato etc.
2. Rice, maize, sorghum, millet, urad, string beans, peanuts, etc.
3. Cucumber, watermelon, melon, sunflower, Mung, gourd etc.
4. Gram, pea, mung, red lentils, urad, soya bean, string beans etc.
5. Rye, mustard, sunflower, flaxseed, flower, sesame, peanuts etc.
6. Potato, sugarcane, onion, garlic, turmeric, coriander, ginger, cumin seeds etc.

11.3

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|
| (a) Deluge | (b) Drought | (c) Aphids |
| (d) Flower | (e) Famine | |

Terminal Questions

1. (a) mixed (b) monsoon (c) harmful
(d) hail (e) irrigate

2. (a) cash crops (b) oilseed crops
(c) pulse crops (d) food crops

3. (a) cross (b) tick (c) tick
(d) cross (e) tick (f) cross

4. (a) Kharif (b) Rabi (c) zaid
(d) cash (e) oilseed (f) pulse

5. (a) the farming which is done for livelihood.
(b) on slopes of mountains.
(c) in winter.

Development of Industry

Industries are considered to be the backbone of any country. These are considered to be a parameter to measure the progress of a country. The countries that are developed in industries are considered to be developed in the world. Since ages, our country has been a front runner of industries. We have a glorious past of industries. Our country was famous due to industries and skills in part. There was a demand of products made in India. With time, these industries took a back seat. But we progressed afterwards. Today we have all types of industries here. India is exporting various products throughout the world. We will study about it in this chapter.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Define the meaning of industries;
- Categorise various types of industries;
- Explain the status of industries in ancient India;
- Explain the causes of decrease in industries in ancient India;
- Explain the status of industries in India after Industrial Revolution and
- Discuss the status of industries after Independence.

12.1 What is an Industry?

By Industry we mean any economic activity which is related to the production of goods, mining minerals from earth or services of any type.

Let us understand

Producing sugarcane in a farm and then preparing sugar from it and marketing it is considered to be activities of sugar industry. Extraction of iron from ores and making it ready to use is known as the iron and steel industry. Here, both industries refer to the production of a product. Mining industry refers to extraction of coal, marble and other minerals from the cap of earth.

Farming and other agricultural activities come under agriculture industry. In the same way, service industry is related to running a hotel, tourism etc.

12.1 Types of Industries

There are various types of industries. However, major categories of industries are: -

- 1) On the basis of Raw material
- 2) On the basis of ownership
- 3) On the basis of work or functions
- 4) On the basis of size

1. On the basis of Raw Material

Different types of industries use different of raw material. Raw material is an object which is used to prepare new objects like cotton is used to make cotton clothes. On the basis of raw materials used industries are classified as: -

- a) **Agriculture based Industries** - These industries use the products available from farming and cattle livestock. Some of the agriculture based industries include sugar industry, vegetable oil and ghee, food processing products, cotton clothes, milk products, leather products etc.
- b) **Mining based Industries** - These industries use raw material which are extracted from earth's crust. The solid natural, extracted mineral is known as ore as Iron ore. Iron ore is used to extract iron which is used in Iron and Steel Industry. Just like this, various ores and mines extraction come in this category.
- c) **Ocean based Industries** - These industries use those products as raw materials which are extracted from ocean depth. These include conservation of oceanic eatable products, fish oil, preparation of salt etc.

- d) **Forest based Industries** - Using forest products as raw materials come under forest based industries. These include paper industry, ---, industries based on herbs, furniture industries etc.

2. On the basis of Ownership

Industries are classified into following on the basis of ownership

- a) **Public or Government Industries** - These are also known as public industries. Government runs these industries; some examples includes Hindustan Aeronautics Limited, Bokaro Iron and Steel Plant, Bharat Heavy Electricals Limited etc.
- b) **Private Industries** - These industries are run by a single individual or a group of persons like Tata Iron and Steel Industry, Birla Cotton Mill, Hero Cycle etc.
- c) **Mixed or composite Industries** - This sector includes those industries which are run by government and an individual or group of individuals like Maruti Industry.
- d) **Co-operative Sector Industries** - These industries are run by either raw material producer or raw material supplier or both. One such example is Amul or Anand Milk Union Limited. Amul is run by the owner of livestock and milk supplier. Sugar mills in Maharashtra are also such examples.

3. On the basis of Work

These include two types of Industries: -

- a) **Basic Industries** - These industries include those industries which prepare raw material for other industries like Iron and steel Industry, Petro-Chemical Industry.
- b) **Consumer Industries** - The products produced by these industries are directly used by the consumer like soap industry, sugar industry, fruit conservation industry etc.

4. On the basis of Size

The size of an industry is judged by the size of the organization, the amount of capital invested, the number of people employed and the quantity of production. On this basis, there are four types of Industries: -

- a) **Rural or Cottage Industries** - Most of the work in such industries are done by hands. These use less technology or machines. Investment is also very less in such industries. These are traditional industries and are run by a family and its members. Some example include pottery, handloom, jewellery making --- and toys etc.
- b) **Micro or small scale Industries** - These industries invest small amount of capital which is more than cottage industries. The number of workers is also less. Low technology is used and less machinery is used here. These include fan industry, making machinery parts etc.

- c) **Medium scale industries** - These industries have a big set up than micro industry but less than a small industry. More capital is invested in them as compared to micro industries.
- d) **Large scale industries** - These have a big amount of capital and use high level of machinery and technology. Workers are also large in number. These firms do continuous work. These include Tata Iron and Steel company making rail, engines etc.

It is to be noted that one industry can fall in many categories according to classification. Such an example is Amul which is both an agricultural industry and co-operative sector industry.



Intext Questions 12.1

1. Write the correct categories of following industries on the basis of raw materials, butter making, salt making, sugar making, making ropes from jute, making iron rods, making shoes from leather, making furniture, making paper, making rail coaches

Agriculture Based _____

Mining Based _____

Ocean Based _____

Forest Based _____

2. Making toys from clay comes under which category?

a) Small Industries	b) Big Industries
c) Cottage Industries	d) Medium Scale
3. Which type of industry includes making wooden doors?

a) Ocean based	b) Forest Based
c) Mining Based	d) Agriculture Based
4. Which industry is a consumer based industry?

a) Iron and steel Industry	b) Petro - Chemical Industry
c) Toothpaste Industry	d) Rail Engine Industry

12.2 Older Industries

Industries in old times. Our country has an age old tradition of industries. During Indus valley civilization we had a number of industries and progressed. Indus valley civilization is around 2600 years old. Various objects have come up by digging the land. These objects tell us that people used to make gold and silver

jewellery, cotton clothes, clay utensils, bronze statues etc. at that time. These industries progressed with time. Objects made up of Iron and other metals evolved. The knowledge of metals increased. There is an iron statue near Qutab Minar in Delhi which is very old. This is known as iron pillar of Delhi which is rust free. This shows the skills and artistic features of that time.



Fig 12.1 : Iron Pillar near Qutab Minar in Delhi

Ships were also built at that time. This happened because India was connected to the world by water ways till 18th century.

Various other industries too progressed in old times like cloth making, carving on stones and woods, making bricks and lime, preparing sugar, salt, paper, lakh bangles, work on gold, silver and pearls, casting iron, brass, bronze, copper etc with others.

Jatak stones related to Lord Buddha also have inputs of development of commerce in old times. One of these stones tells us about a caravan. This examines that these people were going for commerce. However, during these times the business was restricted only to cloth industry and other than clothes the business was restricted to mud utensils, gold jewellery and objects of elephant teeth. Most of these businesses were traditional, that is, either family or family members were doing this business from one generation to another.

There were many organizations (Unions) related to business, both inside and outside the country. Old Jatak stories tell us about 18 labour unions in the state of Rajgrah. There was a system related to bank in old times helping business and industries.

The progress of industries in India in old times can be seen by a report prepared by the Britishers. An industrial commission was set up in 1916-18 under the chairmanship of SG. T. H. Holland. This commission has reported, "Western Europe which is considered to be the birth place of new industrial system had uncivilized castes where as India was famous for the ruler's glory and sculptor's skills"



Fig 12.2 : Handloom products from India

Indian industries and commerce were at its peak till 18th century. At the end of this century, conditions of these industries saw a downfall. The chief of them are handloom. The first industry that lost its charm was the cloth industry. Like this, others too depleted. After industrial revolution people started going towards agriculture. The country which was industry based became agriculture based.

Reasons for Downfall of Industries

Various reasons are responsible for downfall of industries in the country. At the beginning of 18th century, Industrial revolution took place in England. This also affected India as India was under the rule of Britishers. British made such rules that harmed Indian worker. Industry in England saw the boom and started selling its goods in India.

The impact of western education was also seen on Indian society. The demand of foreign products increased. This decreased the demand for Indian goods which harmed the industry and lead to its closure.

Earlier, Kings and Nawabs (Rich People) used to patronize the worker. They protected the traditional business. With the advent of Britishers, the authority of kings and feudal lords were reduced. This also affected the industries. Due to industrial revolution, big industries came into existence in foreign lands. They used machines which lead to cheaper products. Indian worker prepared goods from hands. Hence, they were costly. Machines made many products in less time. Therefore, foreign goods were accepted in opposition to 60 Indian goods. Therefore, these industries were also shut down.



Intext Questions 12.2

Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option: -

1. Our country has an _____ tradition of Industries. (New/Old)
 2. Rajgrah state had eighteen _____ (Labour Unions/Industries)
 3. Industrial revolution started in England in _____ century. (Fifteenth/Eighteenth)
 4. The first industry which lost heavily in the end of eighteenth century in India, was _____ industry. (Iron/Cloth)
2. Tick mark the correct statement (✓) or cross (✗) the wrong one in the following: -
1. Our country was known to metallic ()
 2. Indian industries did not progress till eighteenth century. ()
 3. Due to industrial revolution, big industries came into existence in foreign countries. ()
 4. Jatak stories do not tell about the development of commerce in India. ()

12.3 After Industrial Revolution

As you have already read, industrial revolution took place in England in the end of eighteenth century. By industrial revolution, we mean the progress of industries. This began in England.

By eighteenth century, the thoughts of people started changing and so various social values were also changed. Traditional customs were also ignored. People started thinking in a new way. They had a progressive approach. A new society slowly started cropping up.

There was development in scientific field too. New machines and latest technologies came up. Therefore, it was easy to prepare for an industry. Time for making a product was also reduced. Cost also came down. People were more secure in industries. Roads were improved. Railways also became a means for travelling, waterways were also improved. Canals were also made. These helped in saving time of people. Products started reaching in less time and in an easy way to people.

There are major three things, required for setting up of an industry, land, labour and capital. Other than these, the required elements are raw material, power (electricity etc.), transport and communication facilities and market. Government also changed its policy during the time of industrial revolution. Various new laws were enacted and implemented. This lead to easy availability of land for industries. Amount of capital was also easily available and loan was also granted.

Machines were also used in farming sector. This lead to unemployment for farmer and ---. They migrated to city from village in search for employment provided by industry. Thus, the labour problem of industries

also ended. Thus, industries got cheap labour required by them.

These are the factors that helped in the growth of industries. This helped in industrial revolution in England which affected first Europe and then the whole world.

Effect of Industrial Revolution in India

Modern Industries started in India during 19th Century. Cloth and jute business were the first to come up. First cloth mill started in Kolkata in 1818 and then in Mumbai, 1854. At the same time, railway also developed as a means of transport. Coal extraction industries started in Rani Ganj in 1872. First iron and steel industry started in Kulti in 1874 at the time of Britishers. As Britishers were ruling India, they were responsible for the growth of industry in the country. Various private industrialists also started business from British capital.

At that time, they had only two criteria for setting up of an industry first selling up those industries which gave maximum profit in less time and secondly those products which could be sent to foreign land for selling. British government never gave any permission to those industries which can become a problem in selling British goods in Indian market. Therefore, various industries did not crop up.

Early twentieth century saw the rise of new industries where swadeshi that is, goods made in our country was emphasized. This saw the emergence of Indian industries. Jamshed Ji Tata established Iron and steel plant in Jamshedpur in 1907. Paper and jute industries were established in Kolkata and near by areas.



Fig 12.3 : Industries in India

Indian industrialists started many big and small industries. These made the items of daily use like match box, soap, pencil etc. Leather and aluminum industries also started. These products were consumed in the country itself. However, big industries could not progress at this time. The main cause was that the policies of British government were not in favour of Indian industries. There was no capital in the country. There was non-availability of skilled labour and technicians. Skilled managers were also not available in the country.

First world war also started at the same time. Therefore, foreign products were not available in the country. This was so because of problem in transportation. Moreover, the demand of Iron and steel, cotton clothes, jute products etc. increased during war giving a boost to industries. However, we could not capture this boom due to many reasons. These were non-availability of machines and its spare parts and import of essential items etc.

Profits were earned by the industries during first world war. This motivated many industrialists to plan an industry. Further, government too changed industrial policy for the benefit of industrialists. Government patronized industries like Iron and steel, cotton cloth, sugar, match boxes, paper etc. from 1922 to 1939, thereby increasing industries and their production.

Import was also low at the time of second world war. Therefore, industries got patronized. The products prepared by industries were in demand during second world war. This raised the cost of products and surprisingly their profits too. Industries also increased during this time.

Major industries which progressed during war were cement, iron and steel, cotton cloth, paper, sugar etc. Industries started working in their full capability. This increased their production but world war affected small and cottage industries. Their demand increased as import decreased. This led to less supply of products in the market. The demand of spare parts also increased for big industries leading to the birth of spare parts.

However, industries progressed in second world war but not upto the expected level. The causes behind were supply of machines for industry, no import of chemical products. There was a growth of new industries and promotion of old industries in second world war. However, there came some problems in second world war, which were,

1. Industries worked upon old machinery. Thus industry developed but machines depreciated. They could not be replaced as import was closed during world war. This hampered production.
2. Due to demand, cheap products were selling at high price. For making more profits, some industries came into market. Working of these industries was impossible in normal conditions. After world war ended, these industries suffered major losses.
3. To earn more profit in less time, black marketing, corruption and cheating became a part of business.



Intext Questions 12.3

1. Answer the following question: -

- a) Which modern industries started in India in 19th century?

- b) When and where was first industry of iron and steel established in India?

- c) Which are the three elements of industries?

2. Match the following correctly: -

Column A

Jamshed pur

Industrial Revolution

Starting of modern Industry in India

Emphasis on ---

Column B

19th Century

20th Century

Iron and Steel India

England

3. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option: -

- a) The three elements of industry are - land, _____ and capital (Money/Labour)
- b) The policies of _____ rulers were not in favour of Indian Industries. (British/India)
- c) Industrial revolution began in _____ (England /America)
- d) Use of machines in farms made many _____ unemployed. (Businessman/villagers)

12.4 Development of Industries after Independence

Our country got independence in 1947. The parliament of the country also came into existence at the same time. This had a bad impact on industries of India. India got factories of producing jute and cotton clothes whereas the production areas of jute and cotton went to Pakistan. Therefore, the country faced the crisis of raw jute and cotton. There was a bad impact of these on these industries due to non-availability of raw material. Most of the markets prepared for selling these products went to Pakistan. Thus Indian industrialist faced the problem of selling their products.

There were many other reasons for the downfall of Indian industries. These are: -

1. There was an environment of chaos and confusion in the country.

2. Capital was not invested in productivity.
3. There was a lack of skilled labour.
4. Many industrialists and capitalists left the country after partition.
5. The available resources in the country were used to solve the problems after partition. They could not be used for developmental works.

After independence, Indian government adopted the policy of planned development for the country. Various five year plans were prepared to achieve this goal. First five year plan began in 1951. In this plan, agriculture was given importance over industries.

Second five year plan began in 1956. This plan had the target of industry development. This plan laid importance on basic industries, small and cottage industries. Engineering industries progressed a lot in this plan. This led to a boom in the production of Iron and steel, cement, coal and aluminum.

Government established these industries in the backward areas of the society. The area where industries are placed, develop a road and rail connectivity. People get employed facilities of health and education are also provided. In short the whole area gets developed.

The four plants of Iron and steel were established in the plan, namely,

1. Rourkela in Orissa
2. Bhilai in Madhya Pradesh
3. Durgapur in West Bengal
4. Bokaro in Bihar

Orissa is now known as Odisha. Bhilai is now in Chattisgarh and Bokaro is located in Jharkhand. The major reason for setting up of these plants was the fact that they were near to the iron ore mines. Other than iron and steel, big industries were established in heavy machinery, cement, paper, aluminum industry etc.



Fig 12.4 One factory

Later five year plans emphasized on consumer industries. Consumer industries, as the name refers, are those industries whose products are directly used by the consumer such as sugar, salt, food products etc. Most of industries in these sectors were established by private industrialists. Five year plans also took care of small and cottage industries.

Major industries of India include: -

1. Cotton Cloth Industry
2. Jute Industry
3. Woollen Cloth Industry
4. Silk cloth industries
5. Artificial Cloth Industry
6. Handloom and Khadi Industry
7. Coconut and its products Industry
8. Fibre Industry
9. Sugar Industry
10. Refined Oil industry
11. Iron and Steel Industry
12. Heavy Engineering and Machine Parts Spare Industry
13. Railway Engines Industry
14. Railway Coaches Industry
15. Ship Industry
16. Automobile Industry
17. Aeronautics Industry
18. Cement Industry
19. Fertilizer Industry
20. Chemical Industry
21. Medicine Industry
22. Electronic Industry
23. Heavy Electronic Machinery Industry
24. Petro Chemical and Oil Filter Industry
25. Defence Material Industry
26. Information Technology Industry

Some of these industries were not present in India before independence. Today, India is playing a leading role in such industries.

Industries are run in a successful way where they get raw material easily with land and water. Good transport services should be available to take raw material and finished goods from one place to another. Market should also be available for selling of these goods. Therefore, many industrial corridors or states have been prepared for the development of industries. Some of them are: -

1. Mumbai - Pune Industrial State
2. Hughli Industrial State
3. Ahmedabad - Varoda Industrial State
4. Coimbatore - Bangalore Industrial State
5. Chota Nagpur Industrial State

6. Gurgaon - Delhi - Shaharanpur - Ambala Industrial State
7. Kollam - Trivandrum Industrial State
8. Vishakhapatnam - Guntur Industrial State

Industrial state has some major industries. Many small industries are established near big industries. In this way, every industry is works at a fast pace in India. 'Make in India' is making new industrialists connecting to industrial scenario. Moreover foreign industrialists are also motivated for investment in the country. This will not only develop industries in India but will create employment also. This will boost the economy of the country.



Intext Questions 12.4

1. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct options: -

- a) First five year plan of India started in _____. (1951/1956)
- b) _____ industry was established in Durgapur by the government. (Staff/Iron and Steel)
- c) Second five year plan emphasized on _____ industry. (Basic Industry/ Tourism Industry)
- d) Bhilai is located in the state of _____. (Jharkhand/Chattisgarh)

2. Tick (✓) the correct statement or cross (✗) the wrong statement: -

- a) The partition of India had bad impact on Industry in India. ()
- b) First five year plan laid importance on industries. ()
- c) Government established iron and steel plant in Rourkela. ()
- d) Many areas related to the production of Jute and Cotton were retained in India. ()



What you have learnt

- Industry means any economic activity which is related to the production of any object, extraction from mines or providing services.
- A major classification divides industries into four types: -
 1. On the basis of Raw Material
 2. On the basis of ownership
 3. On the basis of work
 4. On the basis of size

- Industries in our country have an old tradition. Various proofs relating to handicrafts, cotton cloth, objects of Bronze have been found in the extract of Indus valley civilisation.
- Jatak's Stone related to Lord Buddha have proofs of the development of business in our country.
- By the end of 18th century industries saw a downfall in the country.
- Industrial revolution began in 18th century in England.
- India was also affected by Industrial Revolution.
- New Industries were established in India in 19th century.
- First industries started were cloth and jute industry.
- Coal mining extraction began in Raniganj in 1872.
- First iron and steel plant started in Kulti in 1874.
- After world war, there was a rise in demand of Iron and steel, cotton clothes, items of jute etc.
- First world war benefitted industries.
- Second world war also saw a decline in importing goods. This increased profit of old industries. New industries also cropped up.
- Various new problems also came, like old machines could not be replaced. To make profit in less time, industrialists started black marketing and corruption etc.
- Development after Independence. Government started the policy of planned development.
- Second five year plan laid stress on the development of industry in the country.
- Government established industries in backward areas for their development.
- Our country is developing continuously in industrial sector.
- Various industrial corridors have been made in the country. These have made a deep impact on the development of industrial sector in the country.
- Make in India has made new industrialists in planning and putting new industries.



Terminal Questions

1. (✓) Tick the correct statement and cross (✗) the wrong statement
 - a) Milk products or products related to milk come under agriculture based industry, ()
 - b) Iron and steel industry is related to forest industry. ()
 - c) First iron and steel plant was established in Kulti in 1907. ()
 - d) Second five year plan started in 1956. ()

2. Match the following:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| a) Salt Making | u) Consumer Industry |
| b) Eighteen Labour Unions | v) Year 1818 |
| c) Cloth Mill in Calcutta | w) Cottage Industry |
| d) Iron and Steel Industry | x) Rajgrah |
| e) Handloom cloth making | y) Ocean Based Industry |
| f) Soap Making | z) Year 1907 |

3. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option: -

- a) First iron and steel plant started in Kulti in the year _____. (1874/1907)
- b) Running a hotel is related to _____ industry. (Agriculture/Service)
- c) Public Sector industries are run by _____. (Government/Self Help Groups)
- d) Iron and steel industry is _____ industry. (Consumer/Basic)
- e) Cheap items were selling on _____ price due to increase in demand. (High/Low)

4. Answer the following question

- a) What are the categories of industries, based on raw materials?

- b) Write an example of private industry?

- c) Which are the industries that are found in the Indus valley extraction?

- d) What do you mean by traditional industries?

- e) Which are the three things important to set up an industry?

f) What are the problems faced by industries due to the partition of the country?

Let us do it

List cottage industries in your village and its nearby areas. Talk to the people for more information. List the problems faced by those industries.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

12.1

1. Agriculture Based - Sugar making, butter making, making ropes from jute, making leather shoes.
Mining based - Making Iron rods, making railway coaches

Ocean based - Salt making

Forest based - Making furniture, paper making

2. (c) Cottage Industries
3. (b) Forest Based
4. (c) Toothpaste Industry

12.2

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. (a) Old | (b) Labour Union |
| (c) Eighteenth | (d) Cloth |
| 2. (a) ✓ | (b) ✗ |
| (c) ✓ | (d) ✗ |

12.3

- (a) Cloth and jute (b) 1879 in Kulti (c) Land, labour and capital
- a) Jamshedpur - Iron and Steel Industry b) Industrial Revolution - England
c) Start of Modern Industries in India - Nineteenth Century
d) Emphasis on --- - twentieth Century
- (a) Labour (b) British
(c) England (d) labour

12.4

- (a) 1951 (b) Iron and Steel
(c) Basic Industries (d) Chattisgarh
- (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✓ (d) ✗

Terminal Questions

- (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✗ (d) ✓
- a - y
b - x
c - v
d - z
e - w
f - u
- (a) 1874 (b) Service
(c) Government (d) Basic Industries
(e) High
- (a) Agriculture based, mining based, ocean based, forest based
(b) Tata Iron and steel industry
(c) Crafts, gold and silver jewellery, mud utensil, brass objects.
(d) Those industries which are run by one family and its generation.
(e) Land, labour and capital

Means of Transport and Communication

Means of Transport play an important role in the progress of a country. Our country has a grid of rail and road transport. There has been a constant improvement in these ways of transport. These means not only help us to reach our destination but they also help in connecting one place to another. Besides road and railways, rivers, canals and steamers and ship in ocean are also means of transport. We have also progressed a lot in airways. All means of transport are playing a role in social, economic and industrial development of the country. Means of transport have played an important role in the development of the country. We will study about the means of transport and communication in this chapter.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain utility and importance of means of transport in social and economic development;
- Describe the means of transport namely, roadways, railways and airways;
- Explain the major road and railway and explain about steamer, water ships, major ports etc. and
- Explain the importance of communication and information revolution.

13.1 Means of transport

Bus, truck, rail, steamer, aeroplane and ships are some of the means which transport products and people from one place to another. Such means are known as means of transport. These means are helpful in increasing industries, commerce, production etc. which help in social, economic and industrial development of the country. The grid of transport should be dense and powerful in increasing the rate of progress of the country. Therefore, these are known as the life line of the country. Transport services are categorized in the following three classes, namely,

- (i) On land - Roadways and Railways
- (ii) Waterways - Boat, Motor Boat, Steamer, Water Ships etc.
- (iii) Airways - Helicopter, Aeroplane etc.



Figure 13.1 : Means of Transport

Transport on Land

They refer to the means of transport related to land. These include roadways and railways. Let us first study about roadways.

Roadways

Roadways are older in comparison to railways. Making roads for roadways is quite simple and cheap. Roads can be made in hilly areas too. Roads can be made in mountains, plains, field, desert, barren land and other places. This helps in the fast reaching of goods and people in such areas where it is not possible to make railways.



Figure 13.2: Roadways

Our country has a dense grid of roadways. Government is also trying to improve this network. In last few years, villages have also been connected to major roads. Most of the villages in India are now connected to highways. The total area of road network is about 33 lakh kilometers in the country. Roadways can be divided into four categories: -

1. National Highways - National Highways connect the state capitals, big and important cities and ports to one another. These also connect the country with Myanmar, Pakistan, Nepal, Bhutan and Tibet. Maximum load of transport business is done on national highways. Our country has total 77 national highways having a total length of 70935 km. National highways also have a golden quadrilateral scheme which connects four metros, namely,

- a) Delhi
- b) Mumbai
- c) Kolkata
- d) Chennai



Figure 13.3 (A) : Golden Quadrilateral

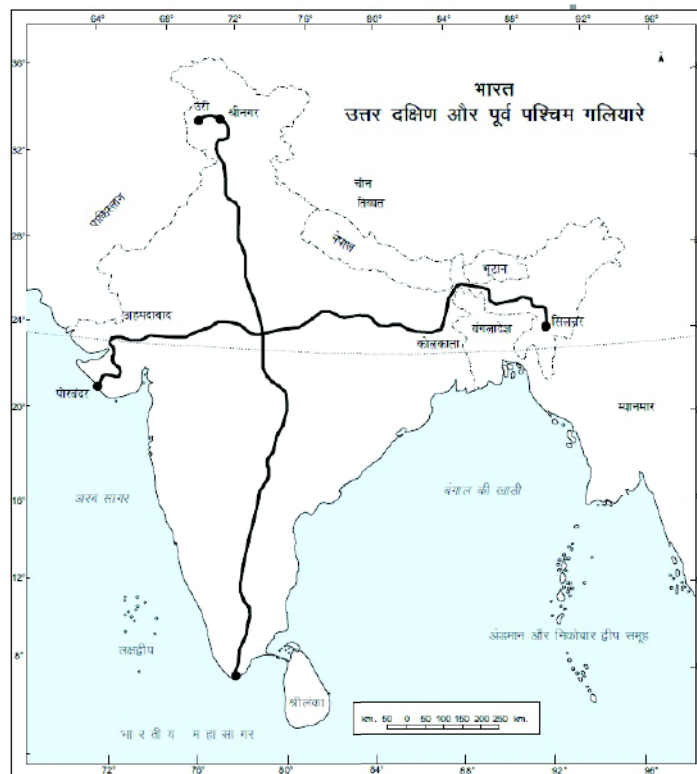


Figure 13.3 (B) : North- South and East - West Corridors

2. State Highways

State highways connect District Headquarters with main cities. The cost of these roads like construction and maintenance is maintained by state government

3. Local or District roads

These roads are used to connect various places to state or national highways. These are also used to connect those places where railways are also present. District administration or PWD department is responsible for their maintenance.

4. Village Roads

These roads connect villages to each other or villages to main roads of the district. These play an important role in the development of villages and improve the life style of rural people. The maintenance of these roads is under taken by district panchayats and village panchayats.

Importance of Road transport in the development of the country

- These are helpful in the transport of raw material and finished goods for the running of factories, various industries and business.
- Rail, steamer, ships and helicopter are not available in every corner of the country, whereas roadways connect far off places.
- Roadways are facilities for village, city, plains, mountains, etc.
- Roads are useful in taking finished goods to the market. Further, agricultural production can also be enhanced by means of roadways.
- Roads are utilized in reaching health services to far off villages. Patients also reach hospitals in time.
- Products from big factories also reach in villages.
- Roads help in reaching people during natural calamities, war and famine etc.
- Roads help army in the border areas. By road food material and weapons are provided to them.
- Everyday around 1 lakh buses run on roads, helping passengers reach their destination.
- Everyday more than 5 crore people travel in buses.
- Maximum goods are transported by means of trucks.



Intext Questions 13.1

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct options: -

(Highways, Land ways, Product, Roads)

1. Those transport means which run on land are known as _____.
2. Most of villages are connected to main _____.
3. Maximum load of transport is taken by national _____.
4. _____ of big factories are now reaching village people.

13.2 Railways

Railways started in India in 1853. First railway track was built in India from Mumbai to Thane. At the time of independence our railway network was not built properly. We worked upon it after independence. Indian railway network is Asia's largest and world's fourth largest network in the present day. Around 16 lakh people are employed here.



Figure 13.4 : Rail Transport

On the basis of width in railway tracks we put them in three categories: -

1. **Broad Gauge** - this has a distance of 1.676 meters between railway track.
2. **Meter Gauge** - Here distance is 1 meter between railway track.
3. **Narrow Gauge** - The distance between railway track is about 0.762 meter or 0.610 meter.

Narrow gauge is now only confined to hilly areas. Meter gauges are now changing to broad gauge. The policy of Indian railways is to have broad gauge in the country. First, steam engines were used in railways, which are now replaced by diesel and electric engines. Various superfast trains are now running in the country like Rajdhani Express and Shatabdi Express. Other trains are passenger, mails and express trains. Passengers trains have a stoppage at every small or big station. All coaches in such trains belong to general category.

Mail and express trains do not stop at every station but only at main station. These are long distance trains. They have three kinds of coaches which are general, sleeper class and air conditioned. Sleeper class provides passengers the facility of sleeping while travelling. A.C. coaches serve in seasons of summer and winter. They keep cool in summer and produce heat in winter. Their charge is expensive.

Indian railways work under central government. For better functioning, we have 16 zones which are: -

Sl. No.	Railway Zone	Headquarter
1.	Southern Railway	Chennai
2.	Central Railway	Chatrapati Shivaji Terminal, Mumbai
3.	Western Railway	Mumbai, Churchgate
4.	Northern Railway	New Delhi
5.	North-East Railway	Gorakhpur
6.	Eastern Railway	Kolkata
7.	South-East Railway	Kolkata
8.	North - East frontier railway	Maligaon (Guhawati)
9.	South-Central Railway	Secundrabad
10.	East-Central Railway	Hajpur
11.	North Western Railway	Jaipur
12.	Eastern Costal Railway	Bhubaneswar
13.	North - Central Railway	Allahbad
14.	South - Western Railway	Hubli
15.	Western-Central Railway	Jabalpur
16.	South - Eastern Central Railway	Vilaspur

Metro Rail Transport

Metro Railways are running in Mumbai and New Delhi. Metro Railways are being developed in big cities like Jaipur, Lucknow etc. These rails are used to facilitate individuals in a particular city. This rail network runs under ground or at some height above the land. This does not hamper the vehicles running on the road and do not cause traffic jam. People reach their destination easily. The charges are also very less when compared with Tempo, truck or bus. People travel in metro leaving their private vehicles behind. This lessens the pressure on roads and there is less pollution.



Fig 13.5 : Metro Rail Services

Bullet Train

Our country is planning to start Bullet trains which have a very fast speed in comparison to normal trains. These trains help in reaching people in less time. Goods can be transported in less time. These trains are comfortable and have added features as compared to normal trains.

Importance of Railways in the development of the country

- Indian railways play an important role in the development of industry and commerce in the country.
- Agriculture has played an important role in the development of railways. Products like fertilizers, seeds, agricultural instruments and pesticide reach farmers easily.
- Agricultural products are sent to every nook and corner of the country.
- Railways are a means to send raw materials and finished goods to the consumers.
- Railway help in interstate and international business.
- Railways play an important role in industries based on agriculture and minerals.
- Long distance journey is more comfortable and simple in railways in comparison to bus or other means of transport.

- Railways are cheaper in comparison to other means of transport.
- Metro railways in cities are comfortable and save money and time.
- Electrical engine in railways do not create pollution.
- Railways can transport items in large quantity from place to another.



Intext Questions 13.2

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option: -
 - a) Railways began in _____ India. (1950/2007/1853)
 - b) Railway come under _____ (State Government/Central Government)
 - c) In order to provide best rail services, _____ railway zones have been built in the country. (20/16/26)
 - d) Metro rail runs in _____ (City/Water/Home)

13.3 Water Transport

Water ways is a cheap, convenient and old means of transport. Around 92% of Indian foreign business is done through water means. Indian water transport is divided into two categories: -

1. Inland water ways
2. Marine water ways

Inland water ways are run on boats, motor boats and steamer whereas ocean water ways use steamer and ships.

Inland water ways

Inland water ways use major rivers and canals for transport in the country. Some of these are Ganga, Brahmaputra and its tributaries, Godavari, Krishna and their tributaries, western costal canals in Kerala, Buckingham canal in Andhra Pradesh and Tamilnadu, Delta Canal in Mandakini, Odisha and Juari Canal in Goa. The total length of canals for water transport in the country is about 4300 kms. Steamers are run in around 500 km area.



Fig 13.6 : Water Transport

Marine Water Ways

The geographical location of the country is fit in accordance to ocean waterways. We have 751.6 km long costal line. This coast line has 12 big and 148 small harbors. Harbors are those places where big ships stop and cargo is loaded and unloaded in them. Indian water ships run on every ocean route of the world.

Our country has 92 shipping companies. Indian Shipping Corporation is the most important government company. There are four big factories of ship making in India. These are: -

1. Vishakhapatnam in Andhra Pradesh
2. Garden Reach in West Bengal
3. Majhgaon in Maharastra
4. Kochi in Kerela

Besides these, 36 small factories of ship making are also present in India.

There are 12 big ports and harbors in India. 6 are situated in eastern coast and other 6 are located in western coast of India.

The big ports of eastern side include: -

1. Kolkata
2. Haldia

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 3. Paradeep | 4. Vishakhapatnam |
| 5. Chennai (Madras) | 6. Tuticorin |

Following 6 are located on the western coast: -

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Kandla | 2. Nehua - Sheva (Nhavashiva) |
| 3. Mumbai | 4. Marmagoa |
| 5. New Manglore | 6. Kochi (Cochin) |

All these ports are used to load products for export and unload products for import.

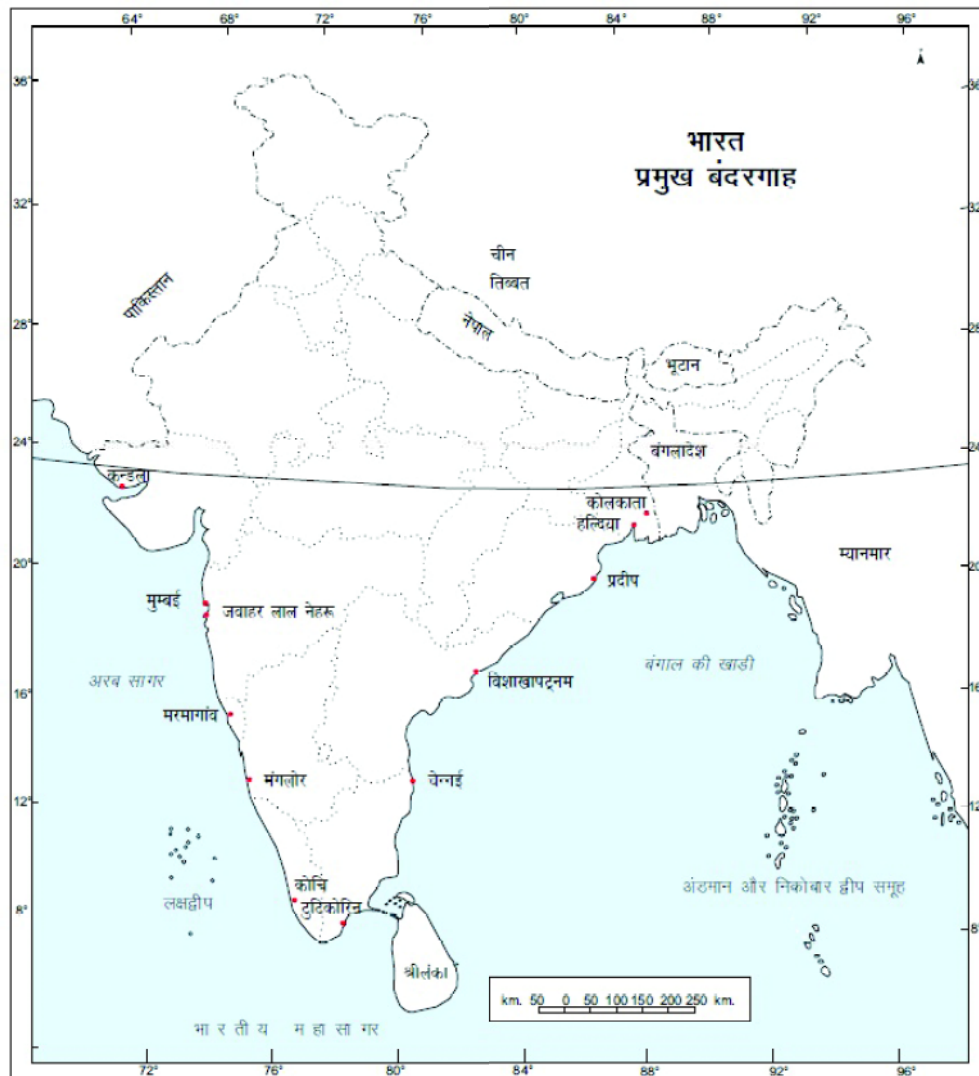


Fig 13.7 : Majors parts of India

Major Ocean Routes

Ocean routes are used for business with other countries. Major ocean routes include: -

1. Suez Canal Route - This route is used for European countries through Red sea, Suez Canal and --- by Indian ships.

2. Utmasha Naval Route- Indian Ships used this route for business in South Africa, Western Africa and South America.
3. Singapore Route - This route is used for business in South East Asia via Singapore.
4. Australia Route - Indian ships use this route while going to Australia and New Zealand.

Importance of Water Route in the development of country

Most of the routes are natural gifts that have minimum construction or maintenance cost. Therefore, these are quite cheaper in comparison to road and railways.

The wholesale products are sent by water ways as the most cheap, easy and comfortable means of transport. 9% of Export -Import of India is done by water ways. Water ways are important and safe for the use of national security and army. This is because enemies can destroy rail tracks, roads and flyovers but can't harm water ways.

Problems in Water ways

There are a few problems in using water ways as rivers are zig-zag in appearance. Some rivers change their course with time. Therefore, a lot of problems are faced here. During rainy season, rivers face the problem of flood and in summers, the rivers get dry. In cold area water gets covered up with ice. Therefore, such ways cannot be used as water ways. Storm etc. also create difficulty for water ships.



Intext Questions 13.3

1. Write the names of any two rivers used for internal water ways: -

2. Write the names of any two ports ?

3. Write any two means of water ways?

4. Write any two names of ocean routes?

13.4 Airways

Airways use helicopters and aeroplanes as a means of transport. These are the fast means of transport. These connect those areas where road and railways cannot reach. Airways started developing in India around 1920. Before Independence, Airways were only used for military purpose.



Fig 13.8 : Airways

After independence, Airways got nationalized in 1953 and all airways companies were divided into two corporations: -

1. Indian (Indian Airlines)

Indian Airlines is known as Indian at present. This corporation organizes air services inside the country. They also connect the country with some neighboring countries. Their head quarters is located in New Delhi. Major cities in the country and a few neighbouring countries can be visited by the planes of these corporation. They have a fleet of more than 70 aeroplanes. Many private companies are also included in this corporation.

2. Air India

This organization organizes air services on long routes. The major four air routes are: -

1. Mumbai - Kahira(Cairo) - Rome - Geneva - Paris - London
2. Delhi - Amritsar - Kabul - Moscow
3. Kolkata - Singapore - Sidney - Perth
4. Mumbai - Kahira (Cairo) - Rome - Dussaldurf - - London - New York

Pawan Hans Helicopter Limited

This was established in 15 October, 1985. These provide facilities to ONGC and Oil India Limited of petroleum sector. Other than these it provides services to other customer like state government, government sector organisations and private companies. This organization has more than 30 helicopters at present.

Vayudut - This was established on 20 January, 1981 for the development of North-East hilly areas. However, this was merged in Indian Airlines in 1992-1993. Besides this, private companies Sahara Airways and Jet Airways are also providing air services.

Major International Airports of the country

1. India Gandhi Airport, New Delhi
2. Chatrapati Shivaji Airport, Mumbai (Maharashtra)
3. Netaji Subash Chandra Bose Airport, Dumdum (Kolkata)
4. Chennai Airport, Meenabuckam (Chennai)
5. Trivandrum Airport, Trivandrum (Kerela)
6. Armitsar Airport, Amritsar (Punjab)
7. Lokpriya Gopinath Bardoloi Airport, Guhawati (Assam)
8. Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel Airport, Ahemdabad (Gujrat)
9. Hyderabad Airport (Rajiv Gandhi Airport), Hyderabad (Telengana)
10. Goa Airport, Vasco - Da - Gama (Goa)
11. Bengaluru Airport, Bangalore (Karnataka)
12. Kochi Airport, Kochi (Kerela)

Besides, these 12 international airports, out country have a few airports for internal flight. Therefore, there are more than 20 around airport in the country.

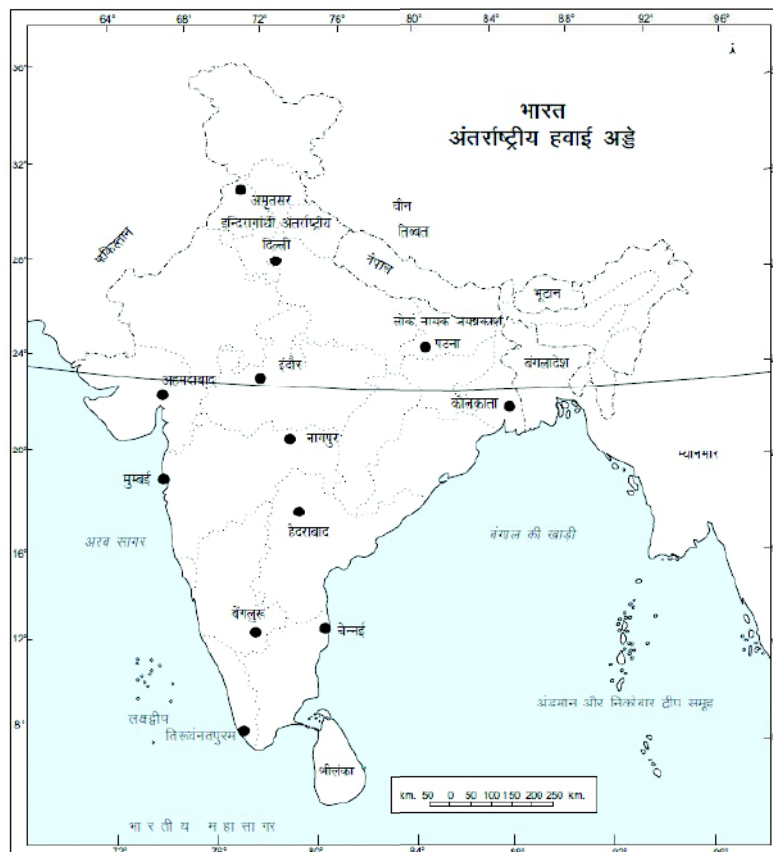


Fig 13.9 : Major Airports of India

India is developing progressively in Airways. The spare parts of aeroplanes are built in Bangalore, Nasik, Hyderabad, Lucknow and Kanpur. However, this development is restricted to big cities only. Mostly eastern areas and north-east states do not have much airways. Some of the major internal air routes of the country are: -

1. Delhi - Ahemdabad - Varanasi - Kolkata
2. Delhi - Lucknow - Chandigarh - Jammu - Srinagar
3. Delhi - Amristar - Jammu - Srinagar
4. Delhi - Gwalior - Bhopal - Indore - Mumbai
5. Delhi - Jaipur - Udaipur - Ahemdabad - Mumbai
6. Delhi - Kathmandu - Patna - Ranchi - Kolkata
7. Mumbai - Mangalore - Chennai
8. Mumbai - Belgaon
9. Mumbai - Dabolim (Goa)
10. Mumbai - Mangalore
11. Mumbai - Porbandar
12. Mumbai - Bhuj
13. Mumbai - Rajkot
14. Mumbai - Hyderabad - Vijayawada - Vishakhapatnam - Kolkata
15. Kochi - Trivandrum - Kolkata
16. Mumbai - Nagpur - Kolkata
17. Kolkata - Port Blair
18. Kolkata - Guwahati - Tejpur - Jorhat - ---wadi - Mohan-
19. Kolkata - Agartala - kho-- - Komalpur - Kelashehar
20. Kolkata - Agartala - Guwahati
21. Chennai - Hyderabad - Delhi
22. Chennai - Bangalore - Coimbatore - Cochin - Trivandrum (Thriuvananthapuram)

Importance of Airways in the development of the Country

- Air transport is an important and miracle discovery of science. Distant journeys can be covered easily in short time.

- Airways can transport valuable items in less time from one place to another.
- There is no construction of tracks in air transport like roads or railways. Only airport needs to be developed.
- Airways is free from physical difficulties. Forest, Mountains, Desert, Ice berugs or mountains, river, valley, ocean etc cannot create any difficulty in airways.
- In case of any calamities in the country, aeroplanes and helicopter are helpful in deploying army and weapons to control the situations.
- During natural calamity like flood, famine, drought, earthquake etc. planes are used for supplying life medicines and other essential commodities to the people.
- At the time of war, airways is the medium of transporting weapons to the soldiers and to take them out of enemy area and also to bombard the enemy.
- Air transport also saves time in taking the post to long distance area.
- Airways are the best medium for people working for country's welfare, development, commerce and industry because this is a fast medium.
- Tourist also uses air transport to visit places in the country. This helps in getting crores of foreign exchange in the country.



Intext Questions 13.4

Write the following names: -

a) Names of any two international airports?

(i) _____ (ii) _____

b) Names of any two internal air routes?

(i) _____ (ii) _____

13.5 Communication Revlution

Shiv Kumar's father passed away at 6 AM in morning. Shiv Kumar's uncle lived at a distance of 40 K.M. He and other family members should know this death. A few neighbours decided to help him. One man boarded the bus for the city. One went by motorcycle and the other by bicycle. As information passed people came. Only Shiv Kumar's sister Savitri could not come. People thought that the crèmentation cannot be delayed. It should be done before sunset. Savita came late and could not see the last rites of her father.



Figure 13.10 : Means of communication

This was the time when mobile phone were not in use. Telephone facility was limited to a few rich people only. But times have changed now. Phones are now available in every household in cities and villages. Every information reaches in seconds. This is the miracle of telecom revolution.

Means of telecom

By communication we mean that we convey our message to other people. Further, telecom means that we give our message to the person sitting in far off places. These places are far off as we cannot reach there or are present there. But your message reaches there. This happens by some means, known as telecom communication. Let us know more about them.

Telephone

Telephone was invented by Graham Bell in 1876. Earlier, telephone was used by a few rich people important departments and offices. Telephone lines are laid down for the telephone service. Therefore these phones are known as basic phones or fixed line phones. The use of phones increased day by day and they found a place in every common household. But, still this facility was confined to cities and suburban areas. However, these phones also have a problem with facilities. Telephone poles should be erected for the facility. Pole and wires also loosen with heavy rains and storms, the wires get far away. Therefore, the telephone does not work.



Fig 13.11 : Telephone

Telephone services are provided by BSNL. BSNL stands for Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited. This organization works under central government. Various private companies are also working in this sector. Telecom Revolution has made telephone as a medium of business. PCO has been opened for people. People can pay money and talk to other people. However, increased mobile use made PCO to shut down. Only one or two PCOs can be seen now a days.

Wireless (Without Wire)

Wireless is a form of telephone. This does not require poles and wires. Therefore, this is known as wireless. Wireless system was invented by a scientist, Marconi. This helped in delivery of a message to a number of places in a very short time. This is used by police and army.

Mobile Phone

Everybody is familiar with mobile phone. Every place like village, city, suburban areas have mobile connectivity. This is the cheapest and best facility mode of communication in far off places. In the beginning, these phones were limited to rich people. Mobile phone was considered to be a symbol of status. Telecom revolution has made available mobile phone to everybody. Vendors, farmers, laborers and rickshaw pullers etc. use mobile phones. Even illiterate people can use mobile phones easily.

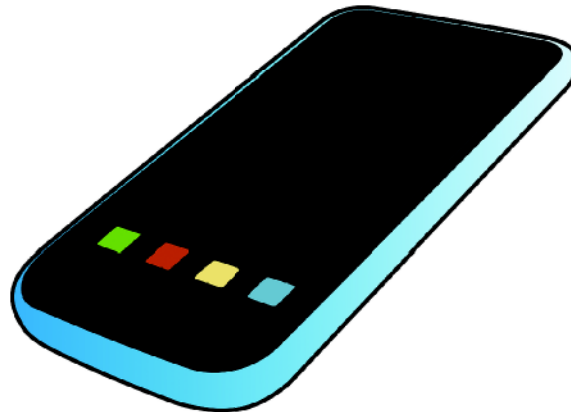


Fig 13.12 : Mobile Phone

Due to new technology, mobile phones are not only the means of talking. Various other facilities of the world are also made easy with technology development. Uses of torch and wrist watches have declined. Wrist watch companies are facing financial crisis. Mobile phones have camera facility for clicking of photos and making videos. FM Radio is also connected in mobile phones. Songs can be recorded on the phone. Mobile phones also have Internet facilities. Internet facilities have brought world close to a person. E-mail can also be sent through phones. Facebook and twitter etc can be updated and films can be seen on phone. Rail and bus tickets can also be booked through a phone. Phone banking is also available on mobile phone. Electricity and Water bills can be deposited by phone. Also, gas cylinder can be booked by means of phone. Sale and purchase of various items are done by mobile phones. Mobile phones have all the miracles of modern age, which help one in reaching the world.

Internet

Internet has also become a necessary instrument today. Internet is a revolution in communication world. Any information can be accessed via internet in a short span of time. We can learn anything from Internet. We can read books on internet. If we want to know the way, then we can easily access to the correct path by using GPS on internet. The best part is that this can be organized by mobile phones even when we are on the move.



Fig 13.13 : Internet

Importance of telecommunications in the development of the country

- Telecom has made the economic, social and political life of the country dynamic and simple.
- Telephone, wireless and mobile phone have made administration easy and is a key element in maintaining law and order.
- Internet and mobile phones are used to run industries and business.
- In case of any mishap or natural calamities, telephones and mobile phones help in giving aid to the suffering people.
- We can send our message to people sitting in any corner of the world.
- We can book tickets by sitting at home. These tickets can be of rail, bus and air services.
- Radio, television and cinema hall tickets can be booked for entertainment purpose.
- Mobile phone are successfully working in rural areas.
- Forest, Mountains, plains, desert etc also have mobile connectivity.



Intext Questions 13.5

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option: -

(Marconi, Graham Bell, Photo, Reach/send)

- By communication we mean to _____ our message to others.
- Telephone was invented by _____.
- Wireless was invented by a scientist named _____.
- By using mobile, one can click _____.



What you have learnt

- Means of transport are placed into three categories, namely, land transport, water transport and air transport.
- Roads are connected to mountains, plateaus, plains, desert, barren land and hilly areas for the movement of goods and passengers.
- Roads in our country have a total length of around 33 lakh Kilometres.
- India has 77 national highways with a total length of 70935 Kilometres.
- National highways connect state capitals, big cities and ports. These also connect neighboring countries like Myanmar, Pakistan, Nepal, Bhutan and Tibet.
- State highways connect district headquarters and major cities.
- District roads connect districts with national highways and state highways. These further connect those places where rail networks are not possible. Village roads connect villages to main districts.
- Railways started in our country in 1853.
- First railway track was built between Mumbai to Thane.
- Indian railways is Asia's biggest railway network. It stands fourth in world ranking.
- Around 10 lakh people work in Indian railways.
- Indian railways is under central government. It has 16 railway zones.
- Metro railways work in big cities like Mumbai, New Delhi, Kolkata and Lucknow.
- In India bullet train will arrive soon. Bullet trains are fast and are more comfortable.

- Waterways is a cheap, easy and old means of transport.
- Inland waterways include boats, motorboats and steamer whereas Marine waterways include steamer and ships.
- Our country has ocean routes, having 12 big and 148 small ports.
- Indian ships run on every water route of the world.
- Airways include aeroplanes and helicopters.
- India started air transport in the year 1920.
- Internal flights take places under Indian airlines. Indian airlines (name) has been changed to Indian.
- Long distance international routes are taken by Air India.
- Pawan Hans Helicopter provides services to private companies, state governments, government undertakings.
- Private air services are provided by Sahara Airways and Jet Airways in our country.
- India has 12 international and more than 20 national airports.
- Telecommunication medium are telephone, wireless and mobile phone.
- Watch, torch, camera, recording and internet facilities are provided by mobile phone.
- Internet is a revolution in communication world, providing information at home.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option: -

- The means of transport running on water are known as _____ transport.
(Land/Air/Water)
- Passenger train stop on every small _____ in its route.
(suburban/village/station)
- Metro rail is run for transport facilities of _____.
(Village/City/Tunnel)
- _____ are those places where ships stop and goods are exported and imported.
(Ports/restplace/hotels)

- e) Water ways are _____ gift, so there is no construction expenses in them.
(Nature/Science/Government)
- f) _____ was merged in Indian Airline in the year 1992-93.
(Vayadut/Pawan Hans/Air India)

2. Answer the following question: -

- a) What are the three categories of means of transport?

- b) Which is oldest roadways or railways?

- c) Construction and maintenance of state highway is done by whom?

- d) Indian railways are under which government ?

- e) How many big ports are there in India?

- f) How many international airports are there in our country?

- g) Who discovered telephone and when?

- h) Write down the full form of BSNL?

3. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (✗) the wrong one: -

- a) Metro rail runs near the coastal areas ()
- b) The maximum transportation in roads is done by trucks ()
- c) Indian railways are largest in Asian Sub-continent ()
- d) Ports are those places where railway passengers wait for their trains ()
- e) Writers are mostly used by police and army ()

4. Match the following

Column A

Rail

Steamer

Broad Gauge

Rail Zones

International Airports

Telephone

Helicopter

Column B

Air Transport

Telecom

Land Transport

Water Transport

Big Railway line

Twelve

Sixteen

5. Write the uses of mobile phone in detail?

Let us do it

- Talk to your elders that when there was no road development or facility of tempos then how patients were taken to hospital and were cured. What were the ways of treating them?
- Also ask them that when telephones and mobile phones were not in use how the information of death reached the relatives. What were the difficulties faced by people in this process?
- Note down all the information provided. Compare it with the facilities now a days.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

- 13.1 (i) Land Transport (ii) Roads
(iii) Highways (iv) Product
- 13.2 (i) 1853 (ii) Central Government
(iii) 16 (iv) City
- 13.3 (i) Ganga, Brahmaputra, Godavari etc. (ii) Kolkata, Haldiya etc.
(iii) Boat, Steamer etc. (iv) Suez Canal, Utmasha etc.
- 13.4 (i) Indira Gandhi National Airport, Chatrapati Shivaji International airport etc.
(ii) Mumbai - Mangalore - Chennai, Chennai - Hyderabad - Delhi etc.
- 13.5 (i) Reached (ii) Graham Bell
(iii) Marconi (iv) Photo

Terminal Questions

1. A) Water B) Station C) Cities
D) Ports E) Nature F) Vayadut
2. A) Land Transport, Water Transport & Air Transport
B) Road Transport C) State Government
D) Central Government E) 12 F) 12
G) 1876, Graham Bell H) Bharat Sanchar Nigam Limited
3. A) ✗ B) ✓ C) ✓
D) ✗ E) ✓
4. A) Rail - Land Transport B) Steamer - Water Transport
C) Broad Gauge - Big Railway Line D) Rail Zone - Sixteen
E) International Airport - Twelve F) Telephone -
G) Helicopter - Air Transport

Population Explosion and Population Control

India ranks second in terms of population. Population has been rising in India at a considerable speed. Various problems are associated with population growth. These problems are social, economic and environmental.

Increase in population is directly related to birth rate. Birth rate increases and death rate declines, thereby increase the population. This same thing has happened in our country also. One more issue has cropped up in this relation. This is the sex ratio, where women are less as compared to men.

Our government has made national population policy to enhance the quality of life and decrease the speed of population explosion. Various measures have been taken in this regard by the government and the people.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

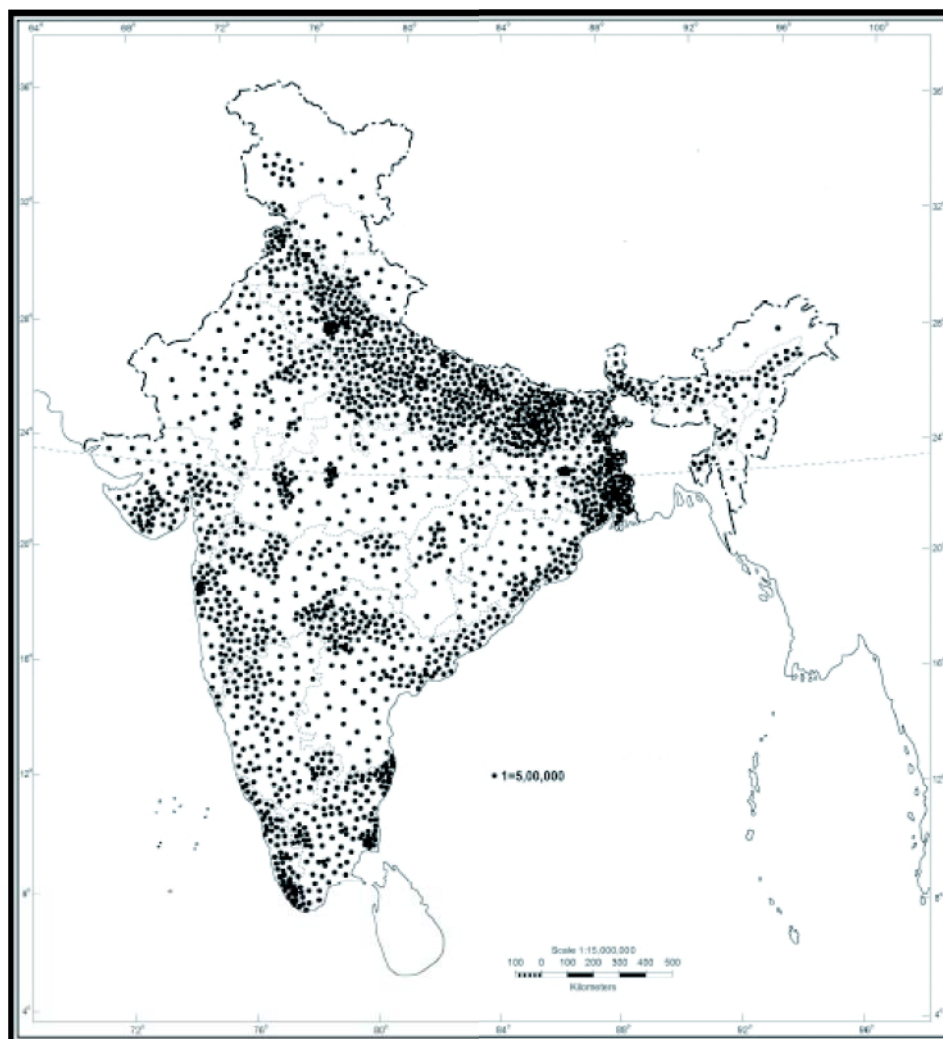
- Define population explosion;
- Examine the social and economic effects of population explosion;
- Explain birth rate and death rate;
- Calculate sex ratio;
- Discuss reasons for decrease in sex ratio;
- Explain measures for population control and
- Discuss the national population policy.

14.1 Meaning of Population

Population means the number of people. The number of people living in a state or country is known as its population.

Our country has its census in every ten years. Census means counting of people. Last census was held in 2011. At that time, census officers must have reached your home too. They must have counted the people and asked a few things like condition of house, cattlestock at home, earning source etc.

Government gets a lot of information about people in framing the policies for the development of nation. According to 2011 census, the total population of our country was about 1 billion 22 crores.



Based upon Survey of India Outline Map printed in 1950.
The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate base line.
The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1971, but has yet to be verified.
Responsibility for correctness of internal details shown on the map rests with the publisher.

© Government of India copyright, 1996.

Fig. 14.1 : Distribution of population in India

14.2 What is Population Explosion ?

Rapid increase in population is known as population explosion. Look around yourself, you will find a crowd and only a crowd. We cannot find space to sit in trains or buses. There is a long cue present in hospitals. We see crowd everywhere. Think, what are the causes behind it?

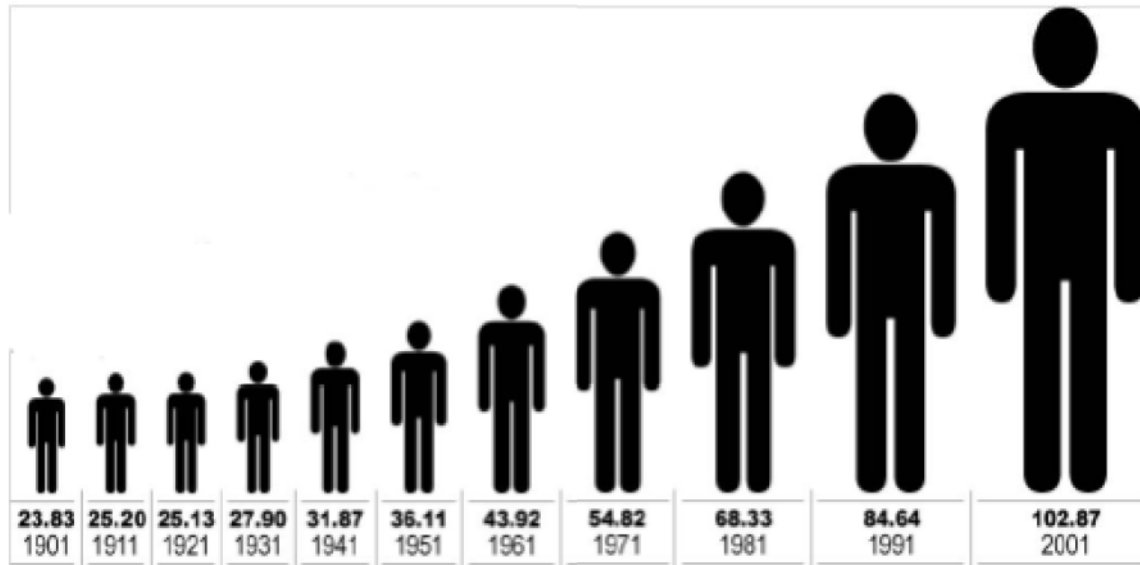


Fig. 14.2 : decade growth of population in India

All this happened because of unprecedented growth in our country in population. According to an estimate 33 children are born every minute in our country. In this way, 2000 children are born in an hour. This makes the tally to 48000 per day. If we continue this calculation to a year, it becomes 1 crore 75 lakh. You will be surprised to know that some of the countries in the world have less population than this figure.

Let us see an example of population explosion- the population of our country was 25.20 crores in 1911, meaning 25 crores 20 lakhs. Now in 2011 it is 122 crores. This means it has increased five times in 100 years.

There are two causes of population increase :-

1. Increasing birth rate
2. Decreasing death rate

Increasing birth rate is caused by poverty, illiteracy and social and religious assumptions. Development and awareness of health facilities lead to decrease in death rate.

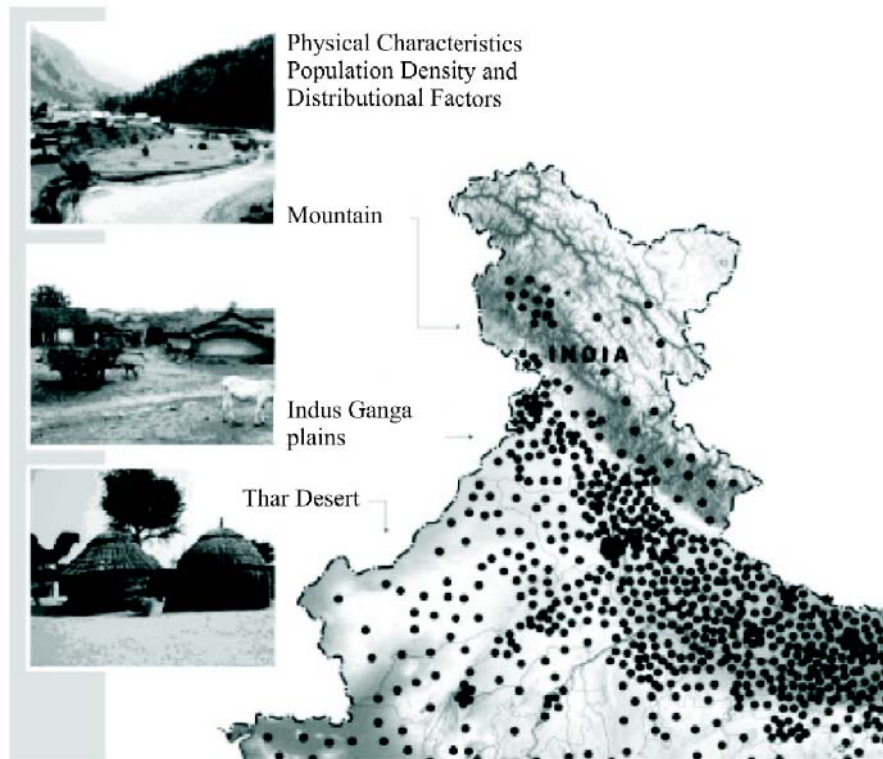


Fig. 14.3 : Physical factors affecting population

Let us know about the effects of increasing population

14.3 Effects of Increasing Population

As you all know, India stands second in terms of population. China stands first in this regard but it has large area than us. In terms of area, India stands seventh in the world. If this speed goes on, we will leave behind China in 2025. Think, what will be the condition then.

Population is considered to be the human power house of any country. This can be used as a resource for the development of the country. Resources are those means which are used in a better way. But increasing population hinders the country's development. The increasing population has a social, economic and environmental effect.

Social Effect

You might be reading in newspaper that unemployment is increasing day by day. Have you ever thought why people are not getting work? Why less work is provided to the unemployed? This is because people are more and work is less. How can everybody get work? If people do not get work, they go on the wrong path which is known as crime.

Major effect of over population include,

1. Increasing slum areas
2. Less civic services
3. Less opportunities for employment
4. Increasing crimes

Economic Effect

More population has less items on an average for use. If we take example of land, (which we can't increase) but people using it are increasing day by day. 25 crore people used to live 100 years ago on the same land, now 122 crore people live on the same land. Therefore, land division is very less among people. Then the question comes how to sustain life ?

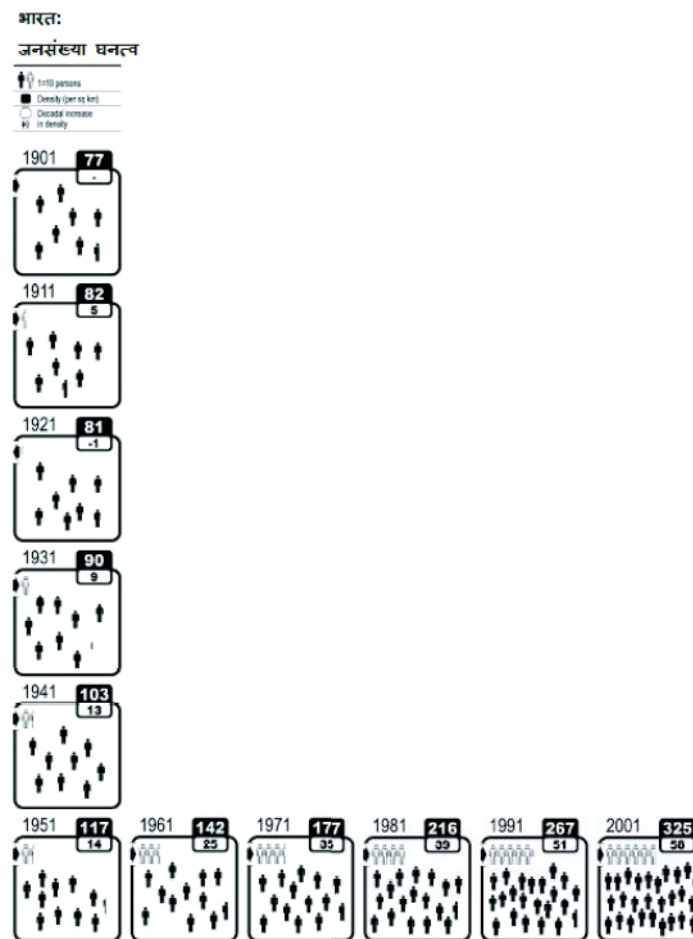


Fig 14.4 : Population Density

Look at yours own family - how much your grandfather had, do you have the same amount of land? No, The land was divided among your father and uncle (Chacha, Tauji). Then your father's land was divided between you and your siblings (Brother - Sister). Think how much you received. This happens with everybody. Our country has limited resources of water, coal, iron, petrol etc. but their use is increasing day by day. Therefore, these items are imported from other countries leading to economic pressure on the

country. The amount that could be used for the benefit for the country, is used for this purpose.

People always complain that the economic policies of the country do not benefit everybody. Although, policies are framed for everybody's benefit yet the rapid rate of increasing population creates difficulty in this goal. Therefore, everybody does not get benefit from these policies.

A famous economist Malthus has given a population theory. His theory stated that production increases 1-2-3-4-5 and population increased 1-2-4-8-16. Production doesn't increase with population, and, therefore the equilibrium of demand supply gets disturbed. This gap of demand and supply can be brought down by decreasing the rate of population decrease.

Environmental Effect

Population affects environment. More people, need more houses. For more houses, more land is required. For more land, trees are cut down. This changes climate; the water level of the land also goes down.

Means of transport also increase with increasing population. Road is an essential requirement for means of transport. For constructing roads, forests are cleared. Thus means of transport also increase pollution.

For meeting the requirements, new industries also come up. Factories also have their way. This increase air and water pollution.



Intext Questions 14.1

1. What do you mean by population?

2. After how many years does Census take place?

3. What is population explosion?

4. What are the environmental effects of increasing population?

14.4 Birth rate and Death Rate

Birth Rate

Birth rate means the number of living children per thousand in a particular year. Let us understand this with an example. Let the population of a village be 5000. Last year 150 living children were born. Then birth

rate will be calculated as

$$= \frac{150}{5000} \times 1000 = 30$$

Then, the birth rate of the village is 30.

Death Rate

Death Rate refers to the number of dead people per thousand in a particular year. It is calculated in the same way as birth. Let us take the example of the same village. Let us assume that 100 people died last year in the village, then death rate will be calculated as: -

$$= \frac{100}{5000} \times 1000 = 20$$

Therefore, the death rate of the village is 20.

It is also to be noted that total population is considered in the mid of year i.e. in six months of the previous year.

- The difference between birth rate and death rate tell us the rate of population growth. This is known as population growth rate.
- This can be computed as Birth Rate - Death Rate. In the above example, the population growth rate is equal to $30 - 20 = 10$.
- Our country had a high birth rate and death rate. This helps in maintaining the population equilibrium.

In the year 1911, the birth rate was 49.2, death rate was 42.6. This way, the population growth rate is equal to $49.2 - 42.6 = 6.6$. This explains that the population increased 6.6 per thousand. This can also be explained that less than 7 people increased per thousand in a year.

Causes for high birth rate

1. The theory that if there are more children more hands will be available for work.
2. Low level of education
3. Marriage at a younger age
4. Desire for a baby boy.

Let us pay attention to the birth rate and death rate of 2011. The birth rate in 2011 was 24.97 which is less than in 1911. Death rate also declined to 7.48. Therefore, the population growth rate of 2011 was $24.97 - 7.48 = 17.49$ that is, every year more than 17 people were added to per thousand. Thus, the population growth rate increased in 2011.

This explains the fact that if the difference between birth rate and death rate is less, than the rate of

population, growth in also less; if this gap is large, then the rate is also high.

Reason for low death rate in 2011

1. Empowerment in health services.
2. Awareness in people

There was less birth rate in 2011.

The reasons behind this are: -

1. Increase in literary level
2. Awareness of people in small families.
3. Family welfare schemes of government etc.

Note:

Register every birth and death of your family.

14.5 Sex Ratio

By sex ratio one means the number of female on per thousand males. This is calculated as: -

$$\text{Sex Ratio} = \frac{\text{Number of Female}}{\text{Number of Male}} \times 1000$$

Suppose, the number of females in a village is 1800 and the number of males is 2000, than six ratio will be,

$$= \frac{1800}{2000} \times 1000 = 900$$

This means, that the number of females per thousand males is 900.

It is also known that those countries or societies are considered good where the number of males and females are equal or the gap is very less or the number of females are more than males.

The condition of women ratio is not good in our country. The census of 2011 states that the number of women per thousand men is 943. In the census of 1911 this figure was 964. Therefore, the number of females decreased in hundred years.

According to 2011 census in one state Kerala and one Union territory, Pondicherry the number of women is more than number of men. Kerala has 1084 female per 1000 males and Pondicherry has 1037 female per 1000 males. Rest all union territories and states have more males than females. Some states and union territories are in a bad shape. Daman and Diu has the least number of females in per thousand males. Here the number is 618. Next is Dadar and Nagar Haveli which is 775. Chandigarh, Delhi and Haryana are also in bad condition. Here, the sex ratio is less than 900.

Causes for less number of females as compared to males.

Our society gives more importance to boys than girls. People want that their family should give birth to boys and not girls. Therefore, people abort female child which is illegal. Government has framed a new law known as Pre Natal Diagnostic Techniques Act, 1994 This act exacts that if any ultrasound testing is done to know the gender of the child, then that the doctor gets punished. This has reduced the abortion cases. However, these have not ended the problem fully. This is the main reason for less females in comparison to males.



Intext Questions 14.2

1. What is birth rate ?

2. What do you mean by population growth rate?

3. What are the main causes of death rate?

4. What is meant by sex ratio?

14.6 Measures of population control

Our country required to check the increasing population long time back. Family planning program started in 1952 which is the oldest program in the world. The main goal of the program is to make people aware about small families. Various methods were used to keep population in control but the program failed to create an impact among masses. The major reasons for this were:

1. Services could not reach people
2. Social fear
3. Disapproval of husband
4. Contraceptive medicines - their side effects and worries.
5. Lack of knowledge

To control the rate of population growth, two methods are used: -

1. Direct method - These involve family planning services and advices are provided free of cost to the people.

2. Indirect method - These include
 - a) Literacy
 - b) Improvement in the positive attitude about females.
 - c) Improvement in quality of life.

These do not show effect directly on population control but these are quite effective in this regard.

14.7 National Population Policy

This policy was framed in 2000 in our country. The main objective was to control the population and enhance the quality of living of the people. This policy states stagnation of population till 2045. By stagnation of population we mean, after that the growth rate of population becomes zero. This policy also states that the fixation of population is related to economic and social growth with environmental conservation. This policy focuses on environmental conservation and the economic and social development of people. It does not control population directly. Wellness and well being of people is priority here.

The major points of national population policy are: -

1. Uplift of the living style of people, that is providing them with better opportunities.
2. Increasing the well being or welfare of people.
3. Preparing humans as human resources.
4. For sustainable growth.
5. Increasing the number of health programs.
6. Providing basic services for health
7. Stress on contraception methods
8. Emphasis on mother and child health
9. Lower birth rate and death rate



Intext Questions 14.3

1. When did family program start in our country?

2. What are the causes of low impact of family planning program?

3. When was India's national population policy framed?

4. What is population stagnation?



What you have learnt

- In terms of population, India is second in the world.
- By population we mean the number of people.
- Census is held in our country after every ten years.
- Increase in population at a fast speed is known as population explosion.
- The population of our country in 1911 was 25.20 crores.
- In 2011 the population increased to 122 crores.
- There are two causes of population increase: -
 - Increasing Birth Rate
 - Decreasing Death Rate
- According to estimate, we will leave China behind in 2025. Population increase affects in social, economical and environmental spheres.
- Increasing population leads to unemployment. The resources are reduced. Increase of means of transport thereby increase air and water pollution.
- Economist Malthus predicts growth of production to be 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 and growth of population to be 1 - 2 - 4 - 8 - 16. This produces gap between demand and supply.
- The number of children born per thousand in a year is known as birth rate.
- The number of people died per thousand in a year is known as death rate.
- Reducing death rate from birth rate gives us the rate of population increase.
- The main reason for reduction in death rate in our country are - improvement in health services, awareness about health etc.
- Sex ratio means the number of women per thousand.
- Only Kerala and Pondicherry in our country have a better sex ratio. Other states and union territories lack in th number of females.

- The reason for less number of females are - female foeticide deaths and giving more importance to boys than girls.
- Government has declared female foeticide illegal and knowing the gender of the child through ultra sound is also illegal.
- India started family planning program in 1952.
- This is the oldest family planning program in the world.
- Various pregnancy contraception methods are used to control population.
- Government hospital advises them free of cost.
- National population policy was built in 2000.
- This policy affirms population stagnation stage till 2000.
- Population stagnation means that the population growth rate becomes zero.
- This policy not only emphasises small families but also tries to improve the living standards of the people.



Terminal Questions

1. What are the effects of increase in population?

2. Write the main causes of increasing birth rate?

3. Fill in the blanks

India ranks _____ in terms of area in the world.

If population increases by this rate, then we will leave China behind in the year _____.

In terms of population, India ranks _____.

Sex ratio means number of _____ per _____ males.

National population policy states population stagnation till the year _____.

4. If the birth of boys keeps taking place in place of girls, then what kind of problems will be faced by us?

5. What are the benefits of small family?
-

Let us do it

Calculate the birth rate and death rate of your village or locality.

Calculate the sex ratio of your village or locality.

Answer key

Intext Questions

14.1 1. Number of people

2. Ten Years

3. Rapid increase in population

4. Trees are cut climate gets changed and air and water pollution increases.

14.2 1. Number of children born per thousand in a year

2. Birth rate minus death rate

3. Improvement in health services and health awareness

4. Number of females per thousand males.

14.3 1. 1952

2. Lack of services, social fear, husband disagreement, side effects of Pregnancy Contraception pills, lack of knowledge etc

3. In year 2000

4. Population growth should become zero

Terminal Questions

1. Unemployment increases. This leads to crime and lack of resources, economic burden of the country increases people get less resources.

2. Poverty, illiteracy, social and religious assumptions.

3. (i) Seventh

(ii) 2025

(iii) Second

(iv) Females, thousand

(v) 2045

4. Think yourself and write.

5. Think yourself and write.

Economic Life

We have infinite and ever growing needs. There are two types of needs- economic and non-economic. The things for which we do not have to spend money come under non-economic needs. The things for which we have to spend money come under economic needs. In order to meet these needs, economic activities began because the need of one becomes the livelihood of another. The production of anything is not done independently by a single person. Many people are needed for this. Household works are also done collectively by all the members. This is called division of labour. Similarly, in large factories work is done by division of labour.

Nowadays we avail things and services from the market itself. We pay a price for them. The government doesnot have control over the market of India. Most of the markets of goods and services are free markets. This is also called market system. In this system, the prices of the goods and services are determined by the manufacturer.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Difference between economic and non-economic needs;
- Explain the effects of needs on economic life;
- Define division of labour;
- Explain the advantages of division of labour;
- Examine the status of women's participation in economic development and
- Explain the meaning of market economy.

15.1 Needs and Economic Life

Every living being needs certain basic things to live. They are- air, water and food. Life is not possible without them. Apart of these, there is another need, i.e. accommodation or residence. Human beings also need clothes along with these things. Apart from these, humans have to meet many other needs as well. This list of needs keeps increasing with time.

Earlier, humans used to live in the forests- in caves or on the trees. They ate the plants and fruits whenever they felt hungry and drank water from the waterfalls or rivers. They made weapons from stone. They used to kill and eat the wild animals. Then they started farming, discovered fire, started growing grains, made huts to live in. They began eating cooked grains. They made animals their pet and began animal rearing. Then families and communities were made, and social life began. Humans did not limit themselves to the present and started to think about the future. They began collecting and storing things for the future. When they did not have something which they needed, they took it from another person in the community and gave something that belonged to them in return. This is how business started in the form of barter. The field of trade also gradually increased. Business began even outside the community.

Two types of needs- economic and non-economic

There is no limit to needs. We have to pay a price for most of our needs. These needs can be of goods as well as services. The needs for which we have to pay a price are called 'economic needs'.

There are some needs for which we do not have to pay anything. We do not have to buy these from the market. We need air to breathe but we do not have to pay for it. We also do not pay for rain. Without paying anything the rain irrigates the farms. These needs are called 'non-economic needs'. But if we take water from the government canal for irrigation, it will be called an economic need.

Difference between wants and needs : usually we consider wants and needs as the same but that is not so. Our wants are unlimited. But every want cannot become a need. Only that want is a need which can be met by the use of those resources which we have and which we also want to use.

For example- Our wish is to have a house. But we do not have money to build a house, then this wish is just a want and not a need. But if we have money and we are ready to spend this money on building the house then this want can be called a need.

Needs and economic activities: needs begin with our birth. A child needs milk after taking birth. Then clothes, and medicines for illnesses. Gradually these needs increase. We need different types of food and clothes, a home to live in, a vehicle to travel, different types of things for comfort in homes, television, phone, bed, table and chair. There is no end to this list.



Image 15.1: need of one, livelihood of another

We have to work to meet these needs. Needs cannot be fulfilled without working and only thinking. We must cook if we want to eat. We have to buy things to make food. Everything cannot grow in our house. We buy these things from the shopkeeper in the market. Shopkeepers also do not make or grow these things. They buy them from some other place. Therefore, everything goes through many hands before it reaches us. Somebody grows or makes it, somebody packs it while somebody carries it to the big shopkeepers. Big shopkeepers deliver to the small shopkeepers. From there, those things reach us.

This is how our need is associated with the livelihood of so many people, that is why it is said that a need of somebody becomes the livelihood of another. It is needs which have given rise to economic activities. We can say that if there were no needs, there wouldnot have been any economic activities. There have been many new discoveries due to these needs.

Some of the things which we need are free of cost. We get these things from nature. We have to pay a price for certain things. Most of these things are man-made. Services are also similar. Many services are free of cost, for example- the care taking of children by the parents. But some services are paid services, for example- hair cutting, clothes stitching, shoe repair etc.



Intext Questions

15.1

1. Put a tick mark on the correct sentence and cross mark on the wrong sentence -

- (a) There is no difference between needs and wants. ()
- (b) Needs are unlimited. ()
- (c) The need of one becomes the livelihood of another. ()
- (d) Teaching a child at home is an economic activity. ()
- (e) Needs are the basis of all economic activities. ()

2. Put a tick mark to show which activity is economic and which is non-economic-

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) Morning walk | Economic/non-economic |
| (b) Buying vegetables | Economic/non-economic |
| (c) Teaching a child at home | Economic/non-economic |
| (d) Carpenter repairing his bed | Economic/non-economic |
| (e) Run rickshaw on rent | Economic/non-economic |

15.2 Division of Labour

You must have seen in your house- household chores, everybody works together for farming. If someone cultivates the land then another flattens it. Somebody irrigates and sows the seeds while another cooks and brings food for the people working in the field. This is called division of work. The burden of work does not fall on only one member and it also takes less time. This is called division of labour.

Earlier, when there were joint families the division of labour in household chores was very common. One member did the cleaning of the house while the other did the cooking of food. Somebody gave water and food to the animals while other filled water. This was the quality and strength of joint families. Now joint families are gradually decreasing that is why division of labour in household chores is seen less in the families.

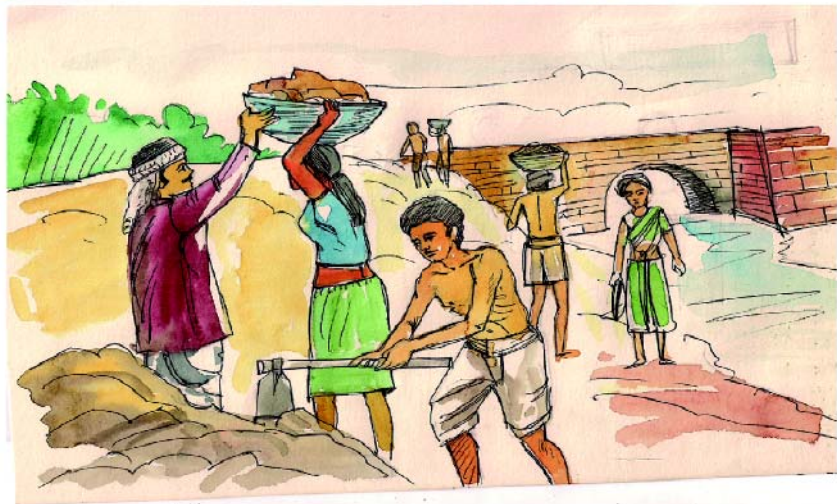


Image 15.2: division of labour

Division of labour is also seen where something is manufactured. Look into the big shops of clothes stitching- it's not just one person who does all the work. Somebody does the cutting of clothes, somebody stitches, somebody makes the buttonhole and somebody hems the cloth. The same process is followed in large factories. Let's suppose that a big machine is to be made. So the whole machine is not made in one place. Not just one mechanic makes it. The different parts and fittings are made by different mechanics. Then all these are assembled to make a machine. This is division of labour.

Division of labour is also based on age and gender. Heavy work is not given to aged people and women. Similarly, there are certain jobs which are mostly given to women. For example- factories of watches usually have women workers. It is usually female nurses who take care of the patients in the hospitals.

Advantages of division of labour: there are many advantages of division of labour. Its main advantages are-

1. Work burden gets divided: the burden of work does not fall only on one member. Work gets divided.

2. Saves time: division of labour also saves time. If only one person does a work, it will take a lot of time. But if that work is done by four people together, then it will take less time. In this manner there is more production in less time in the factories.
3. Become a master in ones field: if a person continuously does a work he/she becomes a master of it. This improves the productivity and quality. Moreover, the master worker also gets more wages for his labour.
4. Optimum use of capacity: if a worker is given that kind of work in which he/she is a master, then it will be an optimum use of his/her capacity. This can be done through division of labour.
5. The scope of mistakes gets minimised: when people work for things in which they specialise then the quality of work is good. The scope of mistakes in work also gets minimised. This improves the quality of production and minimises losses.
6. Increases employment: more people get employed as all the work is not done by only one person because of division of labour.

15.3 Participation of Women in Economic Growth

Economy can be divided into three sectors on the basis of economic activities:

1. Primary sector
2. Secondary sector
3. Tertiary sector

1. **Primary sector** : agriculture, animal husbandry, fisheries and such activities are included in this. All these activities include natural resources. This is the oldest sector of economic activities. In ancient times, when humans started doing economic activities they used only natural resources. With the gradual development, activities of other sectors also began.



Image 15.3: participation of women in primary sector

2. **Secondary sector:** industry-business, construction of houses etc, supply of electricity etc and such work comes under secondary sector.
3. **Tertiary sector:** activities associated with services come under tertiary sector, such as- hair cutting, stitching clothes, repairing shoes, advocacy, teaching, engineering etc., transportation services, bank etc. These do not produce anything but give us services and meet our needs. Some government services are also included in these, such as- transportation, post, telecommunications etc.

All these sectors are connected with each other and are also dependent on each other.

Most of the women work in the primary sector. Even today most of India's population is associated with agriculture. The work related to agriculture is mostly done by women that is why the number of women working in the primary sector is more.

The number of women working in the primary sector is comparatively more than in the secondary sector. However, now the participation of women in this sector is increasing. The number of women in the tertiary sector is also less. According to a rating only 14% of the total women in the urban region are associated with economic activities. In the villages, 30% of women are associated with economic activities. This means that the percentage of women involved in economic activities in the villages is higher than in the cities. This is mainly due to the association of women with agriculture and animal husbandry.

Mostly those jobs come in the secondary sector for which people get salaries. Even in the tertiary sector many workers associated with services are salaried. The number of women is less in these sectors. This shows that the number of salaried women is less than 10% of the total salaried people.

Self employment is one sector in which a large number of women are involved. Approximately 37% of self employed people is women.

Reasons of less number of women in secondary and tertiary sectors: The main reasons behind less number of women in secondary and tertiary sectors are:

1. **Lack of work of these sectors in rural areas and small towns:** there is less work of secondary and tertiary sector in areas and small towns. Men go out to work in nearby cities but women are left in the villages.
2. **Social conditions:** even today many families do not consider women going to work as good. A sense of insecurity also prevents women from working away from home.
3. **Low literacy rate:** even today the literacy rate of women is less than men. The technical competency rate is also lower than men. This is also a reason for less number of women in the secondary and tertiary sectors.

**1. Put a tick mark on the correct sentence and cross on the wrong sentence-**

- (a) Time is saved through division of labour. ()
- (b) Division of labour puts the excess load of work on only one worker. ()
- (c) The work associated with services comes under primary sector. ()
- (d) One of the reasons of less association of women in the economic activities is social conditions. ()
- (e) Division of labour was seen less in the joint families. ()

15.3 Market Economy

First, let us understand what 'market' is. Market is a place where buyers and sellers buy and sell goods and services. People who sell are sellers or service providers and people who buy are buyers or consumers. It is not necessary that this buying and selling will happen face to face. Buyers and sellers are not necessarily in the same place. Nowadays buying and selling is also done through phone and internet. We can place our order through phone or internet. Our order gets delivered to our house. This also widens the area of market.

For a market it is necessary to have a demand for goods or services and an attempt to supply the same. This means that it is a two way transaction. It depends on the demand and supply of the goods and service.

There are various types of markets. On the basis of government control market has been divided into two categories:

1. Free market or open market, and
2. Controlled market.



Image 15.4: free market



Image 15.5 : controlled market

Government has no control over free market. It also does not have any control over the prices of the goods or services being sold in the market. The government does not even intervene in the quantity of the goods being sold that's why the buying and selling of goods happens in the free market. Prices are decided on the basis of demand and supply. Most of the markets of goods and services in India are 'free market'. But the control over many goods is in the hands of the government. That is why India is called a country of mixed economy.

In a controlled market the price and quantity of goods is controlled by the government. This is done for the convenience of the consumers. The ration shops in India are a form of controlled market.

Market economy is a completely free economy.

Ways of attracting buyers in market economy: in market economy many manufacturers can manufacture the same goods. In such an economy there are many options available to the consumer. This means that he/she can choose similar products from different companies. That is why every company tries to attract consumers. Various methods are adopted for this-

- 1. Fixing low prices:** this is the most successful method. Any company can fix lower prices of their products as compared to other companies. This will attract the consumers to buy their product in a lower price. If the consumers begin to like that product, then the company gradually increases the price of it.
- 2. Providing good services and facilities:** many sellers or companies give some facilities to the consumers, such as giving goods on instalment, providing home delivery, giving free service for a

certain period of time after the selling it etc. This also attracts consumers to buy the products from that company or seller.

3. **Improvement in quality:** the quality of a product also attracts consumers. They also buy products at a high price if its quality is good.
4. **Strategies of increasing sales:** sellers exercise various strategies for this, such as- giving free presents, buy one get one free offers, giving presents through lottery, etc.
5. **Advertisement:** advertisement is the most successful means of reaching the consumers in a market economy. Informing the consumers about the products has become very easy through the newspapers, radio, television, internet. Consumers can know about the price and features of the products from their homes. This is how the consumers can know about the advantages and drawbacks of the products of different companies.



Intext Questions

15.3

1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blank-

- (a) On the basis of government control markets are of two types- free market and market. (Open/controlled)
- (b) In free market prices are decided on the basis of demand and (Production/supply)
- (c) India is a country of economy. (Capitalist/mixed)
- (d) India is a place where buyers and sellers and sell goods and services. (Watch/buy)



What you have learnt

- Everybody needs air, water and food to survive.
- Humans also need a lodging and clothes.
- Earlier humans used to live in forests and their needs were also less.
- Gradually needs began increasing.
- Needs are of two types- economic and non economic.
- We do not have to pay anything to meet our non economic needs. To meet our economic needs we have to pay a price.

- Wants are unlimited.
- The want which can be met by the use of those resources which we have and which we also want to use, is called a need.
- We have to work to meet our needs.
- The need of one becomes the livelihood of another.
- When many people do a work together, it is called division of labour.
- The work load gets divided, time is saved, the worker becomes an expert in his/her work, there is an optimum use of the capacity of the worker, the scope of mistakes gets minimised, there is an increase in employment through division to labour.
- Economy can be divided into three sectors on the basis of economic activities- Primary, Secondary, Tertiary.
- Activities like agriculture, animal husbandry come under primary sector. Activities like industry-business, construction of houses come under secondary sector. Service-area is included in the tertiary sector.
- Service-area means those activities which are not involved in production but through which we can meet our needs.
- Most of the women work in the primary sector.
- Approximately 37% women in India are associated with self employment activities.
- The main reasons behind less number of women in secondary and tertiary sectors are- lack of work of these sectors in rural areas and small towns, social conditions, low literacy rate.
- Market is a place where buyers and sellers buy and sell goods or services.
- For this to happen it is necessary to have the sellers and buyers in the same place.
- Nowadays buying and selling of products is also done over the phone and through the internet.
- On the basis of government control market is divided into two parts- Free market and controlled market.
- The government has no control over free market.
- In market economy sellers adopt various strategies to attract the buyers- fixing low prices, giving good services and facilities, improve the quality, plan strategies to increase sales, make use of advertisements.

Let us do it

1. Make a list of your economic and non economic needs.
2. Make a list of how work has been divided in your house through division of labour.



Terminal Questions

1. Put a tick mark on the correct answer-

(a) Which of these is called a thing-

Television

Sewing clothes

Reading a book

Taking passengers from one place to another

(b) Which of these is a service-

Repairing shoes

Selling sealed water bottles

Buying a house

Making bricks

(c) Which of these is an economic activity-

A father teaching his daughter at home

A rickshaw puller taking passengers in his rickshaw

Watching television

Cleaning the places surrounding ones house

(d) Which of these is a non economic activity-

Selling vegetables

Washing the material in the truck

A nurse giving medicine to a patient in the hospital

Helping a blind man cross the road

2. What things does every human need to live?

3. What are economic needs?

4. Which want is called a need?

5. Complete the sentence-

(a) The need of one becomes the of another.

(b) Time is through division of labour.

(c) Needs are of two types- and non economic.

(d) There is a between needs and wants.

(e) The of many people is associated with our needs.

6. What is the meaning of market economy?

Answer Key

Intext Questions

15.1

- | | | | |
|--------|---|-----|---|
| 1. (a) | ✗ | (b) | ✓ |
| (c) | ✓ | (d) | ✗ |
| (e) | ✓ | | |

2. (a) non economic (b) economic
(c) non economic (d) Non economic
(e) Economic

15.2

1. (a) ✓ (b) ✗
(c) ✗ (d) ✓
(e) ✗

15.3

1. (a) controlled (b) supply
(c) mixed (d) buy

Terminal Questions

1. (a) television
(b) repairing shoes
(c) A rickshaw puller taking passengers in his rickshaw
(d) Helping a blind man cross the road
2. Air, water and food
3. The needs for which we have to pay a price.
4. The want which can be met by the use of those resources which we have and which we also want to use, is called a need.
5. (a) livelihood (b) saved
(c) economic (d) difference
(e) livelihood
6. The government does not have any control over the market in a market economy. It is a completely free economy.

Nature of Government System

If your age is more than 18 years, then you must be going to cast votes in the elections. We choose our representative by casting our vote. The elected representatives run the government of the country and the state. We can also choose our representative by casting votes in Zila, Samiti and Gram panchayat. This system of running the government is called a democratic system. Democracy is also known as republic or freedom. Different forms of government can be seen in history, such as- monarchy, dictatorship, colonialism etc. Democracy is considered the best governance system of them all. In this chapter we will learn about all these governance systems.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain the meaning of government and its need;
- Explain the types of government and governance;
- Describe the merits and demerits of monarchy and dictatorship;
- Analyse colonialism and its effects and
- Evaluate the democratic government system and its merits and demerits.

16.1 Need of Government

The key element of a country is- the government. In order to properly understand what government is, it is necessary to first understand what a country is.

What is a country?

The country is an extremely important institution. Generally the word country is considered as the meaning of 'state' but that is not true. India is a country, while Bihar, Uttarakhand, Chattisgarh, Tamil Nadu, Manipur etc are states or units of India which together make India. The country is such a community with a low or high population, which lives on a fixed geographical region, which has an organised government and which is sovereign and independent. Therefore, a country has four basic elements. Let's understand these elements in detail.

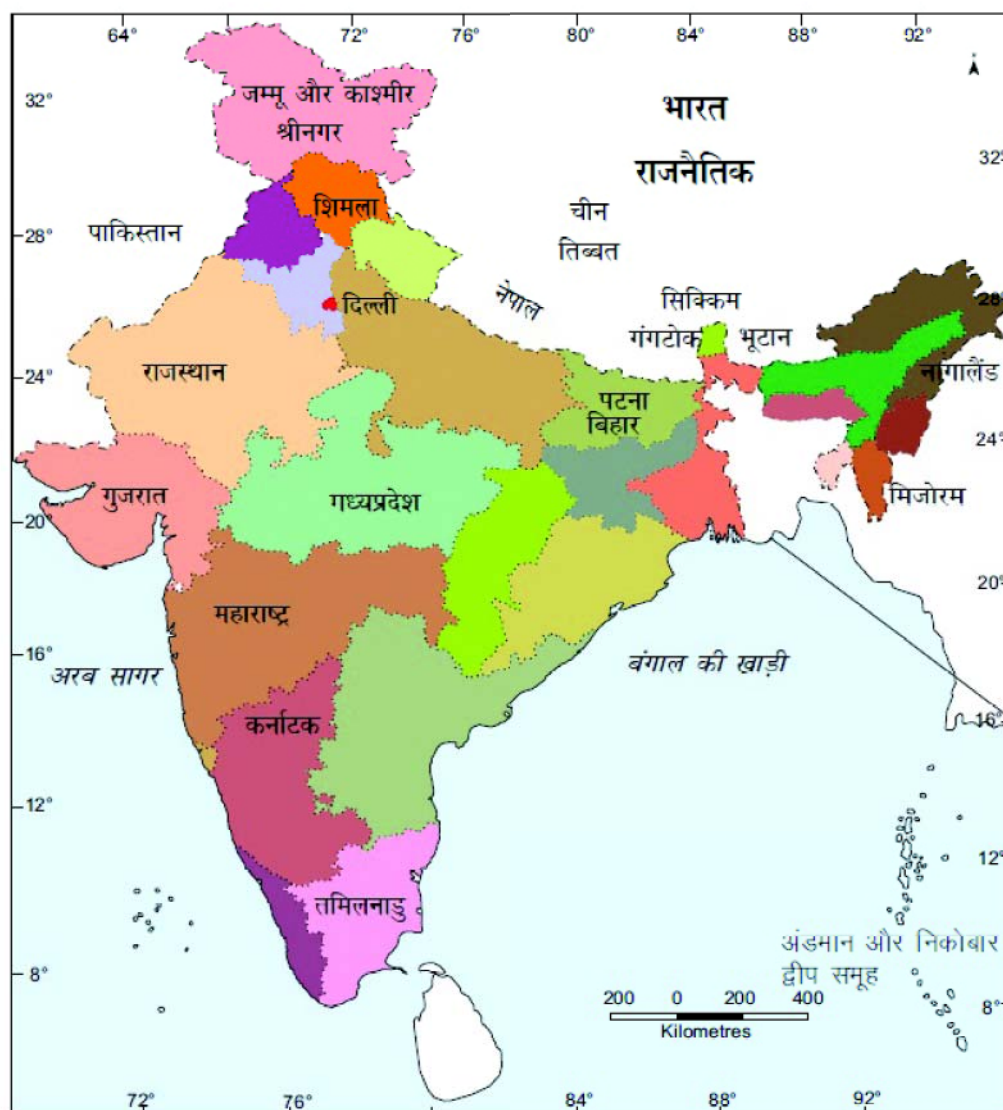


Image 16.1: political map of India

1. Population

Population is the first basic element of a country, i.e. a country must have population. A place where people do not live can not be called a country. Be it low or high but population must be there.

2. Fixed geographical region

Fixed geographical region is the second basic element of a country. The country's population inhabits and spends its life on this geographical region i.e. land. The geographical region can be more or less but it has to be sufficient for the population.

3. Government

Government is third important element of a country. The country uses its power through the government only. The demands of the country are also expressed through the government. The country cannot exist without the government.

4. Sovereignty

The fourth basic element of a country is sovereignty. Sovereignty means that the government of the country is powerful and supreme from inside and independent from outside. It is not controlled by any external country or power. Even if the other three elements are present but sovereignty is not there, then that cannot be called a country. For example, before independence India could not be called a country because it did not have sovereignty, even though the other three elements; population, geographical region and government, were present.

Similarly, no country is complete without these four basic elements. Now let's come back to government- the government is an institution formed by the country. The government is that instrument through which the country uses all its powers. Without the government the people of a country will become like a disorganised, uncontrolled and chaotic mass. There will be no rules or laws and only arbitrariness will be everywhere. Therefore, for a smooth operation, development, system of law, peace, security and independence of a country, it is necessary to have a government.

Types of government

The nature of government that you see today, is the one after Independence. Before independence or even before the British rule there were other types of government in India. Even today there are other forms of government in other countries. Here we will mainly study four types of government system. They are- monarchy, dictatorship, colonialism and democratic system.



Intext Questions 16.1

1. Name the four basic elements of a country.
2. Choose the correct word and fill in the blank:

- (a) Before independence India could not be called a country because it did not have (government/sovereignty/population)
- (b) The government is an formed by the country. (institution/group/law)
- (c) The country uses its power through the only. (rights/population/government)

16.2 Monarchy or Kingdom

Monarchy or kingdom is that government system in which all the power of governance is in the hands of only one person. That person is known as a king or emperor. Even you must have heard the names of many kings, such as- king Dashrath, Vikramaditya, Maharana Pratap, Akbar etc. The selection of the king is done on the basis of the lineage tradition. This is the oldest type of government system. Earlier the same government system was prevalent in all the countries. Some characteristics of a monarchical system are as follows-



Image 16.2: king and Badshah

- The governance is in the hands of only one person. He has the absolute power.
- That person is called king or emperor.
- The king considers his subject as his children.
- The decision of who will be the king is made on the basis of the lineage tradition.
- Everybody obeys the king's commands.
- The position of the king is considered to be similar to God. Violating his commands is considered a sin.

Merits of monarchical government system

Every government system has some merits and demerits. Some merits of monarchical government system are-

- In this, the power is in the hands of only one person and that is why the problems of the country and citizens' disputes are quickly and easily resolved.
- The public knows who their next king will be and whose orders they will have to follow then.
- In this government system there is no conflict and clash of the political parties. Therefore, the monarchy keeps away from all sorts of political controversies.
- The king determines and makes the citizens adhere to the policies and regulations of the country, that is why all the policies and rules are clearly stated.
- The king has the absolute power. He considers the people as his own children. He takes proper care of the inner and outer security of the country.
- It is the king's responsibility to make the law and also make the people follow it. Therefore, everyone has to abide by the laws and there is no discrimination between anyone.
- The king is the greatest judge of the country, so he makes unbiased justice in a short period of time without any discrimination.
- The country develops quickly. In old times, schools, training centres and huge beautiful buildings have been built by kings. The king also paid full attention to the development of culture.
- The possibility of revolt in a monarchical government system is very low. The king himself is the chief person of the detective department and the armies. Therefore, he is able to suppress the revolt.
- Under monarchical government system, the kings of the ancient times have eliminated many dogmas and erroneous traditions.
- There is no delay in creating and enforcing schemes for public welfare. They are immediately enforced without any disputes.
- During the period of crisis the king proves highly powerful. He uses his wisdom and powers and saves his country when there is an emergency.

Demerits of monarchical government system

This government system has some demerits as well, which are as follows:-

- In this government system the king is considered as God. People worship him. Speaking against him or violating his command is considered a sin. Therefore, ineligible and tyrannical kings also keep ruling successfully. Nobody opposes them.
- As the son of the king becomes the king, there is no eligibility criteria. Even if the king's son is ineligible, he becomes the king and begins to rule.

- There is no restraint on the king and so there remains a fear of being unfettered. Often then kings begin to rule arbitrarily and people are not able to oppose them.
- In this government system, the king does not want to do anything towards making the public learned and aware because he knows that he can more easily rule an uneducated and ignorant mass. The public might begin to raise its voice once people become aware of their rights.

This is the era of democracy and individual-freedom. Monarchical government system is not suitable for this age.



Intext Questions 16.2

1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks:-
 - (a) In monarchical rule the power of governance is in the hands of only one
(Minister/person/scholar)
 - (b) The king is the greatest of the country. (Lawyer/constable/judge)
 - (c) In monarchical government system the possibility of is less. (Revolt/welcome/party)
 - (d) There isn't any kind of over the king. (Relief/restraint/trust)
 - (e) If the public becomes ..., it will begin to raise voice for its rights. (Emotional/stupid/aware)

16.3 Dictatorial government system

When a person forcefully takes control over the military power and rules without any restraint then it is called a dictatorial government system. This is also known as Dictatorship. The person who governs in this manner is called a dictator. Hitler's name is often taken as a dictator. The main features of a dictatorial government system are as follows:-

- In a dictatorial government system nobody has control over the ruler. The desire of the ruler becomes the law.
- In this system the security of the country is of utmost importance. The desires, welfare and freedom of the people is of no significance. The ruler even sacrifices the interests of the people to maintain his power.
- Without the permission of the dictator no organisation or institute can be established. Citizens cannot even form any socio-political or economic organisation.



*Image 16.3 : The dictatorial symbol
Hitler*

- Citizens are kept in strict discipline. Those who violate this discipline are given extremely harsh punishment.
- In dictatorial government system only one party rules without any restraint. Other parties are not given any chance to flourish.
- There is no importance given to the rights and liberties of the public. No one is allowed to form parties or make speeches. This is considered indiscipline.

Merits of dictatorship or dictatorial government system

- In a dictatorial government system only the dictator's desire is paramount. Therefore all activities are completed as soon as possible according to his desires. He is free to rule and do his work.
- All citizens have to respect the desire, command and obey the law of the dictator. It's not easy for anyone to break the discipline and law. This aids in national unity.
- Since the dictator occupies the government power by force of his army, he is able to protect his country from the external powers.
- In such government system other parties do not exist. Therefore, the country remains free from the onslaughts of political parties.
- In dictatorship all the powers of the government are in the hands of one person. Therefore he is able to withstand any state of emergency.

Demerits of dictatorship or dictatorial government system

- The dictator establishes power through military force, so it is important to have the ability to control and discipline the army as a skilled leader. If he is incompetent in it then the country may experience a state of chaos.
- There is no particular focus on the interests of the public, so the pace of social intellectual and economic development of the public is very slow.
- In this government system most of the funds are spent on the security of the country and the military force. The interests and needs of the public are overlooked.
- In a dictatorial government system, the public does not have any fundamental rights or any kind of freedom. The whole public is compelled to work on the dictator's commands.
- The merits and demerits of this government system show that it is not in the interest of the public and society. Therefore, a dictatorship or dictatorial government system cannot be considered as appropriate in today's scenario.



Intext Questions 16.3

1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks:-

(military, overlooked, parties, control, paramount)

- (a) In dictatorial government system nobody has over the government.
- (b) In dictatorial government system other do not get an opportunity to flourish.
- (c) The dictator's desire is
- (d) The dictator establishes government through force.
- (e) In dictatorial government system the interests and needs of the public are

16.4 Colonialism

When some people of a nation occupy a weaker country and use their resources to meet their interests, it is called colonialism. The country which is occupied by another country is called a colony of that country. For example India was a colony of Britain.

Initially the Britishers came to India for trade as the East India company. To facilitate trade at that time the Mughal emperor Jahangir gave the company permission to build a factory in Surat. The company then gradually made its factories in Agra, Ahmedabad, Hooghly and Bharuch. India was rich financially. The company started to increase its dominance with the aim of exploiting wealth and property. They even became successful in their efforts. India became the colony of the British. They also exploited plenty of entrepreneurs craftsmen and farmers. In order to exploit and transfer all the robbed money to Britain, they started destroying the culture of India. The British began to manipulate the minds of the Indian people by telling them that everything that is Indian, was old, useless, orthodox and backward. They inspired people to adopt western lifestyle. The British adopted a policy of dividing the people to further strengthen their roots of British colonisation. The policy of 'divide and rule' kept weakening India. With exploitation and looting, the British also conflicted a lot of atrocities on the Indians. Gradually the Indian public began to wriggle, to free itself from exploitation, tyranny, plight and slavery. People began to voice their protest. This protest gave rise to the Indian national movement. The struggle began and after the long fight India got its independence from the British rule on 15 August, 1947.



Intext Questions 16.4

1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks:-

- (a) India was a of Britain. (Relic/special/colony)

- (b) Initially, the East India company came to in India. (Loot/trade/borrow)
- (c) The British began to destroy the here. (culture/nature/form)
- (d) The policy of 'divide and rule' kept India. (Strengthening/unequaled/weakening)

16.5 Democratic Government System

Democracy is also known as republic or freedom. In a democratic government system the power is in the hands of the public. The people run the government through the representatives that they choose. Therefore, democracy is a government of the people, by the people, and for the people. Some characteristics of a democratic government system are as follows-

- In a democracy, the public has the governing power. The public chooses its representative by casting a vote in the election. The representative chosen by the people run the government.
- In a democracy, the government is indirectly run by the people. Therefore, such a government is called the government of the people.
- In Indian democracy, every citizen who is 18 years old has the right to vote and elect a representative. His/her vote is kept a secret.
- In a democracy, there are many active political parties. These political parties choose their representatives for the election. The party which gets majority of votes in the election also runs the government.
- In a democracy, the public has the right to equality and freedom, and many other fundamental rights.
- In a democracy, the law is the same for every citizen. Everybody has the right to justice.
- The public has the right to elect another representative and replace the previous one in the next election.
- In a democracy, the welfare of the people is paramount. In all the government policies, programmes and schemes, primary importance is given to the development of the country and the welfare of the people.
- There is a decentralisation of power in a democracy. In India's federal government system, the central government rules at the central level and the state government rules at the state level. At the local level there is a three tier Panchayati Raj. In it, there is a Gram panchayat, Samiti panchayat and Zilla panchayat, which work as local government. In urban areas the municipal corporation and municipal council handle the local government.

Merits of democratic government system

- All citizens in a democratic government system get an equal opportunity for growth and advancement. Hence, development in all areas is fast.
- In this system the public enjoys the right to freedom and equality. The law and justice system is equal for everyone. So there is a provision of protection of the citizens from exploitation. Anyone can seek justice from court in case of any injustice or atrocity.
- In a democracy there is a provision of equality, freedom and justice for all.
- Since the government is elected by the people, there is a no instance of a revolt or a revolution. The transfer of power is done through elections in a peaceful manner.
- In a democracy the people running the government cannot function in an unfettered manner. If a representative does so, the public can remove him/her in the next election. Hence, the scope of arbitrariness and autocracy is very low.
- In this system the public receives equal opportunities to receive administrative, political and social training. Hence the public becomes more conscious of national, social and political values.



Image 16.4 : Supreme Court

- There is no discrimination in any way based on gender, caste, religion etc. So the scope for inferiority and discontent is not there in the citizens.
- In a democracy, all citizens can go ahead in any field based on their ability, will-power, effort and strength. There is no restriction on anyone.
- Any willing citizen can participate in the elections and descend into active politics. He/she can contribute in the development of the country by playing an active role in the government.

- There is a rapid growth and advancement of art, literature, culture and science in a democracy.

Demerits of democratic government system

- Some scholars do not believe that democracy is a government by the people and for the people, but of some people rich in certain resources. Often people who have money gain power by winning the elections through unfair and wrong means.
- Many political parties are active in a democracy. The fights and allegation between these parties affect the politics.
- In a democracy, most decisions are taken on the basis of majority. Hence, there is a delay in making important decisions. Therefore, such governments often prove weak in the situation of war and crisis.
- The majority in the democratic system is given importance. The political party that gets the majority in the elections makes the government regardless of whether or not they have the knowledge of running the government.
- In order to come to power, the domineering and rich candidates adopt various strategies to win the favour of the voters. They adopt various means to tempt them. Sometimes they also intimidate people to influence the elections.
- Sometimes some parties politicise votes on the basis of religion, caste, area, language etc. This widens the differences and weakens the spirit of integrity.
- Since there is no educational qualification required for standing in the elections, often incompetent, uneducated or less educated people win the elections and become a part of the government.
- Most voters don't take interest in voting due to lack of awareness. This keeps the vote percentage quite low and the right representative does not get elected.



Image 16.5 : picture of the parliament

In this way, there are many merits and demerits of a democratic government system. In this system citizens have the freedom to live freely. The general public is also a part of the government in some or the other way. The people make government for themselves. They have the liberty to change the government in the next election. India is considered to be the world's largest democracy. There is democracy and monarchy in Britain and Bhutan as well. In the modern age, the democratic system has been considered to be the most exquisite.



Intext Questions 16.5

1. Choose the correct word to fill in the blanks:
 - (a) In a democracy, the government is in the hands of the (Minister/ public/ king)
 - (b) People give their to elect their representative in the elections. (Vote/ money/suggestion)
 - (c) The party which has majority, also makes the (Army/court/government)
 - (d) In a democracy, the government is not (Independent/ unfettered/wise)
 - (e) Often people with win the elections by unfair and wrong means. (Money/anger/fashion)



What you have learnt

- There are four main elements of a country -population, fixed geographical region, government and sovereignty.
- Government is an indispensable element of a country. If there is no government, the country and people will turn into unorganised, unchecked and chaotic crowds.
- Monarchy or kingdom is that government system in which all the power of governance is in the hands of only one person. That person is known as a king or emperor.
- The king is decided according to the generation-by-generation descendant tradition.
- When a person forcefully takes control over the military power and rules without any restraint then it is called a dictatorial government system. This is also known as 'Dictatorship'.
- The person governing through dictatorial government system is called a 'dictator'.
- Nobody has control over the ruler in a dictatorial government system. His/her command becomes the law and order.
- When some people of a nation occupy a weaker country and use their resources to meet their own interests, it is called 'colonialism'.

- India used to be a colony of Britain.
- Due to the exploitation, oppression by and slavery of the British, Indians agitated which led to birth of national revolt. After a long struggle India got its independence on 15th August, 1947.
- In a democratic government system the power is in the hands of the public. People run the government through the representatives that they choose.
- In a democracy, the government is for the people, by the people and of the people.
- In a democracy, the people have some fundamental rights.
- In a democracy, there are many active political parties. The party which gets majority of votes in the election, forms and runs the government.
- In Indian democracy, every citizen who is 18 years old has the right to vote and elect a representative.
- In the modern age, the democratic system has been considered to be the most exquisite.



Terminal Questions

1. Match the following-

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| (1) Monarchy | Voting |
| (2) Dictatorship | Freedom |
| (3) Democracy | King |
| (4) British | Republic |
| (5) Election | Dictator |
| (6) Struggle | East India Company |

2. Choose the correct word from the bracket for the definitions given below-

(Democracy, unrestrained, king, dictator, voter)

- (a) The one who rules on the basis of generation tradition.

- (b) The one who rules by military force in a selfish manner.

(c) The government which is of the people, by the people and for the people.

(d) The one who casts vote in the elections.

(e) The one on whom there is no restraint.

3. Choose the correct word to fill in the blank:-

(a) Violation of king's is considered a sin. (Worship/command/anger)

(b) In a monarchy there is no of the political parties. (Clash/scatter/protection)

(c) This is an age of (Monarchy/democracy/dictatorship)

(d) A dictator rules through force. (Minister/people/military)

(e) Britishers adopted the policy of and rule. (code/loot/divide)

(f) People elect their representative by casting in the elections. (Wound/vote/money)

(g) In a democracy the people running the government cannot be (Unfettered/happy/unhappy)

4. What are the four main elements of a country?

5. Which party makes the government in a democracy?

6. Which government system is considered most exquisite in the modern age?

7. How did the British colonise India?

Let us do it

- Listen to the stories of old kings from your friends and relatives.
- Listen to the stories of Britishers from the old people in the village.
- Listen to the news related to elections during the election period.
- You must cast a vote during the election if you are 18 or more than 18 years old. Encourage others to vote as well. Enlist your name in the voter list.

Answer key

Intext Questions

16.1

1. Population, fixed geographical region, government, sovereignty.
2. (a) sovereignty
(b) institution
(c) government

16.2

1. (a) person (b) judge
(c) revolt (d) restraint
(e) aware

16.3

1. (a) control (b) parties
(c) paramount (d) military
(e) overlooked

16.4

1. (a) colony (b) trade
(c) culture (d) weakening

16.5

1. (a) public (b) vote
(c) government (d) unfettered
(e) money

Terminal Questions

1. Monarchy King

Dictatorship Dictator

1. Democracy Republic

British East India Company

Election Vote

Struggle Freedom

2. (a) king (b) dictator
(c) democracy (d) voter
(e) unrestrained
3. (a) command (b) clash
(c) democracy (d) military
(e) divide (f) vote
(g) unfettered
4. Population, government, fixed geographical region, sovereignty
5. The party which gets the majority of votes.
6. Democratic government system
7. Do it on your own.

Constitution of India

Some rules, laws and policies are required to run the country. The Constitution of the country meets these needs. The Constitution is considered to be the basic and supreme law of the country. The constitution of India came into force on January 26, 1950. Constitution has given some rights to the citizens. These are called fundamental rights. Similarly, some fundamental duties have also been set for citizens. Every citizen is expected to perform the fundamental duties.

India is a democratic republic. Here the government system is parliamentary as well as federal. There is the central government at the central level and state government at the state level. The central government has three parts-legislature, executive and judiciary. Here, legislature, i.e. parliament is very closely related to the executive. The executive is formed in conjunction with the President, council of ministers and the government officials. Legislature, that is, Parliament has two houses- Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha.

Judiciary is the third part of the government. The judiciary defines and interprets the laws and settles disputes. It also protects the fundamental rights.

In this lesson we will learn about the constitution of India, its basic elements, the fundamental rights and duties of the citizens, parliamentary democracy, and legislature, executive and judiciary.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- explain the concept of a state;
- explain the meaning of Constitution, when it came into force in India and the need of Constitution;
- Describe the basic elements of the Constitution of India;

- Analyse the rights granted to the citizens in the Constitution;
- Discuss the fundamental duties mentioned in the constitution;
- Explain the meaning of parliamentary democracy and its functioning and
- Explain the role of legislature, executive and judiciary.

17.1 What is a Country?

Before knowing about the Constitution, it is necessary to know about the 'state'. Here, the meaning of the state is not what we generally believe. Speaking in general, we understand the state to be a small part of the country, where the state government works, such as Madhya Pradesh, Meghalaya, Jammu and Kashmir, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra etc. All of these are administrative units. In order to govern the country, it has been divided into small administrative units.

Here, the word 'state' has a bigger meaning. India is a country. A country has four main elements which are as follows-

1. Public or population.
2. Geographical area, where public resides.
3. The government, that makes laws for the public and makes them applicable.
4. Sovereignty, meaning the supreme control over all parts the country and free from the control of another country.

Any geographical area will be considered a country only if it has these four elements. It is a necessary condition for the country to have all these four elements. In this sense, India is a country. Here we have public, geographical area, government and sovereignty.

17.2 What is Constitution?

India is known as a welfare country. What kind of government will such a welfare country have? How will be its rule? What kind of governance will be there? What kind of relationship will the government have with its citizens? These things have been pre-decided? The book which has these rules and statutes is called the constitution.

Constitution is considered to be the basic law of the country. In it, the objectives have been decided which have to be implemented by the country, such as India. It has been decided in the Constitution as to what arrangements will be made at different places to run the government. How will the government be formed? What will be the rights and duties of the citizens? Constitution is also believed to be the basis of governing the country.

The Constitution is concerned with two main things – 1. the relationship between different levels of government, 2. the relationship between the government and citizens.

17.3 Constitution of India

The Constitution of India came into effect on January 26, 1950. Therefore Republic Day is celebrated on this day. A Constituent Assembly was formed to form the Constitution of India. Dr Rajendra Prasad was the President of this constituent assembly. There were several committees and sub-committees of the Constituent Assembly. With the help of these committees and sub-committees, the constituent assembly used to perform its work. One of these committees was- the draft committee. This was the most important committee in the Constituent assembly. It was the responsibility of this committee to draft the constitution. The President of this committee was Dr Bhim Rao Ambedkar.

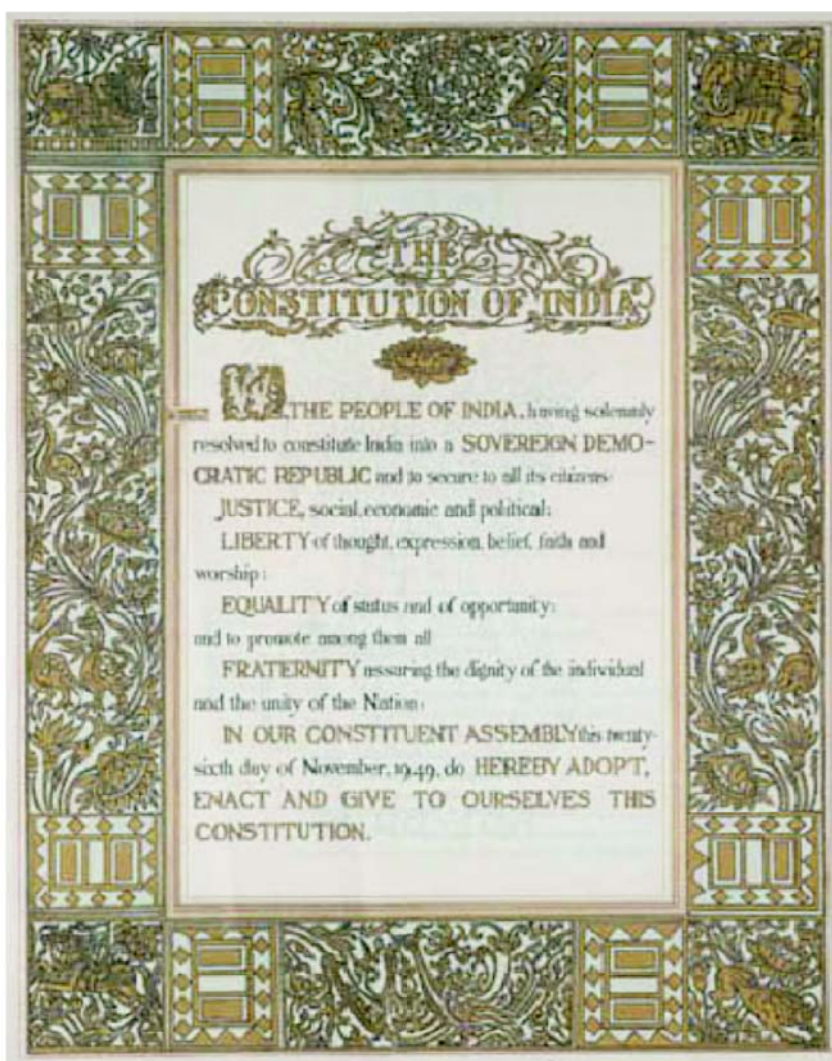


Image 17.1: Constitution of India

Some interesting facts

- The Constituent Assembly was formed in 1946.
- There were 299 members in the constituent assembly in December 1947.
- The meetings of the constituent assembly lasted two years 11 months and 18 days.
- The constituent assembly held a total of 166 meetings.
- The constituent assembly completed its work on November 26, 1949.

17.4 Fundamental elements of the Indian Constitution

The constitution speaks of making India an integrated, sovereign, socialist, secular, democratic republic. Along with this, it has been said that all citizens will have social, economic and political Justice. All the citizens in the Constitution has been given the freedom to express their thoughts and pray. All citizens have been given political, social and civil rights as well. There has been provision for equality of opportunity for them. The basic elements in the Indian Constitution are as follows-

1. **Sovereignty:** Sovereignty is very important element for any country. Sovereignty means complete independence. There is no internal or external force. The country has complete freedom to make its own decisions. Sovereignty is that power through which the country can make its people obey its rules.
2. **Socialist country:** India has been called a socialist nation in the Constitution. Socialism means that everybody should get equal opportunity to work. There should be no discrimination on the basis of economic status or caste. Basic needs of all the people are met. In our Constitution, all these things come under policy making body.
3. **Secularism:** An important element of the Indian Constitution is secularism. It is said in the Constitution that India will not have any religion of its own. The country will not support anybody with government money. All religions will be considered equal. Every citizen will be free to follow any religion and adopt any method of worship. No citizen will be discriminated on the basis of caste/creed.
4. **Democratic Republic:** The Constitution has declared India a democratic republic. Democracy means, a government that is of the people, by the people and for the people. On this basis the government is chosen by the country. The public chooses its representatives, who make the government. This government runs the country. The elected representative is answerable to the public.

Republic means that the governor of the country is the president. The President is elected indirectly. It means that the public does not directly elect the president. The elected representatives of the public elect the President. The President is the constitutional head of India.

5. **Justice, freedom and equality:** in the Constitution of India there has been a provision of justice, freedom and equality for all citizens. For this there has been a provision of fundamental rights and policy making body in the constitution. Justice means people get social and economic justice. Everyone should get food, clothes and lodging. They should have the opportunity to live a dignified life. There should be an establishment of a welfare state. All the money should not be concentrated in the hands of a few people.

Freedom means that every citizen has the freedom of expression, freedom to go anywhere in India, to live and earn anywhere, to do any job, business, and trade.

Equality means that no one should be discriminated on the basis of religion, language, gender, colour et cetera. All citizens get equal rights, opportunity and justice. All are equal in the eyes of law.



Intext Questions

17.1

1. **Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks-**

(law, President, sovereignty, 26 January 1950)

- The four main elements of our country are-public, geographical area, government and
- The Constitution of our country came into effect on
- Constitution is considered to be the basic of this country.
- India's constitutional chief is

2. **Answer the following questions-**

- Why is the Republic Day celebrated?

- What does democracy mean?

- Who was the President of the draft committee of India's constituent assembly?

17.5 Our Fundamental Rights

Being a citizen of this country, we have got many rights. These rights have been given to us by the Constitution. It means that nobody can take away these rights from us. If this happens then we can appeal to the court. These rights given in the Constitution are called fundamental rights.

Our fundamental rights are-

1. Right to equality
2. Right to freedom
3. Right against exploitation
4. Right to freedom of religion
5. Cultural and educational rights
6. Right to constitutional remedies

Let's understand these rights in detail-

1. **Right to equality:** The right to equality means that all citizens will be considered equal. There will be no discrimination on the basis of religion, caste, race, gender, birthplace etc.

Right to equality involves five types of equality:

- (a) Equality before the law- this means that everybody is equal in the eyes of law. There is nobody above the law. The law will not discriminate anybody on any basis.
- (b) There is no discrimination on the basis of religion, caste, gender, birthplace etc., there is no restriction on any citizen in any public place, store, hotel, etc. Anybody can use government wells, ponds, roads etc without any discrimination.
- (c) Equality in employment opportunities-All citizens have been given equal opportunity for employment in government jobs. The basis of employment is merit.
- (d) No untouchability- there will be no discrimination imposed on anyone on the basis of untouchability. It is a crime to prevent anyone from going to the public place or to go to a public place of worship. To humiliate someone on the basis of caste and promote untouchability is also a crime.
- (e) Abolition of titles-Titles like 'Rai Saheb', 'Rai Bahadur' given in the British Era, have been abolished.

2. **Right to freedom:** under this there are six kinds of freedoms-

- (a) Freedom to make speech and keep one point in front of the people.
- (b) To conduct an assembly or conference peacefully without any weapons.
- (c) Freedom to form a procession.
- (d) Freedom to go anywhere in India.
- (e) Freedom to live in any part of India.
- (f) Freedom to do any job, business, trade and earn a livelihood.

3. **Right against exploitation:** there is a restriction on bonded wages and buying and selling of people like commodities. Children under the age of 14 years cannot be employed in factories. They cannot be made to do hazardous work.
4. **Right to freedom of religion:** there are people of many religions in our country. Everybody has his own religious activities. In the Constitution, everyone has the freedom to adopt any religion. Every citizen is free to follow any religion and form of worship according to his/her wish. Everybody is free to establish an institution for his religious activities and religious objectives. Any religious group has the right to purchase land in accordance with the law.

The education of a particular religion cannot be imparted in any educational institution which is funded by the government. The right to religious freedom is not unlimited. It can be banned on the basis of law and order and ethics.

5. **Cultural and educational rights:** our Constitution gives the citizens the necessary protection to preserve their culture and language. Right to religious minorities to open and run their educational institutions is also given in the Constitution. There can not be any discrimination while giving government assistance to educational institutions. The goal of the country is to protect the country's mixed culture.
6. **Right to constitutional remedies:** if there is any attempt to suppress these rights, then what has to be done? There has been a provision in the Constitution for this. The person whose rights are being violated, has been given the right to resort to the law. That person can go to the High Court or the Supreme Court to protect his/her rights. The right to constitutional remedies is to protect other fundamental rights.

This right has been given in the third part of the Constitution from section 14 to 32. In the year 2002, the government made the 86th amendment in the constitution. In this an amendment to section 21 was added. Education has been made fundamental right. According to this, all children of the age group of 6 to 14 years will be provided free education. The government will arrange for it. It has also been said that it is the fundamental duty of the parent or guardian to give the opportunity to get education to children of 6 to 14 years of age.

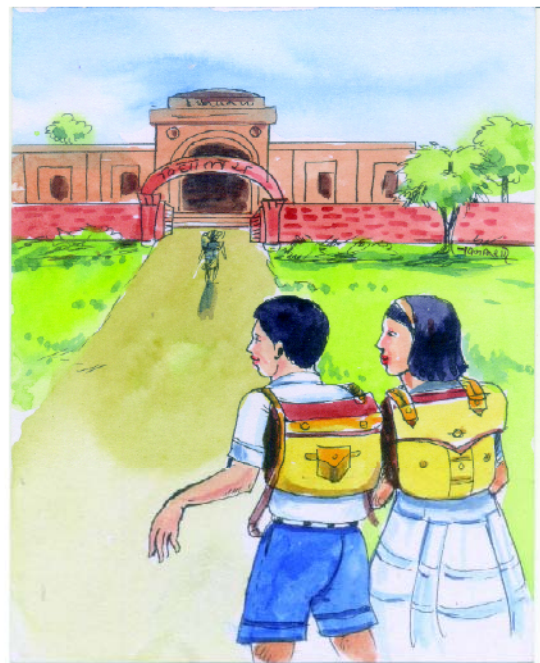


Image 17.2: receiving education, our fundamental right

17.6 Our Fundamental Duties

Our Constitution has not only given us rights, but also imposed some duties. It is the responsibility of every citizen to abide by these duties. The development, progress and popularity of the country depends on its citizens. If the citizens are performing their responsibilities properly then the country will definitely move forward. A Family is called a good family only when all its members think for the family, stay united, think for its goodwill and progress. Similarly country is a big family. All its citizens should think for the development and progress of the country. The duties that the Constitution has set for us are as follows-

- Abide by the constitution. Honour its ideals, institutions, the national flag and the national anthem.
- Keep the high ideals that motivated our national movement for freedom close to their hearts and adhere to them.
- Protect India's unity and integrity.
- Protect the country.
- Develop the spirit of brotherhood and harmony among all the people of the country which is beyond discrimination of religion, language, territory or class. Abolish such practices that are against women's interests.
- Understand the importance of the glorious tradition and rich culture of the country and maintain it.
- Protect and promote natural environment. Forests, lakes, rivers and animals come under natural environment. Have the feeling of compassion for all creatures.
- Develop scientific perspectives and humanism.
- Protect the public property and not be violent.



Intext Questions

17.2

1. Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks-

- education cannot be given in government funded institutions. (moral/religious)
- In the right to freedom, types of freedom have been given. (6/8)
- The Right to education was included in the fundamental rights in (2002/2008)
- Respecting the ideals of the Constitution, the national flag and national anthem is our fundamental (right/duty)

2. Answer the following questions-

a. Children under which age cannot work in factories?

b. If someone's fundamental rights are taken away from him, what can he/she do to protect his/her right?

c. Under the right to education, there is a provision for free and compulsory education for children of which age?

17.7 Parliamentary Democracy

Democracy means-government that is of the people, by the people and for the people. The system of democracy has been adopted in India. The citizens choose their representatives and these representatives govern the country. That representative is elected at many levels. There is a parliamentary system of governance in India. There is a parliament in the centre. The members of the Parliament are called MPs. There are two houses in the Parliament-Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha. At the central level, the public acts to elect its representatives known as members of the parliament. These representatives are elected for Lok Sabha. In the parliament, the Rajya Sabha is called the upper house and Lok Sabha as the lower house. The President is also a part of parliament. President is not a member of the Parliament but still is a part of it. Whatever law the Parliament makes, must be signed by the President.



Image 17.3 Parliament house

Similarly, for the governance of the states, the representatives are elected by the people. There are legislative assemblies in the states. There are two houses- the legislative Council and the legislative assembly. But many states have only the legislative assembly. In the states, the Legislative council is called the upper house and the legislative assembly is called the lower house.

The country's government has three major parts- the legislature, the executive and the judiciary. The government runs when these three work together. The legislature makes laws or the rules. The executive makes sure that people adheres to those roles. The judiciary interprets the constitutional rules and punishes those who do not obey the law.

17.8 Legislature

In our country the Parliament is legislature at the centre. It has been said before that Parliament has three parts: the President, Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha.

Rajya Sabha

There are 250 members in the Rajya Sabha. Out of these 238 members are elected by the representatives of the people, i.e. the legislators. They are elected from different states. Their election is done by the members of the legislative assemblies of the states. The remaining 12 members can be nominated by the president.

Qualifications for members

1. He/she must be a citizen of India.
2. His/her age must be more than 30 years.
3. He/she must have all qualifications that are decided by the parliament from time to time.

Tenure

Rajya Sabha is a permanent house. It is never dissolved, but every member's term is of 6 years. One-third of the members are retired after two years. They are replaced by new members.

Office-bearer

The chairperson of the Rajya Sabha is the vice-president of India. He/she is an ex-officio chairperson. Ex-officio means because of his/her post. The vice president presides over the meetings of the Rajya Sabha. In his absence the deputy Speaker presides over the meetings. The deputy speaker is elected from the members, by the members of Rajya Sabha.

Lok Sabha

There can be a maximum of 550 elected members in the Lok Sabha. Members of Lok Sabha are elected directly by the public. In our country, every citizen above 18 years has the right to vote. These voters choose the members of the Lok Sabha during the election from among themselves.

Qualification for members

1. He/She must be a citizen of the country.
2. He/She must have completed 25 years.
3. He/she must have all the qualifications that are fixed by Parliament from time to time.

Tenure

The tenure of the Lok Sabha is of five years. However on the advice of the Council of ministers, the president can dissolve the Lok Sabha before its tenure.

Office bearers

The chairman of the Lok Sabha is elected by the members from among themselves. The President himself once addresses the meeting. The chairperson is also called the speaker. In the absence of the president the Vice President presides over the meetings. The vice president is also elected by the members themselves.

Functions of Parliament

Legislative work

Parliament is the highest law making body. In the Constitution, the legislative powers are divided into three lists: Central list, state list and concurrent list. The Central list is the largest. It contains 97 topics. These topics are related to national interest and national importance. The right to make laws on the topics of the Central list is with the Parliament. Proposal for making the law is placed in the form of a bill. It becomes a law after it is passed in the Parliament and is approved by the president. This law applies over the whole country.

Legislatures of the states make laws on matters of state list. These laws apply only to that state. There are 66 topics in it.

There are 47 topics in the concurrent list. Both Parliament and legislative assemblies can make laws on these topics. Sometimes there are oppositions in the laws made by the Parliament and legislatures. Then the law made by the parliament prevails.

Executive work

Parliament has complete control over the executive. The council of ministers is collectively responsible for the Parliament. Parliament can dissolve the council of ministers by passing a motion of no-confidence. The Parliament can ask questions on any matter related to the central government. Ministers have to answer these questions. This method keeps the government conscious of its responsibilities.

Finance or financial work

Parliament holds control over the central government's entire income. The government cannot spend any money without the permission of Parliament. Parliament approves the government budget every year.

Constitutional work

In most parts of the Constitution Parliament can make amendments on the basis of the majority of the total members. There should be a two-thirds majority of the members present in this. But some special amendments also require the approval of the majority of the legislative assemblies of the state, with the majority of Parliament.

Other Tasks

- Parliament may remove the President through impeachment.
- Both the houses of Parliament participate in the election of the President and the Vice President.
- Parliament approves the announcement of the emergency.
- Parliament can constitute a new state, change the limits of the state, and change the name of the state.



Intext Questions

17.3

1. Choose the correct option and fill in the blanks-

- Democracy means a government that is of the people, by the people, for the
(people, leader)
- The Rajya Sabha is called the house of Parliament. (lower/upper)
- Every citizen above years of age has the right to vote in our country. (25/18)
- Each member of the Rajya Sabha has a tenure of years. (6/5)

2. Answer the following questions –

- Who is the ex-officio chairman of the Rajya Sabha?

- Who can dissolve the Lok Sabha?

- In the Constitution, the list of legislative rights has been divided into which lists?

- What is the maximum number of elected members that can be in the Lok Sabha?

The part of government that enforces legislation made by the legislature is called an executive. In this manner all employees become a part of this. But as an order of the government, the executive means the President of the country and his ministers. In India, President is the head of the country. In this way, he is the head of the executive.

President

President is the head of the executive. He is also the constitutional head of the country. The post of the president is an honourable post. The president does not use his powers himself. These powers are exercised by the Prime Minister and the council of ministers in the name of the President.

Qualifications

- He/She must be a citizen of India.
- He/She must have completed 35 years of age.
- He/she should have the qualifications to become a constitutional head.
- He/she should not hold a profitable post.

Election

The President is elected by an electoral board. The members of Lok Sabha, Raja Sabha and state legislative assemblies are involved in this. The nominated members are not the members of this electoral board. The value of the votes of the members of the legislative assembly of each state is different. It is calculated by dividing the total population of that state by the total number of elected members of the legislative assembly, then it is divided by 1000. Understand it as follows-

The value of a legislator's vote = $\frac{\text{total population of the state}}{\text{total number of elected members of the legislative assembly}} / 1000$

Similarly, the value of the votes of the members of the parliament is also calculated. For this, the sum of votes of the elected members of the legislative assemblies of all the states is divided by strength of the elected members of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha. Understand it as follows-

Value of the vote of one member of the parliament = $\frac{\text{sum of votes of the elected members of the legislative assemblies of all the states}}{\text{sum of the elected members of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha}}$

Tenure

The President's tenure is of five years.

Removing the President

The president can only be removed from office by impeachment.

Presidential powers

Executive powers

The president appoints the prime minister. The president appoints ministers after discussing with the prime minister. The departments of ministers are also decided after discussing with the prime minister. The president also removes any minister from the post after discussing with the prime minister.

President also appoints chief justice of the Supreme Court and High Court and other judges. He also appoints the heads various constitutional posts, such as-the chief election officer, the Attorney General, members of election commission and other election commissioners and members of the public service commission.

The President also appoints the governors of the states and the deputy governors of the union territories. The President is the commander in chief of the Army of the country. He appoints the chiefs of army, navy and Air Force. The President also appoints ambassadors and high commissioners for other countries. All treaties and agreements from other countries are made with his consent. He executes laws passed by Parliament. The president does all his work with the advice of the Prime Minister.

Legislative powers

President can call Parliament session. The president can dissolve the Lok Sabha before the completion of the term on the recommendation or advice of the Prime Minister. He can nominate 12 members in the Rajya Sabha and two members in the Lok Sabha.

The President may also convene a joint sitting of both houses if needed. He participates in the first meeting of the two houses of Parliament every year. Apart from this, he also addresses the first meeting of the new parliament.

All the bills passed by Parliament are sent to the President for his assent/acceptance. Only after the approval of the President do they become law.

Financial powers

The president has the right to contingency fund of the country. From this, he order to use the advance amount for future or incidental work. Contingency fund is central government fund. It can be used to meet any urgent, accidental, or unexpected expenses. All the money bills presented in the Lok Sabha only with the permission of the president. The annual budget and rail budget are also presented in the Lok Sabha with the permission of the president. The president can constitute the Finance commission every five years.

Judicial powers

The president appoints Chief Justice of the Supreme Court and other judges. The chief justice of the High Court of the state and the other judges are also appointed by the President. The President also has the right to waive the conviction of criminals or to extend it for sometime. The president can forgive the culprits who have been sentenced to death penalty on submission of a mercy petition. But it can be done only on the advice of the ministry. While staying in post, no prosecution can be executed against the President.

Vice president

The Constitution also has a provision of a Vice President. The election of the vice president is done by an electoral board. This electoral board has the members of the two Houses of Parliament.

Qualifications

- He/She must be a citizen of India.
- He/She must have completed 35 years of age.
- He/she should not hold a profitable post.
- He/she should have the qualifications to become a Vice President.

Tenure

The vice president's tenure is of five years. If Parliament (Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha) want to remove the Vice President, they can do so by passing a resolution with majority.

Job

Vice president is the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. Accordingly, it is his duty to maintain the system in the Rajya Sabha. Also, it is the vice president's responsibility to allow members to speak and ask questions.

Vice president is not a member of the Rajya Sabha. Therefore he cannot vote for any bill or proposal. However, if a party and opposition have equal votes, he can cast a decisive vote.

Due to any reason if the president's post is vacant, then Vice President works as the acting President. But this period cannot be more than six months.

Prime Minister and Council of Ministers

According to the Constitution there is a council of ministers for cooperation in the functions of the president. It also gives advice to the president. The prime minister is the leader of the council of ministers. The prime minister is the real head of the government. The President is the constitutional head of the country.

Appointment of Prime Minister and council of ministers

The Prime Minister's appointment is made by the President. As per the results of the general elections, the person with the majority votes in the Lok Sabha or the leader of the largest party is called by the President to form the government. The government is formed under the leadership of the same leader. He is asked to take oath as the prime minister. The president appoints ministers after discussing with the Prime Minister. In order to become a minister a person must be a member of either of the two houses of the parliament. A person who is not a member of the Parliament can also be made a minister. But he will have to become a member of either of the houses within six months. If he does not, then he will have to quit the post of minister.

Group of ministers is called the council of ministers. There are three types of ministers in the council of ministers—Cabinet minister, state minister (sub-minister) and state minister (free charge). State minister or sub minister help the Cabinet Minister in work of the ministry. Sometimes a minister of state is given an independent charge of a department.

Generally the Council of ministers and cabinet is considered to be the same. But this is not so. Only Cabinet ministers are involved in the cabinet. In this way Cabinet ministers are called Cabinet. In this, the number of ministers is 15 to 20. All ministers are included in the Council of ministers—Minister of State, Minister Cabinet and State Minister (free charge). There can not be more than 70 ministers in it. There can be many Cabinet meetings as per requirement. But the meeting of Council of ministers is rarely held. Only Cabinet ministers decide the policies and programmes of the government, not the Council of ministers.

Prime Minister's functions and powers

Prime minister is the head of the government. No work of the government is done without his consent. He is the leader of Lok Sabha and the President's chief advisor. He selects the ministers and decides the departments of ministers. The Prime Minister can remove any minister from his post. He can also ask any minister to resign from the post. If there is a disagreement among ministers, only the Prime Minister can resolve it.

The Prime Minister informs the President about the decisions of the cabinet. He also informs the president about the policies of the government. The President calls the Parliament to session on the recommendation of the Prime minister. Without the permission of the Prime Minister, no minister can meet the President.

Any agreement or treaty that is made with other countries is written and signed by the consent of the Prime Minister.

Functions and Powers of the cabinet

All ministers look after the functioning of their respective departments. They make decisions related to the departments. The cabinet makes decision regarding the internal and foreign policy of the country. It is the responsibility of the cabinet to arrange the expenditure incurred by the government. Laws cannot be passed when Parliament's session is not in progress. Then, the government issue an ordinance. After that it is made into law. The ordinance is issued on behalf of the President. The issuing of the ordinance is also the responsibility of the cabinet.



Intext Questions

17.4

1. Answer the following questions-

- (a) Who is the head of the executive?

(b) Who are the members of the vice president electoral board?

(c) Who is the real head of the government?

(d) How can the President be removed from his post?

2. What is the tenure of the president?

(a) 2 years (b) 6 years

(c) 3 years (d) 5 years

3. In the absence of the president, who holds his post?

(a) Prime minister. (b) Lok Sabha speaker

(c) Vice President. (d) Chief Justice

4. How many members can the president nominate in the Rajya Sabha?

(a) 10 (b) 12

(c) 15 (d) 8

17.10 Judiciary

You have read that parliament makes laws for the country. It is also called legislature. The executive implements these laws. Judiciary is the third part of the government. It defines the laws. It protects the fundamental rights of the people. It acts as the protector of the constitution and settles disputes.

There is a single judiciary for the whole country in India. At the top is the Supreme Court. After this there are high courts in the states. Below them are subordinate courts at district level. These include district and sessions court. Civil and criminal cases are heard in district and session courts.

Supreme Court

The highest court in our country is the Supreme Court. It is located in India's capital, New Delhi. It has a Chief Justice and 30 judges. The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court is also called as the chief justice of India. The president appoints the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court and other judges.

There are three types of jurisdiction of the Supreme Court- 1. Original jurisdiction, 2. Appellate jurisdiction, and advisory jurisdiction.



Image 17.4: Indian judiciary

1. Original jurisdiction

Some lawsuits can only be heard in the Supreme Court. They are-

- Such cases in which the central government is on one side and one or more state governments are on the other.
- Such cases in which the central government and one or more state governments are on one side and one or more state governments on the other.
- Such lawsuits where there is a dispute between the states.

2. Appellate jurisdiction

An appeal can be made against the decision of any lower Court in the higher court. This is a right related to appeal. The Supreme Court can hear appeals against the decisions of the High Courts. These appeals can be for civil or criminal cases and in matters related to the Constitution. Supreme Court can interpret the constitution in the cases related to the constitution. Interpret means to explain the meaning. Under these, most of the cases are related to fundamental rights. The appeal made to the Supreme Court is the last appeal.

3. Advisory jurisdiction

Supreme Court has the right to give advice. But it advises only when asked to. The President may seek the advice of the Supreme Court on any legal matter. The Supreme Court may or may not give an advice. Moreover, the President is not obliged to obey his advice.

Guardian of constitution

Supreme Court is called the guardian of the Constitution. It does not allow anyone to violate the provisions of the Constitution. Nor does it allow anyone to make any arbitrary interpretation of the provisions of the Constitution.

Supreme Court can examine any policy and role of the government. In particular those which may abrogate the fundamental rights of the people. Supreme Court can examine if the laws made by the legislature are in accordance with the constitution. Similarly it can see to it that no work of the executive is against the constitution. This work of the Supreme Court is called judicial review. If the Supreme Court thinks that the provisions of the Constitution are being violated then it can declare that law or work illegal.

Similarly, if the fundamental rights of people are violated by any law, then the Supreme Court can declare that law illegal. In this form the Supreme Court is the custodian of the fundamental rights. For these reasons it is also called the keeper of the democracy.



Intext Questions

17.5

1. Put a tick mark on the correct sentence and cross on the incorrect sentence –

- (a) The highest court in the country is the Supreme Court. ()
- (b) Matters related to fundamental rights cannot be heard in the Supreme Court. ()
- (c) Supreme Court cannot declare any law invalid or illegal. ()
- (d) Appeals can be made against the lower court verdict in the higher court. ()

2. Answer the following questions-

- (a) Who appoints the judges of the Supreme Court?

- (b) How many judges are there in the Supreme Court besides the chief justice?

- (c) What cases are heard in the sessions court?



What you have learnt

- There are four main elements of country: public, geographical area, government and sovereignty.
- Constitution is considered to be the basic law of the state.
- The Constitution is concerned with two main things-(1) the relationship between different levels of government, (2) the relationship between the government and citizens.
- The Constitution of India came into force on January 26, 1950.
- The basic elements of the Indian Constitution are- (1) Sovereignty, (2) socialism, (3) secularism, (4) democratic republic and (5) Justice, freedom and equality.
- Presently the Constitution has given six fundamental rights-right to equality, right to freedom, right against exploitation, right to freedom of religion, cultural and educational rights, right to constitutional remedies.
- In the year 2002, the government made the 86th amendment in the Constitution. This amendment has made education a fundamental right.
- In addition to the fundamental rights, the Constitution has also set some fundamental duties for us.
- Democracy means – a government that is of the people, by the people and for the people.
- India has parliamentary of system governance.
- Parliament has two houses-Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha.
- Rajya Sabha is known as the upper house and Lok Sabha as the lower house.
- The public chooses its representative for Lok Sabha.
- The government has three major parts-legislature, executive and judiciary.
- The Parliament with legislature is at the centre of our country. The legislature makes the laws.
- Rajya Sabha has 250 members.
- Every member of the Rajya Sabha has a term of six years. One third members of Rajya Sabha retire after every two years. New members are selected in their place.
- The Chairman of the Rajya Sabha is the vice president.
- The term of Lok Sabha is of five years.
- The main functions of the Parliament are-legislative program, executive related work, financial work, work related to constitutional amendment.
- Executive puts the laws into force.
- The President is the head of the executive.

- The president enjoys -legislative powers, financial powers and judicial power through council of ministers.
- The prime minister is the real head of the government.
- The group of ministers is called the council of ministers.
- There are two types of ministers in the Council of ministers-Cabinet Minister and minister of state.
- Prime minister is the head of the Lok Sabha. He is the chief advisor of the President.
- Judiciary explains the laws and protects the fundamental rights.
- Supreme Court is the highest court in the country.
- There are high courts in states. There are district courts and sessions courts in the districts.
- There are three types of jurisdiction of the Supreme Court- 1. Original jurisdiction, 2. Appellate jurisdiction, and advisory jurisdiction.
- The Supreme Court can do judicial review of the work of the legislature and executive.
- The Supreme Court is the custodian of the fundamental rights. It is also called the custodian of democracy.

Let us do it

- Show the importance of voting on the occasion of National voters' Day (25 January). Make people aware of voting before the elections so that the percentage of voting is increased.
- Discuss the fundamental duties with your friends.



Terminal Questions

1. Put a tick mark on the correct sentence and a cross on the incorrect sentence-

- (a) Constitution is considered to be the basic law of the state. ()
- (b) Our Constitution came into force on August 15, 1947. ()
- (c) The right to equality is included in the fundamental rights. ()
- (d) There can be 550 elected members in the Rajya Sabha. ()
- (e) The judiciary acts as the guardian of the Constitution. ()

2. Choose the correct word and fill in the blanks-

- (a) There are four main elements of country: public, geographical area, and sovereignty.
(government/politics)

- (b) is the leader of the Lok Sabha. (prime minister/vice president)
- (c) is the commander-in-chief of all the three armies. (chief of army, president)
- (d) The public elects its representatives directly for the (Rajya Sabha/Lok Sabha)
- (e) Through the amendment of constitution, education has been made a fundamental right. (86th/87th)

3. Answer the following questions-

- (a) What are the basic elements of the constitution of India?

- (b) What are the qualifications to be a member of the Lok Sabha?

- (c) When does a bill become a law?

- (d) What is the contingency fund?

4. Write five lines about the judiciary.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

17.1

- (a) sovereignty (b) 26 January, 1950
(c) law (d) president
- (a) The constitution came into effect on this day.
(b) government which is of the people, by the people and for the people.
(c) Dr. Bhimrao Ambedkar

17.2

- (a) religious (b) 6
(c) 2002 (d) duty
- (a) less than 14 years old
(b) can go to the court
(c) 6 to 14 years old

17.3

- (a) public (b) upper
(c) 18 (d) 6
- (a) vice president (b) president
(c) union list, state list, concurrent list (d) 550 members

17.4

- (a) president (b) members of both the houses of the parliament
(c) prime minister (d) impeachment
- 5 years
- vice president
- 12

17.5

- (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✗ (d) ✓
- (a) president (b) 30 (c) criminal cases

Terminal Questions

1. (a) ✓ (b) ✗ (c) ✓
(d) ✓ (e) ✓
2. (a) government (b) prime minister (c) president
(d) Lok Sabha (e) 86th
3. (a) Sovereignty, socialism, secularism, democratic republic and Justice, freedom and equality.
(b) must be a citizen of the country, must have completed 25 years, must have all the qualifications that are fixed by Parliament from time to time.
(c) after it is passed by the legislature and approved by the president.
(d) The contingency fund is the central government fund. Any urgent contingent expenditure can be met with this fund.

State Government

You have already learnt about democracy and Indian Constitution. Just as we have central government in Delhi to administer the country, so in the state the state government runs the administration of the state in the same way.

Legislative assembly, legislative council, chief minister, council of ministers and governor etc are the pillars of state government. We will read about the importance, organization, function and powers of state government.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain the organization of legislative assembly and legislative council;
- Discuss the electoral process of members of legislative council and legislative assembly;
- Explain the powers and functions of legislative assembly and legislative council; and
- Analysis the role of council of ministers, chief ministers, appointment of governor and his functions.

18.1 State legislative council or Legislature

Government which runs administration in a state is known as state government. The government which runs administration in our country is known as Government of India or Central Government. Some areas known as union territories are directly administered by central government. These are: 1. Andaman and Nicobar Islands, 2. Daman and Diu, 3. Chandigarh, 4. Dadar and Nagar Haveli, 5. Pondicherry,

6. Lakshadweep and 7. Delhi. Out of these only two Pondicherry and Delhi have separate Legislative Assembly and council of ministers with the administration of central government.

Article 168 of Indian Constitution directs the organization of legislature in every state. State legislature includes governor and assemblies which may have two houses. Governor is also a part of state legislature. This is known as legislature. A single assembly or house in a state is known as state legislative assembly. The two assemblies in a state are known as legislative assembly and legislative council. Legislative assembly is considered to be lower house and legislature council is the upper house of state legislature.

Not every state in India has dual or double assemblies. This legislative council is dependent on legislative assembly. There are six states in our country having dual houses in state legislature. These are: 1. Bihar, 2. Maharashtra, 3. Uttar Pradesh, 4. Karnataka, 5. Jammu and Kashmir and 6. Andhra Pradesh.

Organization of Legislative Assembly

Legislative Assembly is the first and popular house in a state. Article 170 of Constitution of India states that the total number of members in a legislative assembly should not be less than 60. However, the maximum number should not exceed 500. But on the basis of population of states, various state assemblies have less than 60 members, as – 40 in Goa, 40 in Mizoram, 32 in Sikkim and 30 in Pondicherry. Uttar Pradesh Legislative Assembly has maximum 404 seats.

The members of legislative assembly are known as legislator or MLA (Members of Legislative Assembly). On the basis of population some seats of assembly are reserved for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled tribes. Out of elected members, one member is elected as the speaker and other a deputy speaker of the assembly. The president of legislative assembly is known as speaker. The main duty of speaker is to govern the proceedings or work of the assembly and maintain the discipline in the assembly.

If the speaker does not resign in midterm, then he fulfills the duties of the speaker till the election of new members in the house. If speaker and deputy speaker resign from assembly or they do not remain the members of assembly, then they leave the post automatically. Other than this, they can be removed by passing the motion by the members. But such motions should be presented and informed before 14 days in the assembly.

Tenure of Legislative Assembly

The duration of every legislative assembly in the country is of 5 years except Jammu and Kashmir. Only Jammu and Kashmir has six years term for legislative assembly. The tenure of legislative assembly begins from the day of its first meeting.

Election of legislators or members of legislative assembly

The members of legislative assembly are elected directly by the people of the state by using their right to vote.

A person can cast his vote when:

- He has attained 18 years of age.
- His name is in electoral roll or voter list.



Fig. 18.1

Qualification required for contesting an election in legislative assembly

Any person with the following qualifications can contest the election of a state assembly which includes:

- He should be citizen of India.
- He should have attained the age of 25 years.
- He should not be working on a profitable post in state government or government of India.
- He should not be crazy and bankrupt.
- He should not be disqualified from becoming a legislative assembly member according to any law.

Power and functions of state assembly

Many powers have been given to state assembly by the constitution of India. These powers are divided in four categories:

1. Legislative power
2. Executive power

3. Financial power
4. Other miscellaneous powers

A. Legislative Powers

- Under these powers, legislative assembly can frame laws on 61 subjects of state list and 52 subjects of concurrent list.
- Legislative assembly can amend old laws and can dissolve unrequired laws.
- Various bills related to normal conditions and finance can be presented in legislative assembly.
- Ordinances issued by governor of the state are approved in the proceedings of legislative assembly.

B. Executive Powers

Legislative assembly has full control over the council of ministers. Here, legislative assembly has more powers than legislative council.

- Members of legislative assembly can ask questions and supplementary questions to the council of ministers and criticize their work.
- Members of legislative assembly have the power to reject any bill presented in the house.
- Members of legislative assembly can present adjournment motion or calling attention bill motion in the house.
- Members of legislative assembly can remove the council of ministers by presenting no confidence motion against them.

C. Financial Powers

- Members of legislative assembly decide the budget and other monetary policies of the state.
- Issues related to finance are presented only in legislative assembly. The right to present such bills is with the finance minister of the state.
- The budget of the state for coming year is accepted by the state legislative assembly.
- Only legislative assembly has the right to abolish old taxes and implement new taxes in the state.
- Without the permission of legislative assembly, government cannot implement new taxes nor can spend a single rupee from treasury.

D. Other Miscellaneous Powers

- Only members of legislative assembly take part in the election of president.
- Members of legislative assembly elect one-third members of legislative council.

- Legislative assembly has the power to establish legislative council and also valedictory motion can be passed here.
- Some provisions/subjects in the constitution of India can be amended only after permission of at least half of representative assemblies.



Intext Questions

18.1

1. Write the names of both houses of state legislature?

2. Which state has maximum members in legislative assembly?

3. What is the minimum age to cast a vote in state legislative elections?

4. How many members of state legislative council are elected by members of legislative assembly?

18.2 Organization of Legislative Council

Legislative council is the second and upper house of state legislature. This is a permanent house. The members of this house are known as M.L.C. (Members of Legislative Council). The total members of legislative council should not exceed $\frac{1}{3}^{\text{rd}}$ of legislative assembly. However, the total number of members should not be less than 40. Only Jammu and Kashmir is an exception where the total members in legislative council are 36 due to special provision.

Members of legislative council elect a chairman and vice chairman to run the house. The chairman and vice chairman are known as speaker and deputy speaker. The elected speaker runs the house according to the constitution of India. The $\frac{1}{3}^{\text{rd}}$ member of legislative council are elected by legislative assembly. $\frac{1}{3}^{\text{rd}}$ member are elected by electoral board which includes municipal corporation of state, zila parishad, panchayats and members of other local autonomous bodies of the state.

Next, $\frac{1}{12}^{\text{th}}$ part of $\frac{1}{3}$ members of legislative council are elected by those graduates who have passed their degree minimum 3 years ago. $\frac{1}{12}^{\text{th}}$ part of $\frac{1}{3}$ members are elected by those teachers who have been teaching senior secondary and above classes from at least three years or more. Rest $\frac{1}{6}$ part left is nominated by the governor of the state. These nominated members are those who have attained a name in the field of literature, science, art, co-operative societies and social issues.

Qualification for becoming members of legislative council

A person should have the following qualification to become a member of legislative council:

- He should be a citizen of India.
- He should not be a member of legislative assembly.
- He should be minimum 30 years of age.
- He should be a resident of any legislative seat in the state. His name should be on the electoral roll or voter list of that seat.
- He should not be on a profitable post under state or central government.

Tenure of Legislative Council

- Legislative council is a permanent house. It does not get dissolved.
- The members of legislative council are elected for six years.
- 1/3rd members get retire after every two years. New members are elected for their replacement. Thus, this house is permanent.
- Moreover, if a seat gets vacant due to resignation or death of a member, then new member is elected for the rest of the term of deceased member.

Functions and power of Legislative Council

- The power of legislative council is less as compared to legislative assembly.
- Simple bills can be presented in any house of state legislature but they should be passed in both the houses at the time of implementation.
- Finance bills are presented in legislative assembly only.

Very less power is given to legislative council in regard to finance bills. The upper house has only three options:

1. The draft of the bill is accepted as sent by legislative assembly. The upper house has no power to change it.
 2. The upper house can send back the bill with suggestions.
 3. In third condition, the upper house can keep the bill for maximum 14 days.
- Finance bills are presented with the prior permission of the Governor.
 - The suggestions given by legislative council can be accepted or rejected in legislative assembly. Legislative assembly has absolute power in financial bills.



1. What is the minimum number of members in Legislative Council?

2. What is the minimum age to become a member in legislative council?

3. How many years is the tenure of legislative council?

4. Finance bills are presented in which house?

5. How many members are there in the legislative council of Jammu and Kashmir?

18.3

State Executive

A state executive is made up of governor, chief minister and council of ministers. Governor has the same powers that are given to president in the centre. Governor is the head of state executive. He is on top of hierarchy.

Appointment and qualification of Governor

A governor is appointed by the president on the advice of prime minister. President also seeks advice from the chief minister of the state before the appointment of governor. Most of times, state governor does not belong to the same state. The qualifications for the appointment of governor are as follows:

- He should be an Indian citizen.
- He should have attained 35 years of age.
- He should not be a member of parliament or any state legislature. If he is a member, he should resign from this post after being appointed as a governor of any state.
- He should not be working on any post under government.
- He should not have been punished by any court of law.

Tenure of Governor

- Generally, a governor is appointed for five years but he can still remain on his post till the appointment of next governor.
- Any person can remain governor according to the pleasure of the president. However, he can also be called back before his tenure ends as per the decision of the president.
- Other than this, a person can resign from the post of governor before the end of his tenure.

Functions and powers of governor

- Governor is the head of state executive. Every work related to executive is done under his name. He uses this power with the advice of chief minister and his council of ministers.
- Governor appoints the leader of party in majority in lower house as chief minister. He appoints council of ministers as per the advice of chief minister.
- He also appoints the chairman of state public service commission, advocate general of the state and other high officials in the state.
- Governor has the right to call the session of state legislature and also to adjourn it. State assembly can be dissolved by the governor before the completion of its tenure.
- Every year the first session of both the houses of state legislature begins with the address by the governor.
- He can send his written speech to any house of legislature.
- If governor desires, he can call a joint session of both the houses of state legislature.
- Bills become law after the signature and permission of governor.
- Governor has the right to nominate 1/6 members of upper house of state legislature. These members are those who are famous in the field of literature, arts, science, cooperativeness and social service.
- Governor can issue ordinance in special conditions. However, he can use this power when the session of state legislature is not going on.
- State governor can lessen the punishment for any culprit in his state. He can also forgive them and may also change their punishment also. Moreover, he can only use this power, when the culprits are punished for breaking rules in the state. Governor has no right to change their punishment from being hanged to lifetime imprisonment. This right is only given to the president by the constitution of India.
- Governor is the chancellor of all the universities in his state.
- Governor has special rights in special conditions. Governor can advise the president to dissolve the state legislature.
- If president rule is implemented, then the whole administration of the state comes directly under the governor. In such conditions, governor works as the representative of central government.



1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:

- A) Governor is appointed by _____. (Chief Minister/ President/ Speaker)
- B) According to constitution, Governor is the _____ head of the state.
(Executive/ Municipal Corporation/ Zila Parishad)
- C) Governor appoints the leader of majority party in state assembly as _____.
(Attorney General/ Chief Secretary/ Chief Minister)
- D) Governor is the chancellor of all the _____ of the state. (Universities/ Hospitals/ Schools)

18.4 Appointment and Qualification of Chief Minister

The role of chief minister in the state is same as of prime minister in the centre. Chief Minister is the head of council of ministers in the state. He is the leader of the party in majority in state assembly. He is appointed as the chief minister by the governor of the state.

Sometimes it happens that no party gets clear cut majority in state assembly. In such cases, governor appoints the leader of largest party or a leader of any party who can prove his majority in the eyes of governor. Governor gives time to him to prove his majority in the house.

A person who is not a member of legislative assembly can also be appointed as a chief minister. This is done in a condition when such a person is elected as the leader of the majority party of the legislative assembly. However, he should become the member of the state legislature in six months of his appointment as the chief minister of the state. If he fails to do this, then he should resign from the post of chief minister.

Functions and powers of chief minister

- State administration of the state is administered by the chief minister of the state. He administers all the departments of state administration.
- He selects ministers for the council of ministers.
- He divides portfolios among his council of ministers.
- He solves disputes among various departments and ministers of state.
- All ministers work in their departments under the leadership of chief minister.
- The policies of the state are designed by the chief minister and his council of ministers.
- Governor uses his powers to appoint the chairman of service commission, attorney general and other high official on the advice of chief minister and his council of ministers.

- Chief Minister can remove any minister from his council of ministers or can change their portfolios.
- Chief Minister can also advise the governor to dissolve state legislative assembly before the completion of its tenure.
- Advices of governor are sent to council of ministers through chief ministers. Governor also gets administration related information from chief minister.
- Laws are framed in the state with acceptance and desire of chief minister.



Intext Questions

18.4

Fill in the blanks with correct option:

- A) State council of ministers is headed by _____. (Chief Minister/ Finance Minister)
- B) Chief Minister can remove any _____ from his post as per his wish. (Legislator/ Minister)
- C) Chief Minister is the leader of majority party in _____. (Legislative assembly/ legislative council)
- D) _____ are framed in the state with the desire and acceptance of state legislature. (Laws/ monsoon)

18.5 Organization of Council of Ministers

Governor constitutes council of ministers. Only those persons are included in council of ministers who are members of state legislative council or legislative assembly. In special conditions, that person who is not a member of any house can also be included in council of ministers. But he has to become member of any house in six months. If he does not become member, then he has to resign from council of ministers.

Chief Minister is the first one to be appointed in council of ministers. Governor then appoints other ministers according to the advice of chief minister. The number of ministers in council of ministers should not exceed 15% of total number of members in the legislative assembly. The number of ministers is decided according to the need and functions of the state. Due to this reason, the number of ministers in council of ministers keeps changing.

Council of ministers includes cabinet ministers, state ministers and deputy ministers. Chief Minister distributes departments in council of ministers. Chief Minister and Council of ministers keep their post till they have majority in legislative assembly. Council of ministers can be removed by passing no confidence motion in legislative assembly.

Functions and rights of council of ministers

- The real administration of the state is run by the chief minister and council of ministers in the name of governor.
- Council of ministers is responsible to legislative assembly. Therefore, legislative assembly keeps a check on council of ministers.
- Financial policy of the state is determined by the council of ministers.
- Council of ministers decides the annual budget and the items of income and expenditure of the state government.
- Governor has the power of appointment which is used by council of ministers.
- Council of ministers decides state policy, frame laws and welfare policies.
- In short, the council of ministers is the real executive.



Intext Questions

18.5

1. Who constitutes council of ministers?

2. Who is given the first appointment in council of ministers?

3. Who distributes portfolios to the ministers in council of ministers?



What you have learnt

- Executive of the state is known as Council of Ministers in state legislature.
- Some states have dual houses in state legislature whereas some have only one house in state legislature.
- The lower house is known as state legislative assembly. One house assembly is known as legislative assembly.
- Dual legislature has two houses, namely, lower house and upper house. Lower house is known as legislative assembly. Upper house is known as legislative council.

- There are only six states in our country which have two houses of state legislature. These are :
 - ♦ Uttar Pradesh
 - ♦ Bihar
 - ♦ Karnataka
 - ♦ Maharashtra
 - ♦ Andhra Pradesh
 - ♦ Jammu and Kashmir
- Legislative council is the permanent house of state legislature.
 - ♦ The members of state legislative assembly are known as Legislator or M.L.A. (Member of Legislative Assembly).
 - ♦ The members of legislative council are known as M.L.C. (Members of Legislative Council).
 - ♦ The executive of the state is constituted of Governor, chief minister and council of ministers.
 - ♦ Governor is appointed by the president on the advice of prime minister.
 - ♦ All the work of executive of the state are done in the name of governor.
 - ♦ Any bill becomes law with the assent of governor.
 - ♦ Governor can advise to dissolve state legislative assembly in special conditions.
 - ♦ If president rule is implemented in a state, then the whole administrative machinery comes under governor.
 - ♦ Governor is the chancellor of all the universities of the state.
 - ♦ Chief Minister is the head of council of ministers.
 - ♦ Council of ministers is organized by governor.
 - ♦ Council of ministers includes cabinet minister, state ministers and deputy ministers.
 - ♦ Chief Minister is the leader of majority party in the state legislative assembly.
 - ♦ The whole administration of the state is in the hands of chief minister.
 - ♦ Chief Minister can also advise the governor to dissolve legislative assembly before its tenure's completion.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:

(Legislator, chief minister, state, legislature, president, council)

- A. Government which runs administration in the state is known as _____ government.
- B. State executive is also known as _____.
- C. The members of state legislative assembly are known as _____ or M.L.A.
- D. The members of state legislature take part in the election of _____.
- E. Legislative _____ is the upper house of state legislature.
- F. The administration of the state is in the hands of _____.

2. Answer the following questions :

- A. What is the maximum number of seats in Uttar Pradesh legislative assembly?

- B. What is the post of chairman of state legislative assembly?

- C. How many years is the tenure of Jammu and Kashmir state legislature?

- D. Which state has the least number of members in legislative council?

- E. Who is the chancellor of all the universities of the state?

3. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (✗) the wrong one:

- a. One house legislature in a state is known as state legislative assembly. ()
- b. President is elected by the Government of India. ()

- c. There is no minimum age required to be elected as a member of legislative council. ()
- d. Legislative council has less power in comparison to legislative assembly. ()
- e. Governor must be a member of legislative assembly. ()
- f. Governor is a part of state legislature. ()

4. Match the following:

State legislature	upper house
Legislative assembly chairman	chief minister
Legislative council	legislative council
Permanent house	legislature
Leader of majority party in house	speaker

5. Write any four functions of chief minister of the state?

Let us do it

- What sort of a state government should be? What works it should do for the benefit of the people? Discuss among yourself.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

18.1

- 1. Legislative assembly and legislative council 2. Uttar Pradesh
- 3. 18 years 4. one-third

18.2

- 1. 40 2. 30 years
- 3. 6 years 4. Legislative assembly
- 5. 36

18.3

1. President
2. Executive
3. Chief Minister
4. Universities

18.4

1. Chief Minister
2. Minister
3. Legislative Assembly
4. Law

18.5

1. by Governor
2. of Chief Minister
3. Governor on the advice of chief minister

Terminal Questions

1. A. state
B. legislature
C. Legislature
D. President
E. Council
F. Chief Minister
2. A. 404
B. Speaker
C. 6 years
D. Jammu and Kashmir
E. Governor
F. Every citizen who has attained 18 years of age and his name is present on electoral roll.
3. a. ✓
b. ✗
c. ✗
d. ✓
e. ✗
f. ✓
4. 1. Legislature
2. Speaker
3. Upper house
4. Legislative council
5. Chief Minister

Democracy and Local Administration

Today's world is the world of democracy. The number of democratic governments is increasing day by day. Moreover, revolts are increasing against dictatorship now a days. The question arises why democracy is getting popular so much today?

We all know that every country and society has some problems. People expect that government should solve all these problems. Democracy is such a system where government is answerable to people. Therefore, democracy is the best administrative system to solve the problems of people. This system gives various powers to the citizens and makes them powerful. Elections in democracy are based on Universal Adult Franchise. By Universal Adult Franchise we mean any citizen can vote after attaining the age of 18 years and his name is on electoral roll. With the election results, governmental power is transferred from one person to another.

This is the chief feature of a democratic government. India is the biggest democracy of the world. In our country, democratic governments run on three levels, centre, state and local. In this chapter, we will study about the basic elements if democracy and local administration.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Examine the meaning of democracy, its elements and its varied dimensions;
- Explain the concept of Universal Adult Franchise, election process and its types, general elections, midterm elections, by polls etc.;
- Discuss the political parties, its types and their roles;

- Understand the role of media and communication tools in democracy;
- Tell about coalition government and
- Discuss the rural local administration which includes panchayat system and its tripolar structure with urban local administration.

19.1 Meaning of Democracy

Come on, let us understand democracy.

Some employees were having tea snacks in their office during lunch time. They were talking to each other. Suddenly, 4 people sitting on a table started talking loudly to each other. Therefore, other people also started listening to their talk. The topic for discussion was politics in the country and the world, corruption, leaders, political parties etc. If one started criticizing one leader, then the other employee came in its support. The debate was going on about the governance of the government and its policies. It was looking like a parliament. They were analyzing works of gram pradhan to chief minister. They also discussed the work of prime minister. The main point was the achievement and failure of these people. Someone was worried about corruption and someone was unhappy due to the fact that the party in power did not fulfil the promises that they made before elections. Nearby, women were discussing the inflation. The discussion started with leader and political parties ended with complete political system and democracy of the country. One person said - "for what elections and which democracy? There was a fight in our village during panchayat elections which could not be solved till now. Candidates spend a lot of money in elections but development could not be seen in the village."

One person was quietly hearing the whole debate. He came close and said, "I have been listening to all your discussion attentively. I agree that there are many problems in our country which need to be solved. I do not agree with the fact that democracy is useless and has failed. You and I can keep our issue in open areas in front of chief minister, prime minister or anybody. The fact is that we can criticize anybody just because of freedom/independence. We are getting this freedom because of democracy. I agree that some leaders and people's representatives are corrupt but who elected them? We, that is, you and me. If we vote by using our mind and intelligence with logic not because of caste, religion, language, area etc. then we can make this system better. Democracy is one such system where the ultimate power lies with the people. It is our responsibility to make democracy successful." He went after he finished his words. People sitting there, started thinking as if they were trying to understand democracy in a new light.

Democracy is a system of administration where people rule or representatives of people rule. Therefore, it is said, democracy is the rule for the people, of the people and by the people.

There has been democracy in India since ages. One such form is panchayat. It is also referred that the main function of the king is to serve the people. Democracy has also the same objective. Social life in India

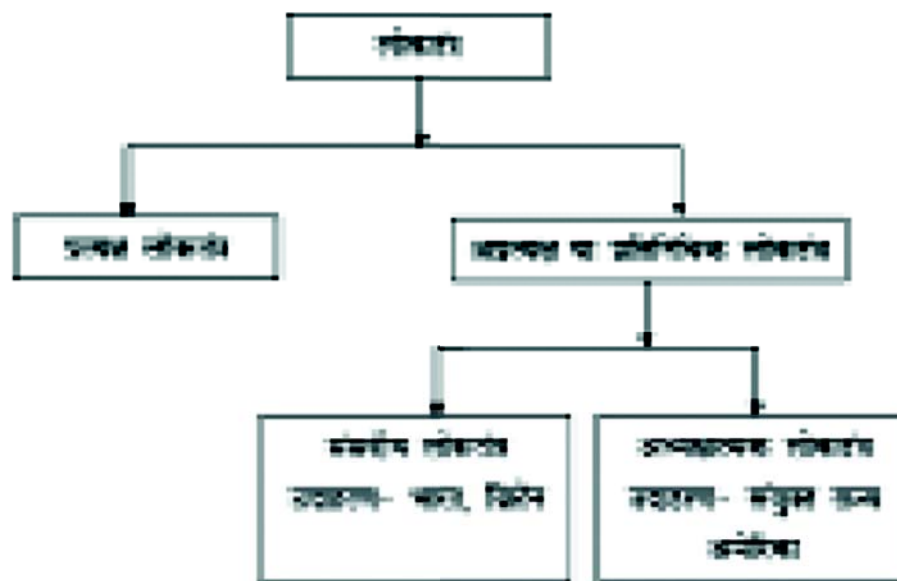
always had independence in thoughts, tolerance towards the opponent's beliefs and also respects for them. This is the reason due to which India ranks in successful democracy in newly independent countries where success rate of democracy is very less.

The primary form of democracy is direct democracy where there is no representative. People make their own rules and follow them. Direct democracy is successful in small states having less population. This is not possible in large population and big states. This form is seen in some parts of Switzerland now a days.

In present age, we have indirect democracy. This is also known as representative democracy. Here, people do not govern but they are governed by their representatives. The representative democracy is divided in two types: parliamentary democracy and presidential democracy.

Britain is known as the mother of democracy. It is because modern democracy began from Britain. Britain has parliamentary form of democracy. Due to British rule, the seeds of British democracy were sown in India. Some democratic institutions were formed in pre independence era in India. Therefore, independent India chose parliamentary democracy as form of government in their constitution. President is the chairman of state and the country in parliamentary democracy. All the executive power lies with the prime minister. But president can use these powers with the advice of prime minister and his council of ministers. This is known as parliamentary form of democracy.

Prime minister is the real head of executive. Prime minister and his council of ministers should have majority in lower house or lok sabha. Therefore, the executive is responsible to legislative. On the other hand, president is the head of the state and government in America. This is known as presidential system of democracy. He is the head of executive but to be in power he does not need to be in majority in lower house. The lower house is known as representative assembly in America.



Types of democracy



1. Tick (✓) the correct statement and cross (✗) the wrong one:

- A. The thoughts of opponents are respected in democracy. ()
- B. Citizens cannot criticize government in democracy. ()
- C. People have final power in their hands in democracy. ()
- D. Democracy provides independence in thoughts and expression. ()

2. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:

- A. _____ has presidential form of democracy. (Britain/ United States of America)
- B. India has _____ form of democracy. (Parliamentary/ Presidential)
- C. _____ is the mother of modern democracy. (United States of America/ Britain)
- D. _____ is the real executive head in India. (Prime Minister/ President)

19.2 Basic elements of democracy

There are some basic elements of democracy. The major elements or components are:

- 1. **Rule of Law:** Every democracy has a written or unwritten constitution. The administration of the country is run on the rule and law of the constitution. A person sitting on high post can only do the work as per the power provided to him by the constitution. Therefore, it is said that the constitution is important than a person in a democracy. This means that rule of law is the biggest. It is not a person who rules but law does.



Fig. 19.1: Constitution of India

2. **Fundamental Rights:** Democracy is that system of administration where citizens are given many types of rights and freedom. Freedom and equality are the basis of democracy. The country which does not have these two rights cannot be a democracy. Indian constitution has given six fundamental rights to its citizens.



Fig. 19.2: A person giving speech

3. **Universal Adult Franchise:** You have already read that representatives elected by people rule in democracy. People choose these representatives by using their vote. Therefore, without the use of vote there can be no democracy. In early times, people had the right to vote in Britain. Only males used to cast their votes for a long time in Britain. This was known as limited voting. Women were given the right to vote in 1928.



Fig 19.3: Participation of women in elections

As democracy became stronger, voting process expanded. Democratic countries give the right to their citizens to cast their vote after attaining a fixed age. This right to vote is provided to every citizen after 18 years without any discrimination. Universal adult franchise is based on the principle of equality. There is no difference on the basis of caste, religion, category, gender, race etc. Every citizen has equal right to vote. The importance of every vote is equal, whether poor or rich.

4. **Political Parties:** Political party is also an important element in democracy. We all listen to and talk about political parties. We are familiar with their name and symbols. We know people elect the government in a democracy.

However, there is an important role of political parties in election and government. Every political party declares its candidates, policies and programs in elections. The party which gets majority runs the administration of the state or country. Other parties become opposition parties.

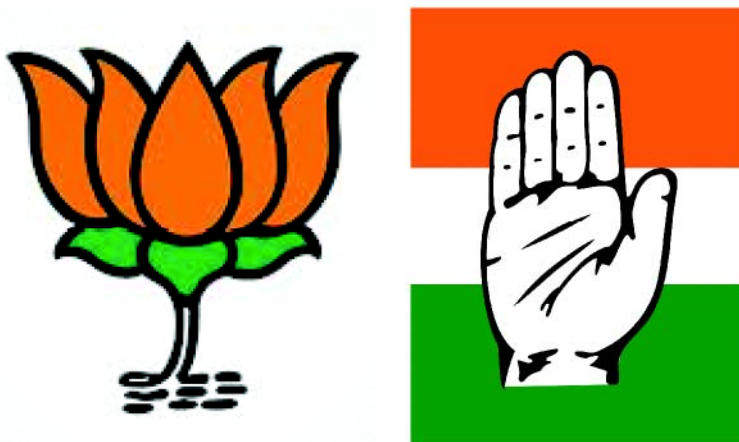


Fig. 19.4: Election symbols of two main political parties

5. **Election process:** For a successful democracy, it is required that elections should be conducted in an independent and non biased environment. We cannot call a country democracy where elections are not conducted in an independent and non biased environment. A separate organization conducts election in India. This is known as Election Commission of India. Election Commission of India has the responsibility of conducting free elections in India.

There are three types of elections in our country:

A. General Elections:

Elections that are conducted after the completion of 5 year term of government are known as general elections.

B. Midterm Elections:

These elections are held before the completion of 5 year term. This is known as midterm elections.

C. By Elections:

If a member of parliament or state assembly dies or resigns, then his seat becomes vacant. The elections held to fill these vacant seats are known as by elections.

6. Media and other means of communication: Media and other medium of communications are known as fourth pillar of democracy. The other three pillars are:

1. Legislature
2. Executive
3. Judiciary

We can now understand media of communication in a better way. Various media of communication like T.V., radio, news paper and magazines play an important role in building referendum of the people. These media make government aware about the problems and demands of the people. Therefore, for a successful democracy, media should be free and non-biased.



Intext Questions 19.2

1. What is the age of voting in India?

2. What is the importance of constitution?

3. In which year, women were given the right to vote in Britain?

4. Write the names of any four political parties?

19.3 Coalition Government

We have already discussed that the government is formed by the party in majority in Lok Sabha or state legislative assembly. However, it is also seen that sometimes no party gets majority in the house. Suppose, there are 70 seats in a state legislative assembly. For majority a party needs at least half of total seats. Here, the number is 36. Let us assume, after elections 4 parties get 5, 10, 20 and 25 seats respectively. We see

no one has got 36 seats. Not even a single party has got 36 seats. Two parties can come together to form a government so that their total seats are 36 or more than that. Such a government is known as coalition government.

Coalition government is unstable and weak because if one party withdraws support, then the government loses majority in state legislative assembly. Then the government does not have right to rule. This happens because it loses confidence of the house. Various state and central governments in India have been a coalition government.

19.4 Local administrations in India

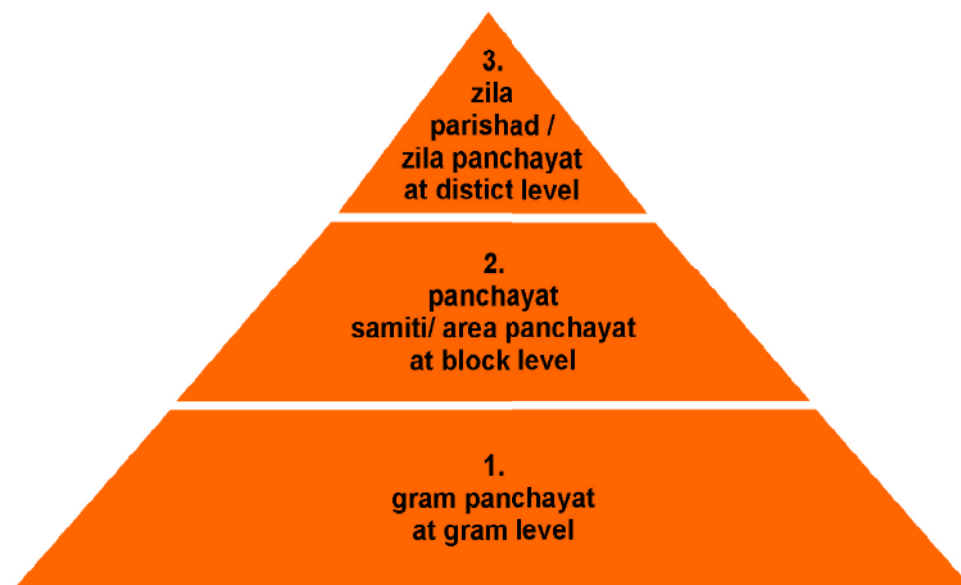
There are three levels of local administration in India - central level, state level and local level. The central government rules over the whole country. We have 29 state governments besides central government. The powers have been divided on both of these levels by the constitution of India. Such a system is known as federal system. Our country has a third level of administration. This is also known as local administration. Panchayati raj system in rural area and nagar nigam (Municipal Corporation) and nagar palika (Municipality) in urban areas are examples of local administration.

73rd and 74th amendment in constitution gave these institutions of local administration recognition of a constitutional institution in 1992.

Nagar nigam is present in big and metro cities whereas nagar palika in small cities. These organizations work for road lights, water supply, cleanliness, education, maintaining parks etc with others.

Tripolar structure of Panchayati raj System

73rd constitutional amendment established tripolar structure of panchayati raj system in rural areas.



Gram panchayat is the lowest level of panchayati raj system. Gram sabha is made up of all adult persons (both male and female) living in a gram panchayat. Gram sabha elects the members of gram panchayat. Gram sabha also controls the functions and finance of gram panchayat. Panchayati raj system makes democracy strong.

Gram Panchayat

Panchayat does a lot of work on rural level like drinking water, maintaining roads, street lights, electric supply, maintain community hall or making panchayat house etc. Other than this Gram Panchayat implements the development and employment schemes run by central and state government on rural level. Gram Panchayat can collect some taxes like fairs, animal fairs, taxes on vehicles etc. Gram panchayat can also collect rent by giving community hall on rent. Grants by central and state government are also a source of income of gram panchayat.

Area panchayat

Area panchayat or panchayat samiti is the middle level of panchayati raj system. This samiti or committee is on block level. The work done by panchayat samiti is to provide drinking water, better seeds, development of linking roads to villages, improving the race of animals etc. Gram panchayat comes under development block. The members of gram panchayat comprises of every gram pradhan in the block development.

Zila Parishad or District Panchayat

This is the top institution of Panchayati Raj system. The members of district panchayat are the chairman of panchayat samiti/block panchayats and some nominated members. Zila Panchayat controls and monitors the developmental works of the whole district. The main functions of Zila Parishad are related to irrigation facility, cottage industries, dairy, opening up of new schools etc. Apart from taxes, Block panchayats and Zila Panchayats have income in form of grants from central and state government.



Intext Questions

19.3

1. Match the following

A

Delhi

District

Block

Village

B

Gram Panchayat

Panchayat Samiti

Zila Parishad/Zila Panchayat

Nagar Nigam

2. Who are the members of Gram Sabha?

3. What are the main sources of income of Block Panchayats and Zila Panchayats?



What you have learnt

- Democracy is a popular system of administration.
- Democracy is defined as the rule of the people, for the people and by the people.
- In representative or indirect democracy, representatives of people rule in the name of the people.
- India has parliamentary form of government.
- Democracy lays emphasis on independence, equality, justice and brotherhood.
- There are some basic elements of democracy. Without these elements of democracy, we cannot think of democracy. These elements are:
 - ==> Rule of constitution and law
 - ==> Fundamental rights
- Indian constitution provides six fundamental rights to its citizens.
 - ==> Universal Adult Franchise
- Right to vote without any discrimination
 - ==> Political parties
- India has multi party system.
 - ==> Independent and free elections
- Election commission of India has been set up to organize free and non biased elections in the country.
 - ==> Medium of communication and media
- Free and non biased media is the fourth pillar of democracy.
- Mixed or coalition government - in a multi party system, when a party does not get majority in election, then one or two parties join to form a government. Such government is known as coalition government.
- Local administration - Nagar Nigam in urban areas and tripolar structure of panchayat raj system in rural areas make local administration.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
 - a. _____ is the largest and biggest democracy in the world. (Pakistan/India/Nepal)
 - b. Modern democracy began in _____. (America/Australia/Britain)
 - c. The minimum age of voting is fixed _____ years. (20/21/18)
 - d. Lok Sabah has 543 seats. To form a government, a party should have minimum _____ seats. (250/300/272)
 - e. 73rd amendment has established _____ structure of panchayati raj system in rural areas. (Tripolar/single/double)

2. Answer the following questions:
 - a. Which kinds of cities have nagar nigam?

 - b. Write the names of two forms of representative democracy?

 - c. Which is the topmost institution of panchayati raj system?

 - d. What is the name of government when many parties come together to form a government?

3. What are the basic elements of democracy?

Let us do it

See a debate on 4 national T.V. channels related to a public issue, event or problem. Note down the views of various political parties and related organizations in these debates. You can also take help from news papers and magazines.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

19.1

- a. ✓ b. ✗ c. ✓ d. ✓
- a. United States of America
b. Parliamentary
c. Britain
d. prime minister

19.2

- 18 years and more
- Administration of the state is run on the basis of constitution. There would be chaos and confusion in the country without constitution.
- in 1928
- a. Bhartiya Janta Party
b. Indian National Congress
c. Aam Aadmi Party
d. Communist party of India (or any other)

19.3

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Delhi metro | Nagar Nigam |
| District | zila parishad/ zila panchayat |
| Block | panchayat samiti |
| Village | Gram Panchayat |

2. All adults, male and female, in gram panchayat area
3. Taxes and grants from central and state government.

Terminal Questions

1.
 - A. India
 - B. Britain
 - C. 18 years
 - D. 272
 - E. Tripolar
2.
 - A. Big cities/metros
 - B. Parliamentary and presidential democracy
 - C. Zila Parishad/ Zila panchayat
 - D. mixed government or coalition government

Our Advancing Steps

Our country has developed a lot in every aspect after independence. We have made our own identity in the field of agriculture, industries, commerce, handicrafts, technology, education, sports, literature, music etc. But we have to develop more in these fields. Government is making new policies to speed up our development. Government is implementing these new policies. Various reform programs are put forward by government.

Developmental programmes and policies are now taken as mission. We will study about four policies in this chapter. These are- skill India, digital India, clean India and clean Ganga.



Objectives

After studying this lesson you will be able to:

- Explain objectives of skill India program;
- Explain the benefits of skill India programme;
- Examine the objective of digital India program;
- Examine the importance of cleanliness;
- Discuss the objective of clean India campaign;
- Discuss the objective of clean Ganga mission and
- Explain the religious, cultural, social and economic importance of Ganga.

20.1 Skill India Program

It is essential for the economic and social development of the country that its citizens should be skilled in their work. By skilled we mean that they can do their work in a better way. If this does not happen, then the speed of development is slow in the country. Skills are especially required for employment. The question arises whom should we call skilled? A person is called skilled when he has full knowledge and knows every minute detail of his work. One can fulfill the demands of his work without any error in less time. One who can bring new innovations in his work and can experiment according to the choice and demands of the customers in a given time. He can inculcate new technology related to his work.

Youth is dependent on the success of his employment and skill. Our country is in good condition in this regard. A big portion of our country's population is less than 25 years old. The main objective of skill India program is to make this population skilled and employed. This program was started by Government of India 15 July, 2015. Let us read about the main objectives of this program.



Fig 20.1: Skill India Program

Objectives of Skill India Program

- To provide employment opportunities to youth in underdeveloped areas.
- Development of new areas for employment
- To boost confidence and provide employment to poor youth

- To develop skills in poor youth who could not get good education due to poverty; so that these people become self-reliant.
- Planned skill development of poor youth to provide employment opportunities
- To provide employment for country youth in foreign countries by developing their skills.
- Most of the youth are familiar with the traditional product making like riding vehicles, stitching clothes, hair cutting, making toys and utensils from mud, making leaf sheets for food, wooden work, gardening etc. However, these skills can be developed and are given recognition by doing many courses and certificates.

In this way, the main objective of skill India is to provide employment opportunities to youth. This program also makes them self-dependent. In order to make this program successful, all government, non-government, private and educational institutions are working together.

Benefits of Skill India Program

- This program will stop the problem of unemployment.
- The youth who is skilled in traditional work will be given certificate. This will give identity to their skills and provide employment in the country and the world.
- The country's youth will become self-reliant and get better employment. Their hard labour will be used for country's development. This will lessen crime in the country and will make them attentive in their work.
- This will improve their standard of living.
- This will lessen poverty and increase the pace of development.



Intext Questions 20.1

1. Which factors are responsible for success in employment and skill development?

2. When did skill India program start?

3. What will decrease if country's youth becomes self-reliant?

20.2 Digital India program

Digital India means an India where every citizen is connected to electronic medium. By electronic medium we mean mobile phone, computer, laptop, internet etc. You all must be using mobile phone. Maximum youth use smart mobile phones in today's world. These people are connected to internet most of the time. There was a time when we could not think of mobile phone. Telephone was available only in houses of rich people, offices and companies. Today mobile phones, computer and internet are available in urban areas and rural areas.



Fig. 20.2: Digital India

The importance of electronic medium is increasing day by day in today's world. These are making our life easy and facilitating. Due to internet we get news in just a second. Internet also gives many information about many government and non-government department. Various documents are also available on internet. You can also see the ledger (khasra-khatoni) of your farm on internet. By using ATM card, we can get money easily. There is no need to go to bank. We can book bus, train and air tickets by using smart phones or computer at our home. We can also file complaint by using internet. Many exam forms and job forms are also filled using internet.

Due to these facilities, government has decided to make internet available to every citizen. Therefore, the government has planned a program which makes every citizen of India connected to digital work system. In other words, the government tries to connect every citizen to internet. This program is known as digital India program. This program was started on 7 august 2014. Let us learn about the objectives and functions of digital India Program.

Objectives and functions of Digital India Program

- Every citizen of India especially youth and student should be connected and use internet facilities.
- Every citizen can know about the programs and information about a government department or a non government department through internet. It is because all the information is loaded on internet.



Fig 20.3: Digital India

Benefits of digital India program

- Every information and knowledge is online. Therefore, we need not to go anywhere else in search of information.
- E-facility centre will stop corruption. Citizens need not give bribe and need not face exploitation for their work.
- If all the transactions are online, then time will be saved of the person. People are not required to go to bank, offices, ticket window etc. Moreover, they need not take cash with them everywhere.
- All the new information can be seen on internet. Government plans, programs, policies and decisions are provided from time to time. This will create awareness and people will know about their rights.
- People will not be required to pay money for using internet.
- Paper will be saved while using digital facilities. Trees will be saved.
- All types of grants, relief, scholarship, labour and pension will be transferred in bank account. This will help in curbing black marketing and bribe.
- Having Indian Citizen Identity card (I.C.I.C.). Or identity number, there is no use of carrying paper with the individual.
- By e- voting every citizen can use his vote at the time of elections.
- Many young people will get employment in digital India program. This will help in curbing unemployment.



Intext Questions 20.2

1. Fill in the blanks with the correct option :

- Digital India means an India where every citizen is connected to _____ medium. (Electric/ electronic)
- Posting anything on _____ is known as online. (internet/register)
- Digital India program started on 7 _____ 2014. (October/august)
- By digitalizing every work will lessen the use of _____. (paper/brain)

20.3 Clean India movement (Swachh Bharat Abhiyaan)

- Everybody knows the importance of cleanliness. But we are not aware about it. Let us see some scenes from our surroundings. We see garbage on road and park everywhere.
- Drainage system is not clean. The dirty water is clogged on roads. People come and go in that water. People spit tobacco and other rubbish things anywhere.
- Drainage pipes are blocked due to polythene and garbage.
- There is only dirt on the coast of river.
- Dirt is seen on bus stand, railway station and other public places.
- Many people do poop in open areas.



Fig 20.4: Clean India campaign

Think about these points. Who is responsible for this dirt? Is this not a shame on us? Therefore, we all are responsible for this dirt. Cleanliness and health have a deep relation. Various kinds of germs take birth in dirty surroundings. Where there is cleanliness, there is health. Clean place looks beautiful.

To make and reestablish the relation between cleanliness and health, government has started clean India campaign. This campaign was launched by Prime Minister Sh. Narendra Modi on 2 October, 2014 at Rajghat in New Delhi. He started this campaign by brooming this place. The question arises why prime minister started this movement on 2nd October? Why this program started at Rajghat?

You now that 2nd October is the birthday of our father of the nation, Mahatma Gandhi ji. Rajghat is the Samadhi (place of cremation) of Gandhi ji. Gandhi ji liked cleanliness and disliked dirt. He had a dream to make India clean, healthy and beautiful. He tried to make people aware of cleanliness. The goal of this program is scheduled to be achieved till 2 October, 2019. This will be 150th birthday of Gandhi ji. If we achieve this target of this mission, this will be our biggest tribute to Gandhi ji.

The logo of clean India campaign has been made from the spectacles of Gandhi ji. This logo reminds us of Gandhi ji and motivates us to move towards cleanliness. Let us, understand the objective and functions of clean India campaign.



Fig 20.5: Participation in Clean India Campaign

Objectives and functions of clean India campaign

- To stop the habit of open area poop of people of India.
- Remove the system of removing dirt with hand. People should learn to flush it out.
- Make change in people's thinking regarding cleanliness.
- Making people aware of cleanliness and health.
- Organizing programs of public health and cleanliness to people make aware.
- Making strong urban local institutions to curb and manage garbage.

- Using various mediums like news papers, T.V. and social media etc. for creating awareness about clean India campaign.
- Seeking help from schools, colleges, NGOs and industrial houses to fulfil the objectives of the campaign. Moreover, these also provide speed for the campaign.

Our responsibility

Clean India campaign is not only a government mission. It is a movement of masses. It is for the life, health and happiness of the people. This mission is to make good changes in the habits of the people. This mission will be successful when we understand the responsibilities. Let us understand what we can do to make this clean India campaign successful:

- We should use toilets. Do not go for toilet in open.
- We should make toilets in our house. While planning for a house, we should prepare toilets.
- We should not throw garbage here and there.
- We should not throw dirt here and there.
- If we see anybody throwing garbage here and there, we should stop him.
- We should tell children the importance of health and cleanliness.
- Cleanliness should be a part of our life system.



Intext Questions 20.3

- Most of the people go for pooping in:
 - Pit
 - Water
 - Open
 - Bathing
- Cleanliness is related to:
 - Ground
 - Health
 - Entertainment
 - Animals
- The place of cremation Gandhi ji is
 - Ganga coast
 - India Gate
 - Ramleela ground
 - Rajghat

20.4 Clean Ganga Movement (Swachh Ganga Abhiyaan)

There will be hardly any person who does not know about river Ganga. Ganga has a social, cultural, spiritual and economic importance for us. This river is known as life line of our country. The plains of river Ganga are highly fertile. A larger number of people get their earning from farming in the land area near to Ganga. Ganga is the cultural and spiritual identity of our country. This provides incomes to lakh of people. Ganga is known as National River. We call Ganga as Maa Ganga. This river is associated with our belief, trust, religious and spiritual sentiments. Let us know more about river Ganga.

Chief characteristics of Ganga River

- Ganga River originates from Gangotri glacier. Glacier means a river of ice. The river starts from a place named Gomukh near Gangotri. Therefore, Gomukh is considered to be the origin point of Ganga.
- The flow of Gomukh is known as Bhagirathi. This Bhagirathi joins Alaknanda in Devprayag. After this point, it comes to be known as Ganga.
- River Ganga falls into Bay of Bengal. Before falling into Bay of Bengal, it flows in the states of Uttarakhand, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand and West Bengal. The place where Ganga joins the ocean or sagar is known as Ganga Sagar.
- The total length of Ganga is 2071 km.
- From Gomukh to Ganga Sagar, River Ganga flows through 53 districts and 253 blocks of 1657 gram panchayats which are situated near the coastal areas of Ganga.
- Various animals and herbs are found in the forest areas near the coast of Ganga.
- Many aquatic animals like fishes, alligators, dolphins etc are found in Ganga.
- Many places of religious pilgrimage like Rishikesh, Haridwar, Allahbad, Varanasi etc. are situated near the Ganga.
- Mahakumbh and Ardhkumbh fairs are organized in Haridwar and Allahbad. Allahabad is called Triveni due to meeting of three rivers. These three rivers are Ganga, Yamuna and Saraswati. The water of river Ganga is considered pure and sacred. Pure Ganga water does not rot even if stored for a long time.
- River Ganga meets Yamuna, RamGanga, Ghagra, Tapti, Gandak and Kosi from north.
- Rivers like Chambal, Son, Betwa, Kaen and South Tans etc come to meet Ganga from Deccan plateau.
- Ganga is the oldest river. Vedas and Puranas and other holy scriptures refer to and discuss about river Ganga.

In this way Ganga is an important element of our life and culture. It is losing its existence due to increasing pollution and harmful chemicals. The water of Ganga is considered and known as Amrit. Pollution of Ganga is a issue of worry. Government has started clean Ganga campaign in this regard. This campaign is also known as Namami Gange, Nirmal Ganga and Swachh Ganga etc. This campaign officially started on 30 January, 2016.

How pollution is increasing in Ganga

- People throw paper wastage, polythene etc. in the river.
- The water of Ganga contains the ashes of our ancestors.
- People wash their clothes and animals. People also bathe in Ganga.
- Village people go for pooping near the banks of Ganga.
- Industrial waste is thrown in Ganga.
- Chemical waste is also thrown in river Ganga.

Ganga is considered by us to be pure. But we are not serious about its cleanliness. Cleanliness and purity go hand in hand. We should save the river from dirt and pollution. The main objective of clean Ganga campaign is to clean the coast of Ganga. Dirt should not be thrown in Ganga so that Ganga does not get polluted.

Clean Ganga campaign is not a government campaign. It is a mission for every citizen. Cooperation is required from them.

Let us see what we can do to clean Ganga

Our responsibility

- We should know the importance of Ganga. We should be serious about its cleanliness and preservation.
- We should discourage people from polluting Ganga.
- Neither we should throw dirt in water and nor allow anybody to throw dirt.
- We should make toilets in our houses. We should not poop near the coastal areas of Ganga.
- We should try to clean the coastal areas with our friends and should ask everyone to stop people from throwing garbage when they see it.
- We should explain about the cleanliness of Ganga to our children so that they help in Clean Ganga campaign.



Intext Questions 20.4

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
 1. _____ is the name of Ganga before Devprayag. (Alak nanda/ Bhagirathi/ Mandakini)
 2. Due to increasing pollution, the existence of Ganga is in _____. (fight/bay/danger)
 3. Cleanliness and _____ are related. (purity/ill/law)
 4. We should be _____ about the cleanliness of Ganga and its preservation. (ill/meditate/serious)



What you have learnt

- For the social and economic development of the country, it is required that every citizen should be skilled in his work.
- Government has launched skill India program to provide livelihood to young generation. The program was launched on 15 July, 2015.
- Under the program, the youth is given the training. The youth is busy in traditional productive work after getting certificate. This certificate will help the youth to get recognition of their skills. They can get employment both inside and outside the country.
- By digital India, we mean an India where every citizen is connected to electronic medium. These electronic media are mobile, phone, computer, laptop, internet etc.
- Government has launched a program to connect every citizen to digital work system. This program is known as digital India program. This program was launched on 7 august, 2014.
- Digital India program has a goal to provide every information and knowledge to the citizens of India by the means of internet.
- Under this program, e - facility centre is established in every village to provide digital service to its citizens.
- All bank accounts are connected through internet. All the grants, relief, scholarship, labour and pension are directly sent to bank account of the beneficiary.
- Digitalized services and facilities will decrease corruption. People will be saved from unnecessary trouble and exploitation.
- Clean India campaign was launched on 2 October, 2014 at Rajghat, new Delhi by prime minister, Sh. Narendra Modi. The goals of this program will be achieved till 2 October 2019.

- Clean India campaign is not a government campaign. This is a mission of masses. Every Indian citizen should fulfil his responsibility in this regard.
- The logo of clean India campaign is made from the spectacles of Gandhi ji. This logo makes us remember Gandhi ji and motivates us towards cleanliness.
- Ganga is our national river. Ganga originates from Gangotri glacier and can be seen from Gomukh , Uttarakhand.
- Ganga falls into Bay of Bengal and passes from Uttarakhand to Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand and West Bengal. The place where Ganga river meets the ocean or sagar is known as Ganga Sagar.
- The total length of Ganga is about 2071 km from Gomukh to Ganga Sagar in India.
- There are 53 districts, 253 blocks and 1657 gram panchayats on the coast of Ganga.
- Many pilgrimage places like Risikesh, Haridwar, Allahabad, Varanasi etc are situated at the coast of Ganga.
- The fairs of Mahakumbh and Ardhkumbh are organized in Haridwar and Allahbad. The trio of Ganga, Yamuna and Saraswati river meet in Allahabad. This place is known as triveni due to meeting of three rivers.
- The existence of Ganga is in danger due to increasing pollution in last few years.
- Clean Ganga Campaign has been started by government to save Ganga from dirt and pollution. This program was launched on 30 January, 2016.
- Clean Ganga campaign is a campaign for all of us. It is our responsibility to clean Ganga and save it from dirt and pollution.



Terminal Questions

1. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option:
 1. If the youth us employed and self independent, then there will be a decrease in _____ . (happiness/ crime/ spirits)
 2. With the facility of free _____ , we would not spend a single rupee on internet. (medicine/Wi-Fi/income)
 3. _____ of diseases are born in dirty environment. (plants/ animals/ germs)
 4. Bhagirathi becomes Ganga from _____ . (Devprayag/ Rudraprayag/ Haridwar)
2. Match the following:

Employment	Gandhi ji
------------	-----------

Computer	Triveni
2 October	skill
Cleanliness	Internet
National River	Purity
Allahabad	Ganga

3. Which of the following programs has the motive to provide employment to youth and also making them independent?
 - a. Digital India
 - b. Clean India
 - c. Skill India
 - d. Great India

4. Where the amount of grants, relief, scholarship, labour and pension will be directly sent?
 - a. Bank account
 - b. Police station
 - c. House
 - d. Godown

5. Who was born on 2 October?
 - a. Subhash Chandra Bose
 - b. Bhagat Singh
 - c. Chandra Shekhar Azad
 - d. Mahatma Gandhi

6. The place where Ganga, Yamuna and Saraswati meet in Allahabad is known as:
 - a. Hari ki Paudi
 - b. Ganga Sagar
 - c. Triveni
 - d. Gangotri

7. Answer the following questions:
 - a. What do you mean by online?

 - b. Which thing is the logo of clean India campaign?

 - c. Which river is known as national river?

 - d. Which place is known as Ganga Sagar?

8. What are the causes of increasing pollution in Ganga?

Let us do it

Look around your environment. Look for people doing traditional works like mud works, carpentry, mud utensils, hair cutting etc. Ask them about their business. Ask them why their income is decreasing and what steps can be taken to boost their business.

Go to any cyber café, e- facility centre, lok shiksha Kendra or any other person having computer and internet. Know what things happen on internet.

Note in your notebook the causes of dirt. Think what you can do to stop it. Follow those steps.

Go to any place of pilgrimage or Ganga Ghat. See how dirt is increasing there. Clean it with your friends and motivate other people to do it.

Answer Key

Intext Questions

20.1

1. on youth
2. 15 July 2015
3. lesser crimes

20.2

1. electronic
2. internet
3. August
4. paper

20.3

1. in open
2. for health
3. Rajghat

20.4

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. bhagirathi | 2. danger |
| 3. purity | 4. serious |

Terminal Questions

1. A. crime
B. Wi-Fi
C. Germs
D. Devprayag
2. A. employment skill
B. computer internet
C. 2 October Gandhi ji
D. cleanliness purity
E. National River Ganga
F. Allahabad Triveni
3. Skill India
4. Bank Account
5. Mahatma Gandhi
6. Triveni
7. A. anything on internet
B. Spectacles of Gandhi ji
C. River Ganga
D. where Ganga falls into Bay of Bengal
8. Do it yourself.